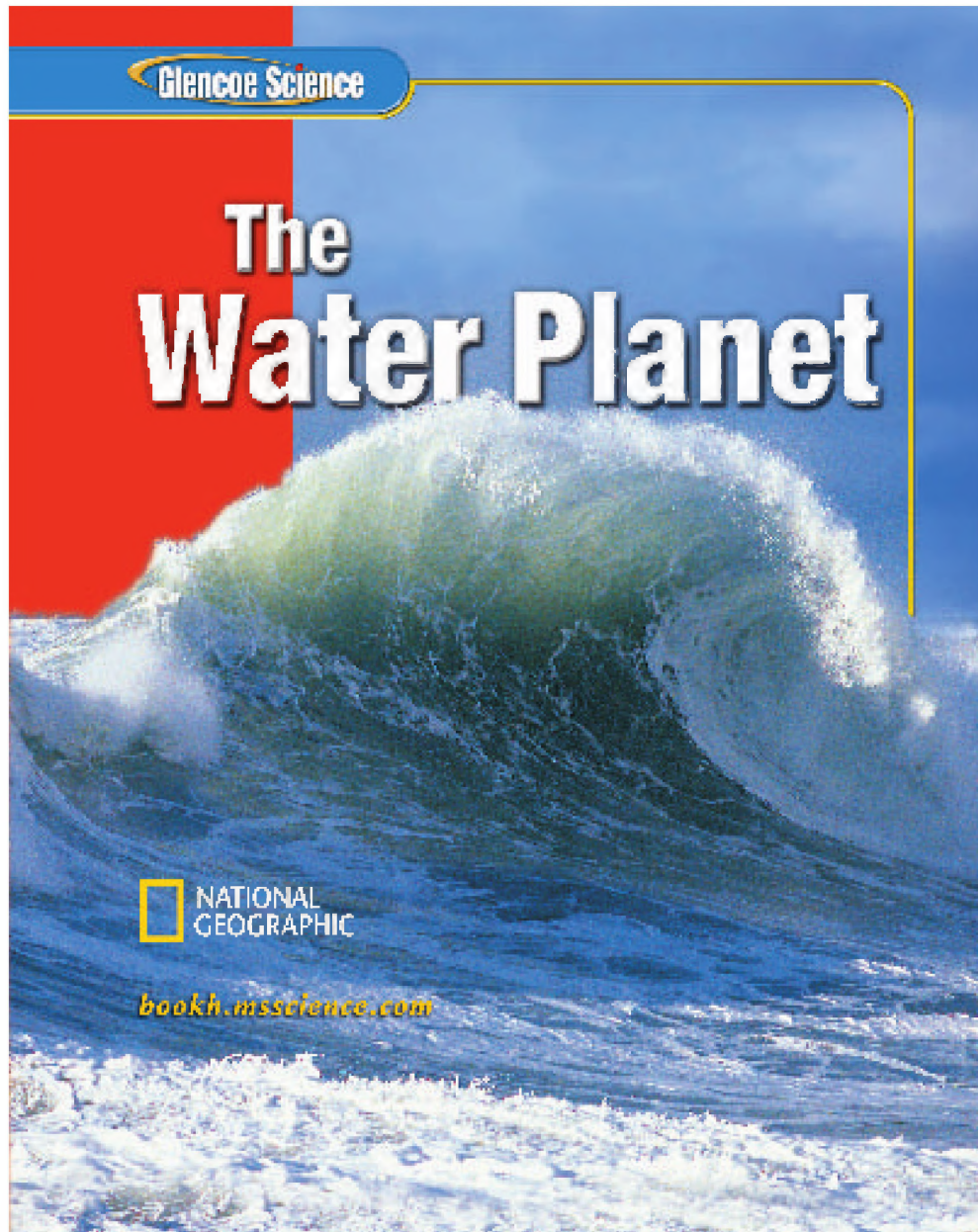




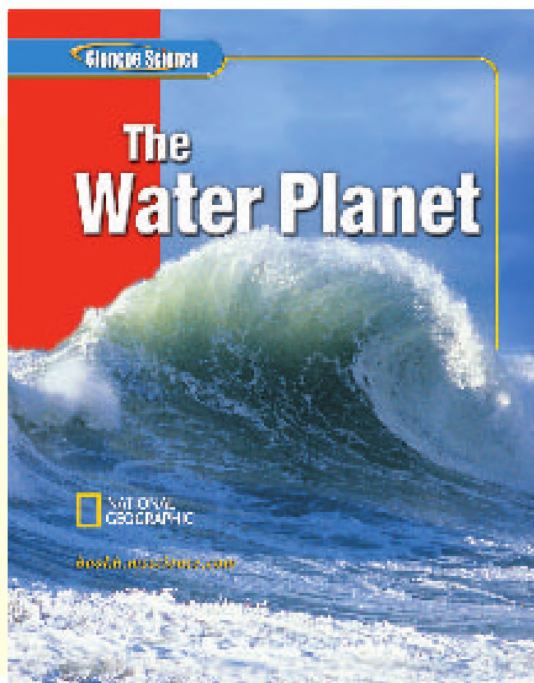
Glencoe

New York, New York Columbus, Ohio Chicago, Illinois Peoria, Illinois Woodland Hills, California



The Water Planet

These crashing waves are viewed at Cape Kiwanda, on the Oregon coast. Cape Kiwanda is the smallest of three capes along the Three Capes Scenic Route (along with Cape Meares and Cape Lookout), but it's one of the best places to experience spectacular wave action. Ocean waves are a transfer of energy moving across the ocean's surface, and eventually to land.



Glencoe

The McGraw-Hill Companies

Copyright © 2005 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without prior written permission of the publisher.

The National Geographic features were designed and developed by the National Geographic Society's Education Division. Copyright © National Geographic Society. The name "National Geographic Society" and the Yellow Border Rectangle are trademarks of the Society, and their use, without prior written permission, is strictly prohibited.

The "Science and Society" and the "Science and History" features that appear in this book were designed and developed by TIME School Publishing, a division of TIME Magazine. TIME and the red border are trademarks of Time Inc. All rights reserved.

Send all inquiries to:
Glencoe/McGraw-Hill
8787 Orion Place
Columbus, OH 43240-4027

ISBN: 0-07-861755-3

Printed in the United States of America.

2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 027/043 09 08 07 06 05 04

Authors



Education Division
Washington, D.C.

Ralph M. Feather Jr., PhD

Science Department Chair
Derry Area School District
Derry, PA

Susan Leach Snyder

Earth Science Teacher, Consultant
Jones Middle School
Upper Arlington, OH

Dinah Zike

Educational Consultant
Dinah-Might Activities, Inc.
San Antonio, TX

Series Consultants

CONTENT

William C. Keel, PhD

Department of Physics and
Astronomy
University of Alabama
Tuscaloosa, AL

MATH

Michael Hopper, DEng

Manager of Aircraft Certification
L-3 Communications
Greenville, TX

Teri Willard, EdD

Mathematics Curriculum Writer
Belgrade, MT

READING

Carol A. Senf, PhD

School of Literature,
Communication, and Culture
Georgia Institute of Technology
Atlanta, GA

Rachel Swaters-Kissinger

Science Teacher
John Boise Middle School
Warsaw, MO

SAFETY

Sandra West, PhD

Department of Biology
Texas State University-San Marcos
San Marcos, TX

ACTIVITY TESTERS

Nerma Coats Henderson

Pickerington Lakeview Jr. High
School
Pickerington, OH

Mary Helen Mariscal-Cholka

William D. Slider Middle School
El Paso, TX

Science Kit and Boreal Laboratories

Tonawanda, NY

Series Reviewers

Lois Burdette

Green Bank Elementary-Middle
School
Green Bank, WV

Marcia Chackan

Pine Crest School
Boca Raton, FL

Mary Ferneau

Westview Middle School
Goose Creek, SC

Sharon Mitchell

William D. Slider Middle School
El Paso, TX

Joanne Stickney

Monticello Middle School
Monticello, NY

HOW TO...

Use Your Science Book

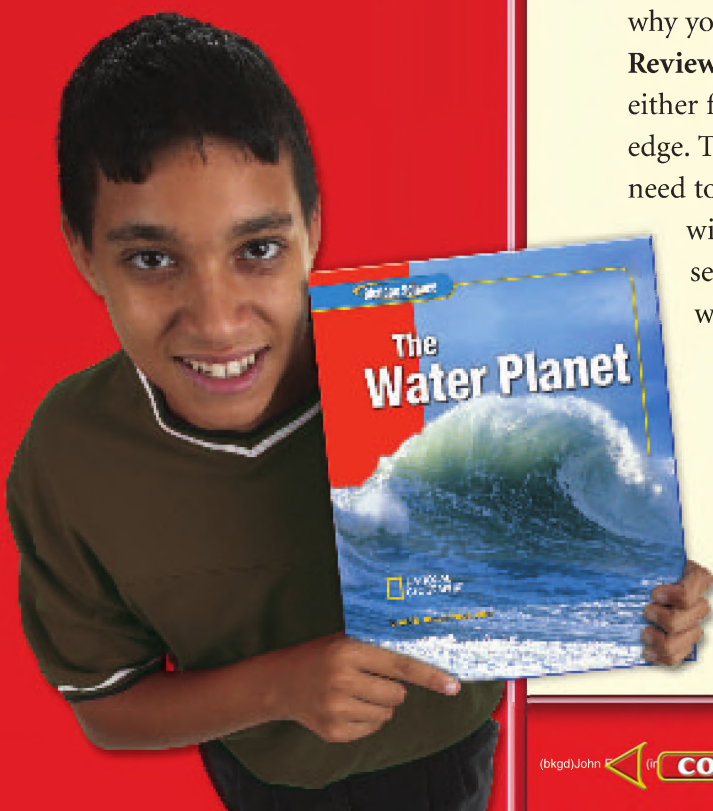
Why do I need my science book?

Have you ever been in class and not understood all of what was presented? Or, you understood everything in class, but at home, got stuck on how to answer a question? Maybe you just wondered when you were ever going to use this stuff?

These next few pages are designed to help you understand everything your science book can be used for . . . besides a paperweight!

Before You Read

- **Chapter Opener** Science is occurring all around you, and the opening photo of each chapter will preview the science you will be learning about. The **Chapter Preview** will give you an idea of what you will be learning about, and you can try the **Launch Lab** to help get your brain headed in the right direction. The **Foldables** exercise is a fun way to keep you organized.
- **Section Opener** Chapters are divided into two to four sections. The **As You Read** in the margin of the first page of each section will let you know what is most important in the section. It is divided into four parts. **What You'll Learn** will tell you the major topics you will be covering. **Why It's Important** will remind you why you are studying this in the first place! The **Review Vocabulary** word is a word you already know, either from your science studies or your prior knowledge. The **New Vocabulary** words are words that you need to learn to understand this section. These words will be in **boldfaced** print and highlighted in the section. Make a note to yourself to recognize these words as you are reading the section.



As You Read



- **Headings** Each section has a title in large red letters, and is further divided into blue titles and small red titles at the beginnings of some paragraphs. To help you study, make an outline of the headings and subheadings.
- **Margins** In the margins of your text, you will find many helpful resources. The **Science Online** exercises and **Integrate** activities help you explore the topics you are studying. **MiniLabs** reinforce the science concepts you have learned.
- **Building Skills** You also will find an **Applying Math** or **Applying Science** activity in each chapter. This gives you extra practice using your new knowledge, and helps prepare you for standardized tests.
- **Student Resources** At the end of the book you will find **Student Resources** to help you throughout your studies. These include **Science, Technology, and Math Skill Handbooks**, an **English/Spanish Glossary**, and an **Index**. Also, use your **Foldables** as a resource. It will help you organize information, and review before a test.
- **In Class** Remember, you can always ask your teacher to explain anything you don't understand.

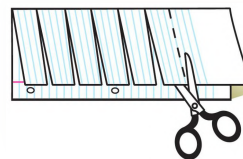
FOLDABLES™ Study Organizer

Science Vocabulary Make the following Foldable to help you understand the vocabulary terms in this chapter.

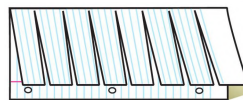
- STEP 1** **Fold** a vertical sheet of notebook paper from side to side.



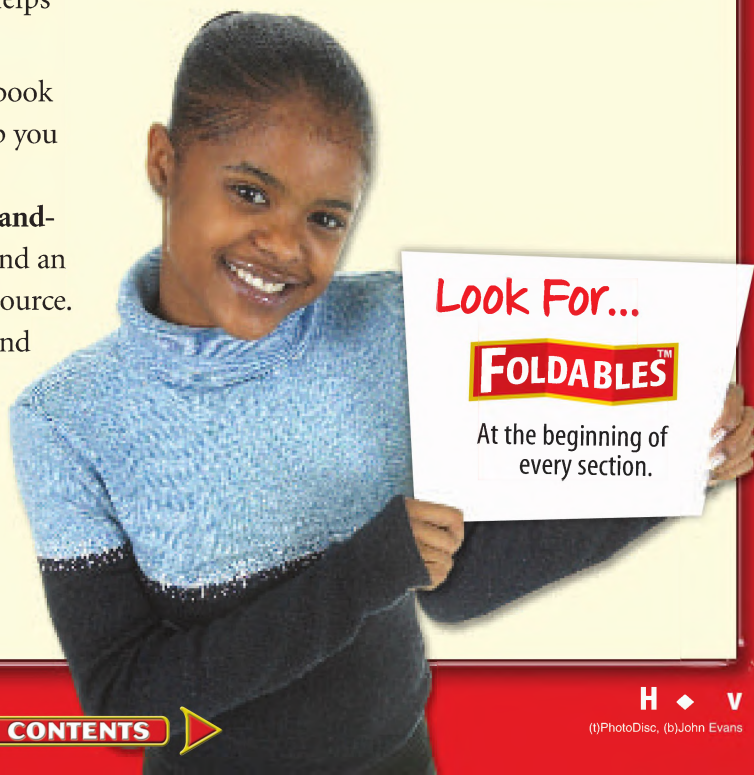
- STEP 2** **Cut** along every third line of only the top layer to form tabs.



- STEP 3** **Label** each tab with a vocabulary word from the chapter.



Build Vocabulary As you read the chapter, list the vocabulary words on the tabs. As you learn the definitions, write them under the tab for each vocabulary word.



Look For...

FOLDABLES™

At the beginning of every section.

In Lab

Working in the laboratory is one of the best ways to understand the concepts you are studying. Your book will be your guide through your laboratory experiences, and help you begin to think like a scientist. In it, you not only will find the steps necessary to follow the investigations, but you also will find helpful tips to make the most of your time.

- Each lab provides you with a **Real-World Question** to remind you that science is something you use every day, not just in class. This may lead to many more questions about how things happen in your world.
- Remember, experiments do not always produce the result you expect. Scientists have made many discoveries based on investigations with unexpected results. You can try the experiment again to make sure your results were accurate, or perhaps form a new hypothesis to test.
- Keeping a **Science Journal** is how scientists keep accurate records of observations and data. In your journal, you also can write any questions that may arise during your investigation. This is a great method of reminding yourself to find the answers later.

Look For...

- **Launch Labs** start every chapter.
- **MiniLabs** in the margin of each chapter.
- **Two Full-Period Labs** in every chapter.
- **EXTRA Try at Home Labs** at the end of your book.
- the **Web site** with **laboratory demonstrations**.

Before a Test

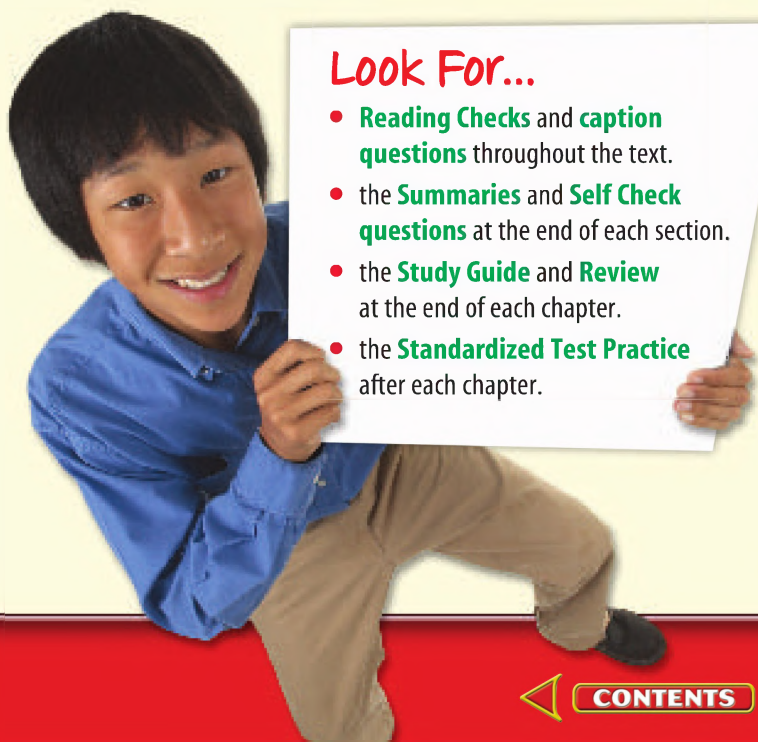
Admit it! You don't like to take tests! However, there *are* ways to review that make them less painful. Your book will help you be more successful taking tests if you use the resources provided to you.

- Review all of the **New Vocabulary** words and be sure you understand their definitions.
- Review the notes you've taken on your **Foldables**, in class, and in lab. Write down any question that you still need answered.
- Review the **Summaries** and **Self Check** questions at the end of each section.
- Study the concepts presented in the chapter by reading the **Study Guide** and answering the questions in the **Chapter Review**.

a or b?
?
T or F?

Look For...

- **Reading Checks** and **caption questions** throughout the text.
- the **Summaries** and **Self Check questions** at the end of each section.
- the **Study Guide** and **Review** at the end of each chapter.
- the **Standardized Test Practice** after each chapter.



Scavenger HUNT

Let's Get Started

To help you find the information you need quickly, use the Scavenger Hunt below to learn where things are located in Chapter 1.

- 1 What is the title of this chapter?
- 2 What will you learn in Section 1?
- 3 Sometimes you may ask, "Why am I learning this?" State a reason why the concepts from Section 2 are important.
- 4 What is the main topic presented in Section 2?
- 5 How many reading checks are in Section 1?
- 6 What is the Web address where you can find extra information?
- 7 What is the main heading above the sixth paragraph in Section 2?
- 8 There is an integration with another subject mentioned in one of the margins of the chapter. What subject is it?
- 9 List the new vocabulary words presented in Section 2.
- 10 List the safety symbols presented in the first Lab.
- 11 Where would you find a Self Check to be sure you understand the section?
- 12 Suppose you're doing the Self Check and you have a question about concept mapping. Where could you find help?
- 13 On what pages are the Chapter Study Guide and Chapter Review?
- 14 Look in the Table of Contents to find out on which page Section 2 of the chapter begins.
- 15 You complete the Chapter Review to study for your chapter test. Where could you find another quiz for more practice?

Teacher Advisory Board

The Teacher Advisory Board gave the editorial staff and design team feedback on the content and design of the Student Edition. They provided valuable input in the development of the 2005 edition of *Glencoe Science*.

John Gonzales
Challenger Middle School
Tucson, AZ

Rachel Shively
Aptakisic Jr. High School
Buffalo Grove, IL

Roger Pratt
Manistique High School
Manistique, MI

Kirtina Hile
Northmor Jr. High/High School
Galion, OH

Marie Renner
Diley Middle School
Pickerington, OH

Nelson Farrier
Hamlin Middle School
Springfield, OR

Jeff Remington
Palmyra Middle School
Palmyra, PA

Erin Peters
Williamsburg Middle School
Arlington, VA

Rubidel Peoples
Meacham Middle School
Fort Worth, TX

Kristi Ramsey
Navasota Jr. High School
Navasota, TX

Student Advisory Board

The Student Advisory Board gave the editorial staff and design team feedback on the design of the Student Edition. We thank these students for their hard work and creative suggestions in making the 2005 edition of *Glencoe Science* student friendly.

Jack Andrews
Reynoldsburg Jr. High School
Reynoldsburg, OH

Peter Arnold
Hastings Middle School
Upper Arlington, OH

Emily Barbe
Perry Middle School
Worthington, OH

Kirsty Bateman
Hilliard Heritage Middle School
Hilliard, OH

Andre Brown
Spanish Emersom Academy
Columbus, OH

Chris Dundon
Heritage Middle School
Westerville, OH

Ryan Manafee
Monroe Middle School
Columbus, OH

Addison Owen
Davis Middle School
Dublin, OH

Teriana Patrick
Eastmoor Middle School
Columbus, OH

Ashley Ruz
Karrar Middle School
Dublin, OH



The Glencoe middle school science Student Advisory Board taking a timeout at COSI, a science museum in Columbus, Ohio.

Contents

Nature of Science: Exploring the Depths of the Water Planet—2

chapter

1

Water—6

Section 1	The Nature of Water	8
	Lab Discovering Latent Heat	15
Section 2	Why is water necessary?	16
Section 3	Recycling Water	22
	Lab: Design Your Own	
	Conserving Water	26

In each chapter, look for these opportunities for review and assessment:

- Reading Checks
- Caption Questions
- Section Review
- Chapter Study Guide
- Chapter Review
- Standardized Test Practice
- Online practice at bookh.msscience.com

chapter

2

Freshwater at Earth's Surface—34

Section 1	Streams	36
Section 2	Lakes and Reservoirs	44
	Lab Lake Nutrients	50
Section 3	Wetlands	51
Section 4	Pollution of Freshwater	54
	Lab Adopt a Stream	58

chapter

3

Groundwater Resources—66

Section 1	Groundwater	68
	Lab Artesian Wells	75
Section 2	Groundwater Pollution and Overuse	76
Section 3	Caves and Other Groundwater Features	85
	Lab Pollution in Motion	90



chapter 4

Ocean Motion—98

Section 1	Ocean Water	100
Section 2	Ocean Currents	104
Section 3	Ocean Waves and Tides	111
	Lab Wave Properties	117
	Lab: Design Your Own	
	Sink or Float?	118

chapter 5

Oceanography—126

Section 1	The Seafloor	128
	Lab Mapping the Ocean Floor	134
Section 2	Life in the Ocean	135
Section 3	Ocean Pollution	143
	Lab: Use the Internet	
	Resources from the Oceans	148



Student Resources



Science Skill Handbook—158

Scientific Methods	158
Safety Symbols	167
Safety in the Science	
Laboratory	168



Extra Try at Home Labs—170



Technology Skill Handbook—173

Computer Skills	173
Presentation Skills	176



Math Skill Handbook—177

Math Review	177
Science Applications	187



Reference Handbooks—192

Weather Map Symbols	192
Rocks	193
Minerals	194
Periodic Table of the	
Elements	196
Topographic Map Symbols	198



English/Spanish Glossary—199



Index—205



Credits—210

Cross-Curricular Readings/Labs

 available as a video lab

NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC **VISUALIZING**

- 1 Shipping 19
- 2 Eutrophication 48
- 3 Sources of Groundwater
Pollution 77
- 4 Wave Movement 112
- 5 The Rocky Shore Habitat 141



- 1 What is cohesion? 7
-  2 How do lake nutrients mix? 35
- 3 Groundwater Infiltration 67
-  4 Explore How Currents Work 99
- 5 How deep is the ocean? 127



- 1 Examining Density
Differences 11
- 2 Modeling Stream Flow 39
- 3 Measuring Porosity 69
- 4 Modeling Water
Particle Movement 111
- 5 Observing Plankton 139



- 1 Predicting Water Use 18
- 2 Evaluating Dilution 55
- 3 Modeling Groundwater
Pollution 80
- 4 Modeling a Density Current 107
-  5 Modeling the
Mid-Atlantic Ridge 131

One-Page Labs

-  1 Discovering Latent Heat 15
- 2 Lake Nutrients 50
- 3 Artesian Wells 75
- 4 Wave Properties 117
- 5 Mapping the Ocean Floor 134

Two-Page Labs

- 2 Adopt a Stream 58–59
-  3 Pollution in Motion 90–91



- 1 Not a Drop to Drink 28



- 2 Great Lakes at a Glance 60



- 5 Strange Creatures from
the Ocean Floor 150



- 4 “The Jungle of Ceylon” 120



- 3 Caves 92

Design Your Own Labs

- 1** Conserving Water 26–27
- 4** Sink or Float? 118–119

Use the Internet Labs

- 5** Resources from the
Oceans 148–149

Applying Math

- 2** Bay Depth 47
- 4** Density of Salt Water 108
- 5** Calculating a Feature's Slope ... 130

Applying Science

- 1** How does water behave
in space? 13
- 3** Can stormwater be cleaned
and reused for irrigation? 81

INTEGRATE

Career: 79, 108, 136
Chemistry: 9, 71, 86, 138
History: 23, 56
Life Science: 10, 14, 47, 102,
115, 135
Physics: 39

ScienceOnline

9, 42, 45, 70, 73, 81, 87, 105, 113,
129, 140

Standardized Test Practice

32–33, 64–65, 96–97, 124–125,
154–155



Exploring the Depths of the Water Planet



Figure 1 This diver is taking samples to learn more about sediments on the ocean floor.

Humans have been exploring and collecting data from Earth's oceans for thousands of years. Despite all that people have learned about oceans, almost 90 percent of Earth's vast oceans have yet to be visited by humans.

Many early civilizations regularly navigated long distances on the ocean relying on knowledge of the stars and ocean currents. By 800 B.C., the Phoenicians and Greeks had learned to navigate the Mediterranean Sea. The Vikings, Arabs, and Chinese also were sailors. When the compass, a Chinese invention, became standard sailing equipment in the thirteenth century, sailors were able to navigate more precisely.

Ferdinand Magellan's voyage around the world (1519–1522) proved a theory that had been stated by ancient Greeks 2,000 years earlier—Earth is round. This accurate idea of Earth's shape and new instruments allowing vessels to calculate latitude and longitude allowed explorers to begin mapping the shapes of Earth's oceans and landmasses. By the late 1700s, Antarctica was the only area on Earth that remained uncharted by Europeans.

Figure 2 Some of the major events in ocean exploration and discovery are shown in the time line.

A History of Oceanography

1913: A German company makes an armored diving suit that has jointed arms and legs.

1910



1920

1925: Sonar is used on the *Meteor* expedition to measure seafloor depth and study the bottom contour of the ocean.

1930

1934: The first crewed undersea exploration off the coast of Bermuda takes William Beebe to a depth of almost 1 km.



1940

1939: SCUBA is developed. Divers can now explore shallow waters untethered.

1950

Ocean Discoveries

As people continued to explore the oceans, many discoveries were made about what was in the oceans and how currents functioned. The discovery of a stalked sea lily—an organism that had previously only been seen in fossils that were millions of years old—supported Darwin’s earlier theory that the ocean could give clues about Earth’s evolutionary past. The discovery of this organism, recovered from a depth of more than 3 km, further fueled the growing demand for a large-scale expedition to study the deep sea.

Broad-based undersea exploration began with the voyage of the *Challenger* from 1872 to 1876. This British vessel circled Earth conducting soundings (measurements of depth) with weighted wire, gathering samples from the deep ocean, and recording information on salinity, temperature, and water density. Although data from the voyage provided a wealth of new knowledge, the voyage is best known for the revelation that the ocean floor is mountainous and for the discovery of about 4,700 species of marine life. Since many of the organisms identified on the voyage were collected from a depth of 1 km or greater, the *Challenger* research also helped to disprove an earlier theory that life only can exist as deep as 0.5 km below the ocean’s surface.

Sonar

From 1925 to 1927, the German vessel *Meteor* crisscrossed the Atlantic Ocean with an electronic echo sounder, or sonar—Sound Navigation Ranging. Analysis of these and later sonar data helped to give a clearer picture of the undersea world. The data were used to develop accurate maps of the rough ocean floor and to identify three-dimensional objects.

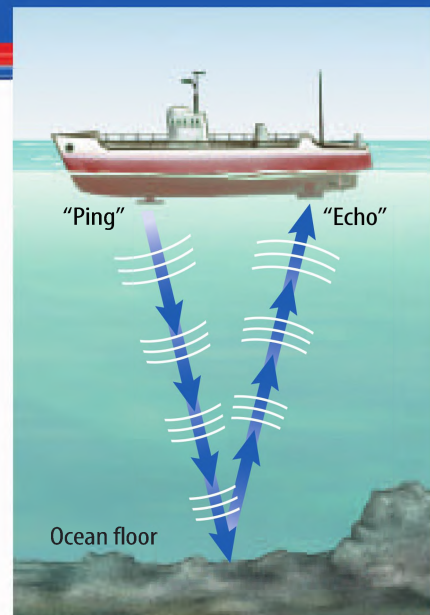
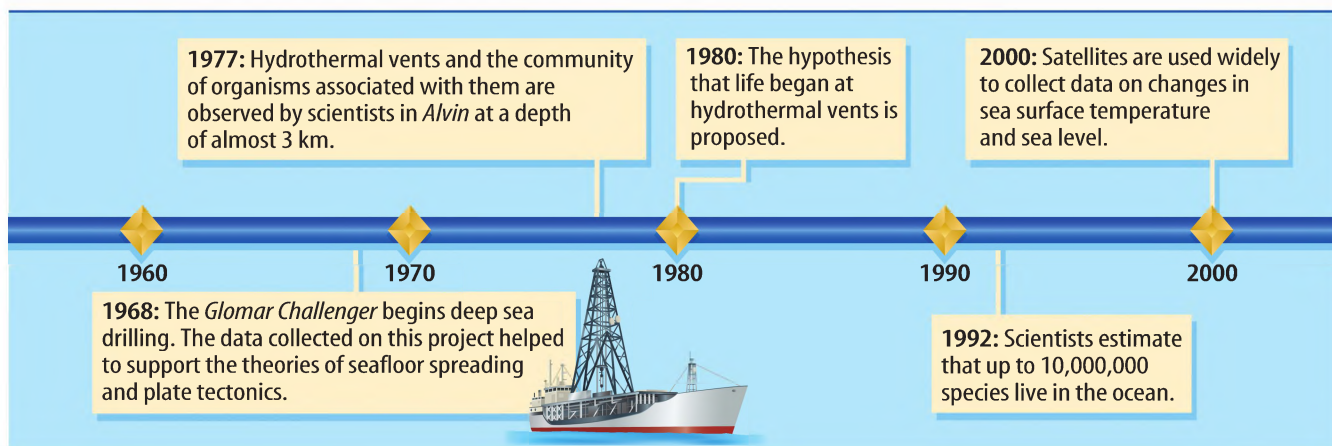


Figure 3 Scientists use sonar to gain a clearer picture of the depth and the contours of the ocean floor.



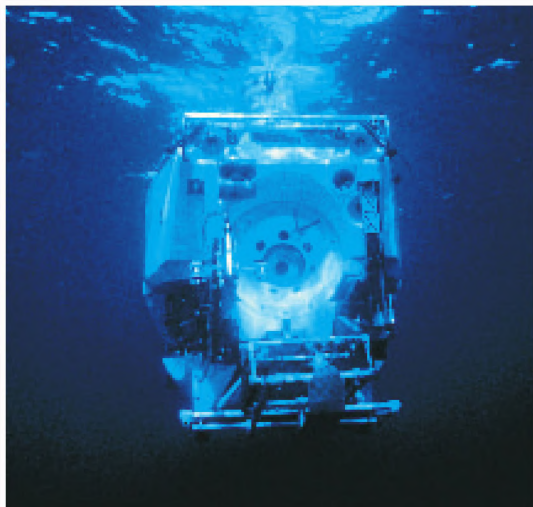


Figure 4 *Alvin* has allowed scientists to see some of the deepest and darkest parts of the ocean.

Exploration Technology

Seven years later, William Beebe and Otis Barton became the first humans to observe ocean life from a depth of almost 1 km. They watched from inside their diving vessel called a bathysphere as it was lowered from a ship on a cable seven eighths of an inch thick. The 1939 development of SCUBA—Self-Contained Underwater Breathing Apparatus—allowed divers to explore shallow waters. In 1960, the quest for depth was complete when Jacques Piccard and Don Walsh reached the Challenger Deep—the deepest point in the ocean at about 11 km below the surface—in an improved diving vessel, the bathyscaphe *Trieste*.

Scientific curiosity didn't stop at the bottom of the ocean. In 1968, a team of scientists aboard the *Glomar Challenger*, a ship designed to drill and collect samples from the deep ocean floor, began to drill through the oceanic crust. The goal was to obtain samples from the boundary between the crust and mantle of Earth. The drilling, sonar data, and sediment samples provided support for the then-controversial theory of seafloor spreading which suggested that new seafloor is formed along an underwater system of ridges.



Figure 5 Scientists discovered these unique worms living near hydrothermal vents.

Discovering New Species

Meanwhile, the U.S. Navy began developing crewed and robotic crafts to explore the depths of the ocean. In 1977, the U.S. Navy's *Alvin*—a deep-sea craft—was used to view a hydrothermal vent.

In the years that followed, 1.5-m worms, unusual jellyfish, and blind crabs were discovered in the warm, nutrient-rich water near the vent. Scientists proposed that these vents may be the sites where life first formed on Earth. In 1992, scientists estimated that the oceans hold about 10 million species of living things. Scientists

continue to search out these species. Today, information about the oceans is gathered by crewed and robotic expeditions and by satellite. Sonar is still a major oceanographic tool.

The History of Oceanography

Knowledge of the oceans has grown in leaps and bounds, yet much is still to be discovered. Understanding the oceans is key to understanding Earth's ecosystem and its history.

Changing Courses

Science is a long process of understanding nature better. Today, scientists know that the oceans are changing shape and are full of life. Explorations of the depths have given surprising results. Each of these surprises leads to further research and exploration.

It might be hard to imagine that people once thought Earth was flat and that the ocean floor was a flat, underwater wasteland. It's important to remember that as science makes discoveries, old ideas can be overturned. These overturned ideas, however, are the beginnings of scientific research. In the process of disproving them, scientists learn more about Earth. Scientists work in the hope that later scientists will be able to use their observations to make further advances.

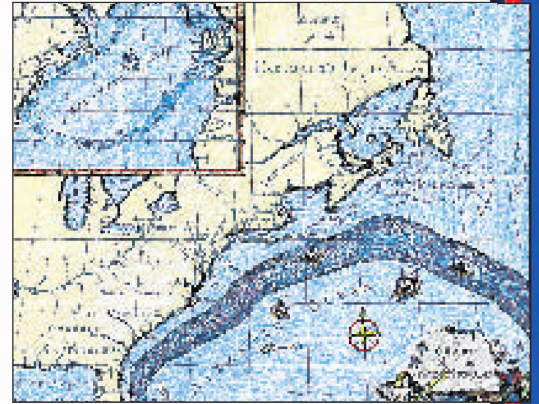
Building on the Past

Although some scientific ideas may change, the foundations of today's science consist of information that is now considered ancient. Without the compass and the invention of a clock in 1736 that could keep accurate time at sea, precise navigation using latitude and longitude would not have been possible. Scientists don't just disprove what others have done, they also build on their successes. So, over time, the understanding of the world increases.

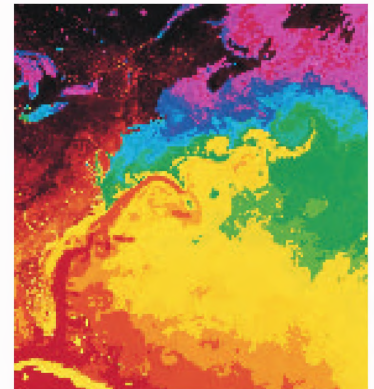
You Do It

In the 1920s, sonar helped scientists to picture the ocean floor before they could see it firsthand. Today, more sophisticated forms of sonar are used by the military, by researchers, and even by doctors. Research the history of sonar. How does it work? How has it been refined since its invention? How is it used today?

Figure 6 The chart of the Gulf Stream that Franklin published in 1777 is remarkably accurate when compared to today's satellite images.



Franklin's chart was developed with the help of his cousin, Timothy Folger, and other sea captains who sailed in the North Atlantic.



The warm water carried by the Gulf Stream shown here in red and orange, stands out against the surrounding colder water in this satellite image.

Water

chapter preview

sections

- 1** The Nature of Water
Lab Discovering Latent Heat
- 2** Why is water necessary?
- 3** Recycling Water
Lab Conserving Water
-  **Virtual Lab** What are some properties of water?

How important is water?

Water is possibly the most important compound on Earth. Plants and animals need water for all of their life functions. People also use water for agriculture, industry, and recreation.

Science Journal Write a paragraph about how society depends on water.

Start-Up Activities



What is cohesion?

Water is an amazing substance. It has many unusual properties. One of these properties is cohesion, which is the ability of water molecules to attract each other. Observe cohesion as you do this lab.   

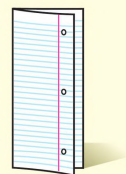


1. Fill a drinking glass to the rim with water.
2. Slowly and carefully slip pennies into the glass one at a time.
3. After adding several pennies, observe the surface of the water at eye level.
4. **Think Critically** In your Science Journal, draw a picture of the water in the glass after the pennies were added. How might cohesion affect the water's surface?

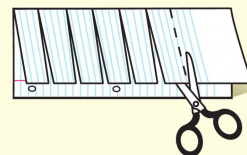
FOLDABLES™ Study Organizer

Water Make the following Foldable to help you understand the vocabulary terms in this chapter.

- STEP 1** **Fold** a vertical sheet of notebook paper from side to side.



- STEP 2** **Cut** along every third line of only the top layer to form tabs.



Build Vocabulary As you read the chapter, list the vocabulary words on the tabs. As you learn the definitions, write them under the tab for each vocabulary word.



Preview this chapter's content and activities at bookh.msscience.com

The Nature of Water

as you read

What You'll Learn

- **Explain** that water exists on Earth in three states.
- **Describe** several unique properties of water.
- **Explain** that water is a polar molecule.

Why It's Important

The properties of water allow life to exist on Earth.

Review Vocabulary

states of matter: the physical forms in which all matter naturally exists on Earth, most commonly as a solid, a liquid, or a gas

New Vocabulary

- density
- cohesion
- polar molecule
- specific heat

Figure 1 Water is abundant on Earth's surface.

Identify the places where you see water in this photograph.

Forms of Water

Think about the water you use every day. When you drink a glass of water, you use it in liquid form. When you put ice in a drink, you're using it in solid form. Even when you breathe, you are using water. Along with the oxygen, nitrogen, and other gases from Earth's atmosphere, you inhale gaseous water with every breath you take.

The fact that water exists on Earth as a liquid, a gas, and a solid is one of its unique properties. Water is a simple molecule composed of two hydrogen atoms bonded to one oxygen atom. Yet water has several unusual properties that make it important here on Earth. Indeed, without water, this planet would be a different place from what is seen in **Figure 1**.



Reading Check

Which two elements occur in molecules of water?



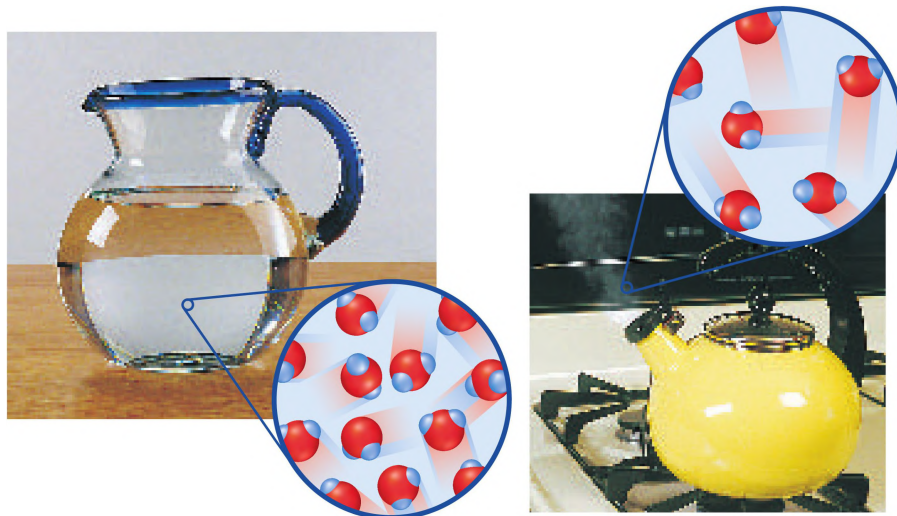


Figure 2 Water molecules in the liquid state are held close together by weak bonds. When water changes to steam, the molecules move farther apart. It takes energy to break weak bonds and separate the molecules.

Changing Forms of Water You have seen water change states. Ice melts on the sidewalk, and the puddle evaporates. Ice generally melts at 0°C . However, liquid water can become gas at many temperatures. Water evaporates from oceans, lakes, and rivers to enter Earth's atmosphere. Water also changes to gas when it boils at 100°C .

Water molecules are connected by weak bonds. In order to change from solid to liquid or to change from liquid to gas, bonds must be broken. Breaking bonds requires energy, as shown in **Figure 2**.

When the state changes go the other direction, water gives off energy. The same amount of heat needed to change liquid to gas, for example, is given off when the gas changes back to liquid.

Latent Heat

Would you try to boil a pan of water over a candle? Of course not. Clearly a candle does not give off enough heat. Each molecule of water is attracted weakly to other water molecules. All those attractions mean that you need a high amount of heat to boil the water in your pan—definitely more than a candle's worth. Changing the state of water, either from liquid to gas or from solid to liquid, takes more energy than you might think.



The heat energy needed to change water from solid to liquid is called the latent heat of fusion. Heat can be measured using a unit called the joule. It takes about 335 joules to melt a single gram of ice at 0°C . On the other hand, 335 joules of heat will escape when a single gram of water freezes into ice at 0°C . It might surprise you to know that the temperature does not change while the freezing or melting is going on. During freezing and melting, energy is changing the state of the water but not the temperature.

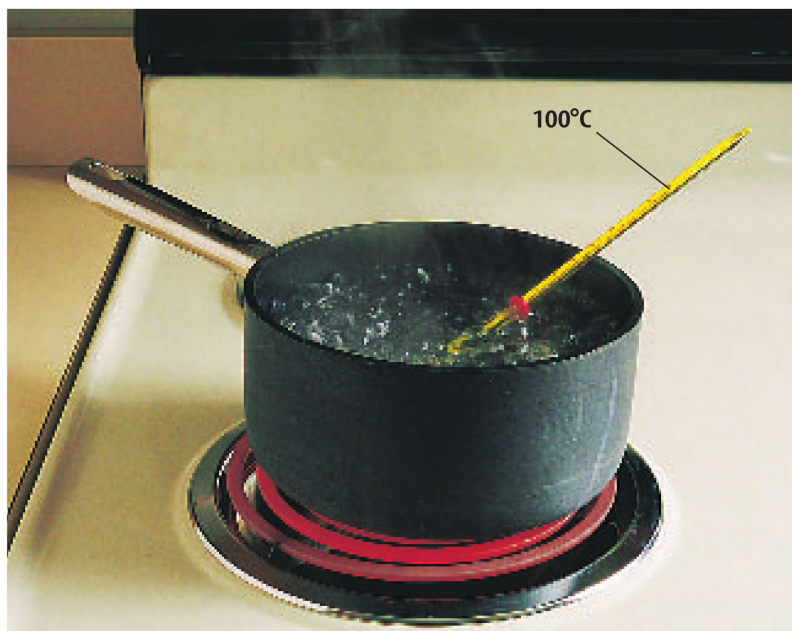
Scienceonline

Topic: Latent Heat

Visit bookh.msscience.com for Web links to information about how water changes from one state to another.

Activity Make a table showing which state changes require heat and which give off heat.

Figure 3 Temperature does not change when water boils. The heat is used to change the water's form.



Protecting Crops Citrus farmers often protect their crop on cold nights by spraying water on the orange or grapefruit trees. If the temperature drops below freezing, the water freezes. Explain in your Science Journal how freezing water could keep citrus trees warmer.

Time Requirements These processes take time. Water won't freeze the instant it goes into the freezer, and ice won't melt immediately when you place an ice cube on the counter. Ice is a stable form of water. A large amount of heat loss must occur to make ice in the first place. After water is frozen, it takes far more energy to melt the ice than it does to heat the resulting liquid water to almost boiling.

Heat of Vaporization It takes even more heat energy to change liquid water to gas, or water vapor. The amount of heat needed to change water from liquid to gas is called the latent heat of vaporization. Each gram of liquid water needs 2,260 joules of heat to change to water vapor at 100°C. Likewise, each gram of water vapor that changes back to liquid at 100°C releases 2,260 joules of heat. During both of these processes, no increase or decrease in temperature occurs, just a change in form, as shown in **Figure 3**.



Reading Check

Why doesn't the temperature of water change when it boils?

You might have experienced latent heat of vaporization if you've ever felt a chill after getting out of a swimming pool. When you first emerged from the pool, your skin was covered with some water. As the water evaporated into the air and became water vapor, it took heat from your body and made you feel cold. Can you think of a way that evaporating water could be used to cool other things, such as a desert home?

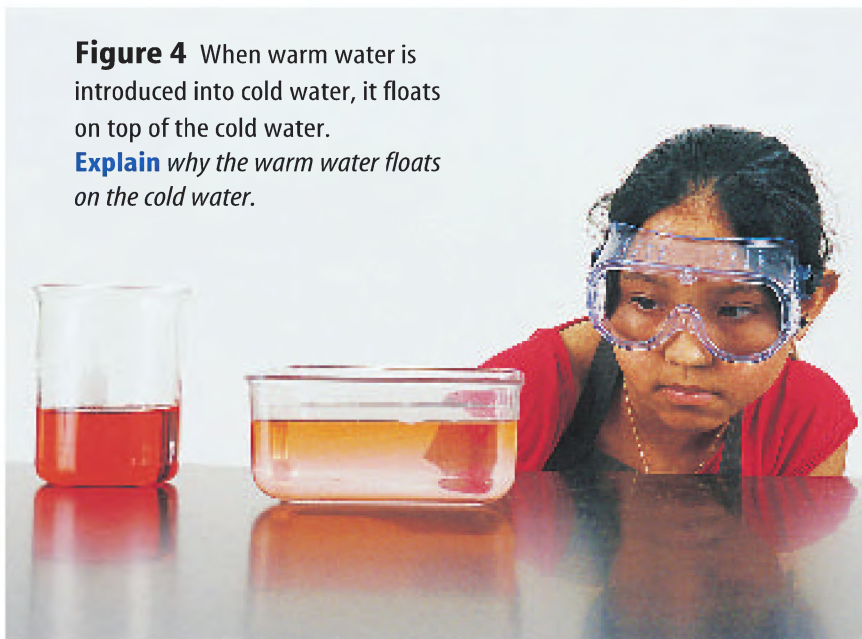
Density Which has more mass—a kilogram of plastic foam or a kilogram of lead? They're the same, of course, but you will need a much bigger container to hold the plastic foam. The volume of the lead will be smaller because lead has more mass for its size than plastic foam. In other words, the lead has greater density. **Density** is the amount of mass in a unit of volume. The density of pure water is 1.0 g/cm^3 at 4°C . Adding another substance to the water, such as salt, changes the density. Freshwater will float on top of denser salt water, just as olive oil floats atop the denser vinegar in salad dressing. This situation is found in nature where rivers flow into the ocean. The freshwater stays on top until waves and currents mix it with the seawater.

 Reading Check *What is density?*

Temperature also affects the density of water. As freshwater heats up above 4°C , the water molecules gain energy and move apart. In the same volume of water, warm water has fewer molecules than cold water does. Therefore, warm water has lower density than cold water and will float on top of it, as shown in **Figure 4**. You might have experienced this while swimming in a pond or lake during the summer. The water on top is fairly warm. However, if you dive down, you suddenly feel the colder, denser water below. The difference in density between warm and cold water has an important effect in the ocean. These differences cause currents in the water.

Figure 4 When warm water is introduced into cold water, it floats on top of the cold water.

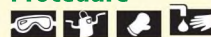
Explain *why the warm water floats on the cold water.*



Mini LAB

Examining Density Differences

Procedure



1. Place 200 mL of **water** in a **beaker** and chill in a **refrigerator**. Remove the beaker of water and allow it to sit undisturbed for at least one minute.
2. Place about 30 mL of **hot tap water** in a **small beaker**.
3. Place 5 drops of **food coloring** into the hot water to make it easy to see.
4. Use a **pipette** to slowly place several milliliters of the hot water into the bottom of the beaker of cold water. Be careful not to stir the cold water.

Analysis

1. How does the hot water behave when added to the cold water?
2. A few minutes after the hot water has been added to the cold water, observe the container. Explain the cause of what you observe.



A Polar Molecule

You might have noticed how water can bulge from the end of a graduated cylinder for a moment before it finally comes pouring out. That's due to the special property of water called cohesion. **Cohesion** is the attraction between water molecules. It's what allows water to form into drops, as shown in **Figure 5**. Cohesion also helps keep water liquid at room temperature. If not for cohesion, water molecules would quickly evaporate into the air. Molecules like carbon dioxide and nitrogen, which are close in mass to water molecules, completely vaporize at room temperature. If water molecules behaved this way, Earth would be a different, far drier place.



What property of water allows it to form into drops?

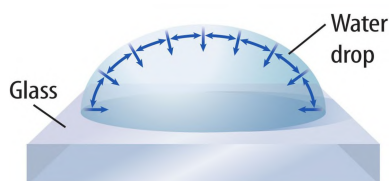


Figure 5 Cohesion causes water to form drops on a window.

List some other effects of cohesion.

Here's how cohesion works. As you know, a water molecule is made of two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom. These atoms share their electrons in covalent bonds. But the oxygen atom pulls more powerfully on the negatively charged electrons than the hydrogen atoms do. This gives the oxygen end of the molecule a partial negative charge and the hydrogen side of the molecule a partial positive charge. The molecule then acts like a tiny magnet, attracting other water molecules into weak bonds. This is shown in **Figure 6**. Because of this behavior, the water molecule is considered a polar molecule. A **polar molecule** has a slightly positive end and a slightly negative end because electrons are shared unequally. As you soon will see, this polarity of the water molecule explains several of water's unique properties.

Figure 6 Water molecules have weak charges at each end. These weak charges attract opposites and cause the molecules to bond.

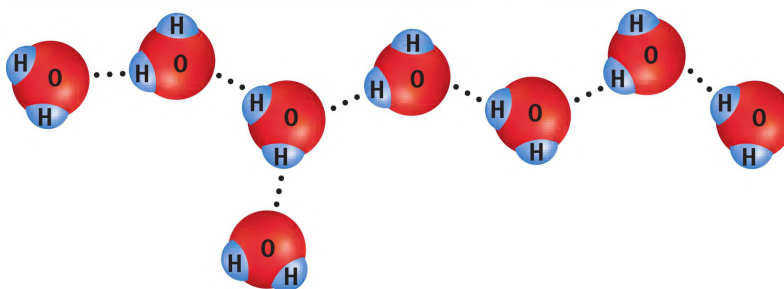
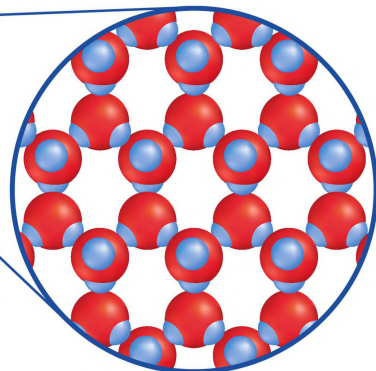




Figure 7 Water molecules are farther apart in ice than in liquid water. This causes ice to float on water.



 Oxygen  Hydrogen

Effects of Bonding The polarity of water molecules makes water great for dissolving other substances, such as sea salts and substances that travel through your body. Polarity also means that ice will float on liquid water. As water freezes, the weak bonds between the molecules form an open arrangement of molecules, as seen in **Figure 7**.

The molecules, therefore, are farther apart when they are frozen than they were as liquid. This causes ice to have a lower density than liquid water, letting it float on water. In large bodies of water, floating ice prevents the water below from freezing. If lakes froze from the bottom up, they would freeze solid every winter, killing all living things inside.

Applying Science

How does water behave in space?

Astronauts onboard space shuttles and space stations have performed experiments to find out how water behaves in the weightlessness that exists in Earth's orbit. Do you think water behaves differently in space than on Earth?

Identifying the Problem

The photograph to the right was taken onboard *Skylab*, a former United States space laboratory. It shows astronaut Joseph

Kerwin forming a sphere of water by blowing droplets of water through a straw.



Solving the Problem

1. Why does the water drop remain suspended?
2. Why would water form nearly spherical drops onboard the space shuttle or an orbiting space station?



Specific Heat Because water has a high specific heat, it helps plants and animals regulate their temperature. Plant and animal cells contain mostly water. It takes a lot of heat to make this water warmer. This helps plants and animals stay cool when it's hot. Water's high specific heat also helps protect living tissue from freezing when it's cold.

Specific Heat Have you ever burned your feet running across the sand on a beach? You make a mad dash for the water, where you can cool them off. But think about this: the same hot Sun is shining on the water, too. Why is the water so cool? One reason is water's high specific heat. **Specific heat** is the amount of energy that is needed to raise the temperature of 1 kg of a substance 1°C. The same amount of energy raises the temperature of the sand much more than the temperature of the water. In fact, when you compare water with most other naturally occurring materials, it will increase its temperature the least when heat is added. In other words, water has one of the highest values of specific heat.

 **Reading Check** *What is the definition of specific heat?*

High specific heat means water also will cool off slower when the energy is taken away. Go back to the beach at night and you can find this out yourself. At night the water feels warmer than the sand does.

This property is the reason water often is used as a coolant. Water in a car's radiator cools the engine by carrying away heat without becoming too hot itself. The specific heat of water is just one more of the characteristics that make it so important to life. In the next section, you will learn some of the ways the special properties of water can be put to work.

section 1 review

Summary

Forms of Water

- Water exists in three states on Earth—solid, liquid, and gas.
- Water molecules include two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom.

Latent Heat

- When ice melts and when liquid water changes to gas, heat is absorbed.
- When water freezes and when water vapor condenses to a liquid, heat is given off.

A Polar Molecule

- Water is a polar molecule. The oxygen atoms have a partial negative charge, and the hydrogen atoms have a partial positive charge.
- Water has a high specific heat. This means that it takes a lot of heat to increase the temperature of water.

Self Check

1. **List** the three states of water and give examples of where water is found in each state.
2. **Define** the latent heat of fusion. Define the latent heat of vaporization.
3. **Explain** why cold water sinks in warm water and why salt water sinks in freshwater.
4. **Explain** why ice floats on liquid water.
5. **Think Critically** Water molecules have slightly positive and slightly negative ends. How does this property help water dissolve similar substances and substances made of charged atoms?

Applying Skills

6. **Predict** what would happen to the level of water in a bowl if you were to leave it on the counter for several days. Explain any change you predict.

Discovering Latent Heat

Ice melts at 0°C . After you raise the temperature of ice to the melting point, the ice remains at a constant temperature until all of it melts. The same thing happens to water at the boiling point of 100°C . What is happening to the water that explains this?

Real-World Question

How does the temperature of water change as it is heated from below the melting point to the boiling point?

Goals

- **Describe** what happens to the temperature of ice and water as thermal energy is added.
- **Explain** what you see on your graph of temperature versus time.

Materials

hot plate	clamp for thermometer
ring stand	Celsius thermometer
400-mL beaker	250-mL graduated cylinder
crushed ice	

Safety Precautions



WARNING: Do not touch hot glassware.

Procedure

1. Create a data table to take time and temperature measurements. Half fill a 400-mL beaker with crushed ice. Suspend a thermometer in the ice and record its initial temperature in your data table at time = 0 min.
2. Plug in the hot plate and adjust the temperature as directed by your teacher. Record the temperature of the ice every minute in your data table until it is completely melted.



3. Continue recording the temperature of the water every minute until it begins to boil. Note the temperature at which this occurs.
4. Continue recording the temperature of the water for three more minutes.
5. Stop heating the water and let it cool before cleaning up your lab station.
6. **Plot** all your data on a sheet of graph paper with temperature on the vertical axis and time on the horizontal axis.

Conclude and Apply

1. What happened to the temperature while the ice was melting?
2. What happened to the temperature after all the ice was melted but before any water started to boil?
3. What happened to the temperature while the water was boiling?
4. **Hypothesize** what would happen to the temperature of the water vapor after all the water evaporated if thermal energy were added continually.

Why is water necessary?

as you read

What You'll Learn

- **Explain** that water is essential for life on Earth.
- **Describe** ways that society uses water.
- **Describe** methods for conserving freshwater.

Why It's Important

Less than one percent of Earth's water is available for human use; therefore, it must be used wisely.



Review Vocabulary

agriculture: the science of growing crops and raising farm animals

New Vocabulary

- irrigation
- water conservation

Water and Life

Everyone knows that people can't survive long without water to drink. Even more than food, water is critical to your immediate survival. If you think about all the ways water allows you to live and thrive on Earth, you'll come up with a long list. You drink it, wash in it, and play in it. Water is all around you, and it's all through you. About 70 percent of your body is water. It fills and surrounds the cells of your body, enabling many of your body's processes to occur. Water helps move nutrients throughout your body, control your body temperature, eliminate wastes, digest food, and lubricate joints. When you feel thirsty, your body is telling you that you need more water.

Water not only is important to humans but to all life on Earth. The oceans, streams, rivers, and lakes are full of activity and provide habitats for organisms within and around them.

The properties of water allow plants to get water from soil. Water molecules are attracted to other polar molecules. Together with cohesion, this provides the capillary action that draws water upward through narrow tubes inside plant stems. This is shown in **Figure 8**. Water moves by this method from the ground to the plant leaves, where photosynthesis occurs.

Figure 8 A plant stem works the same way a capillary tube does. Water travels up the tube or plant stem because of capillary action.



Water and Society

Take one look at a globe and you'll soon realize how important water is to society. The need for water explains why major cities often are located near large bodies of water. Desert areas have far fewer towns and sparser populations.

Water for Production Industry uses water for many purposes. For example, water is used for processing and cooling during the production of paper, chemicals, steel, and other products. Water also is necessary for transporting manufactured goods. Mining and refining Earth's natural resources call for large amounts of water. **Figure 9** shows how water is used in the United States. In general, communities located near water are better able to attract industry and often have the most productive economies.

Agriculture uses about 41 percent of all the water used in the United States, the largest percentage of any sector. Most of this water is used for irrigation of farmland. **Irrigation** means piping in water from elsewhere and using it to grow crops, as shown in **Figure 10**. The water could come from a nearby lake, river, or reservoir or it might be pumped from the ground.



Reading Check

What process do farmers use when they pump water from somewhere else to water their crops?

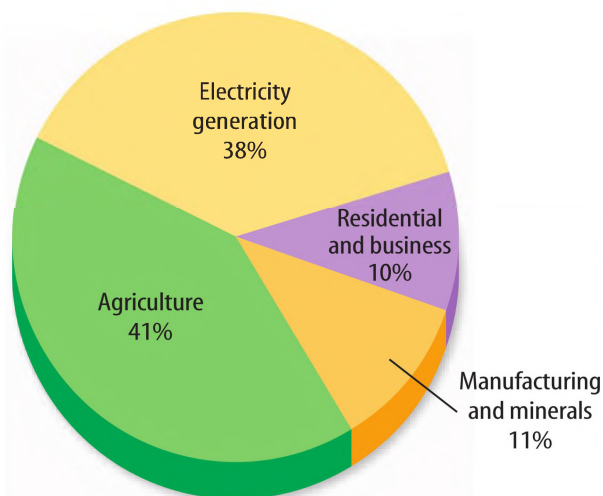


Figure 9 Water has many uses in the United States, as shown in the circle graph.



Figure 10 Several forms of irrigation are used worldwide.

Describe any forms of irrigation used in areas near you.

Figure 11 Ferries are used for transportation and recreation.



Mini LAB

Predicting Water Use

Procedure

1. Determine the average inside area (width times length) of your **bathtub**.
2. Run a typical bath and measure the depth of the water. Pull the stopper and allow the water to drain.
3. Close the stopper of your bathtub and run the shower for 5 min. Measure the depth of the water at the end of the 5 min.
4. Calculate the volume of water used during a typical bath and during a typical 5-min shower. To do this, multiply the area of the bathtub by the bath depth and then by the shower depth.

Analysis

1. Compare the volumes of water used during a bath and a shower.
2. Determine which uses more water—a bath or a 5-min shower.
3. Infer how much water a 10-min shower would use.



Water for Transportation Although superhighways and airports are important to modern society, water remains valuable for transportation, as shown in **Figure 11**. Passenger liners are popular for vacations. Saving the time and expense of long land trips, ferries move people, cars, and freight across bays, straights, and rivers. Big ships often are the most economical way to move large freight within the country or across the ocean, as shown in **Figure 12**.



Reading Check

Why is water important for transportation?

Water for Recreation Don't forget the role water plays in recreation. Many people equate water with fun—fishing, swimming, scuba diving, waterskiing, and boating. Boating provides entertainment for many people. Sailors, canoeists, kayakers, powerboaters, and whitewater rafters all spend recreation time on the water.

Water Use

When you consider all the ways that water is used, it is clear that water is a valuable natural resource that must be conserved and protected. Not only is clean water important for use in homes and by society, it is necessary for maintaining the ecological balance in nature. Many species of wildlife live in and around bodies of water.

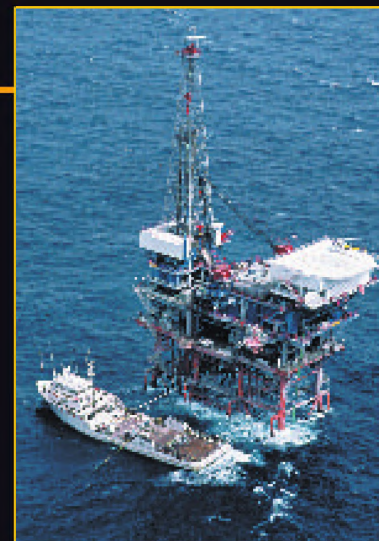
Bodies of water must be clean to support the animals and plants that live in them. If too much pollution enters rivers, lakes, or ponds, wildlife might be harmed. Oceans also must be kept clean of pollutants such as oil, chemical and radioactive wastes, and litter.

Figure 12

For thousands of years, people have floated down rivers and sailed across oceans to move goods from place to place. Modern ships may look different from those used in ancient times, but waterways continue to be vital transportation routes, as shown on this page.



▲ **BARGES** Long, shallow-bottomed barges transport goods along rivers, canals, and other waterways. Here, a barge carrying coal glides down Louisiana's Bayou Lafourche. The bayou branches from the Mississippi River, one of the busiest waterways in the world.



▲ **OIL TANKERS** Carrying more than a million barrels of crude oil, tankers transport cargo from off-shore wells, such as this one in the Gulf of Mexico, to refineries, which process the fuel.



▲ **CONTAINER SHIPS** Container ships transport cargo that has been packed into large rectangular containers. The containers are lifted aboard by huge cranes and unloaded in the same way when the ship reaches its destination.



◀ **AIRCRAFT CARRIERS** Some ships transport not only goods but services, as well. The USS *Saratoga*, left, acts as a moving air base for the United States Navy. Steam-powered catapults on the ship can increase a plane's velocity from 0 to 266 km/h in 2 s, making takeoffs and landings possible.

Conserving Water Photographs of Earth taken from space show a watery planet that has blue oceans and scattered continents. But, less than one percent of Earth's water is available for any of the uses described, except for ocean transportation. That's why it is important to conserve the available freshwater on Earth. The careful use and protection of water is called **water conservation**. Water can be saved and kept clean in many ways.

Much of the water used for irrigation is lost to evaporation. Better methods can conserve water. Instead of flooding the fields, farmers can use overhead sprinklers on their crops. Some farmers install tubing that slowly drips water directly above the roots of the plants. Farmers even use computers in the fight for water conservation. Sensors installed in the ground and connected to a computer can signal when crops need to be watered. In residential and commercial areas, mulching the ground around the plants, as shown in **Figure 13**, helps prevent water loss.



Reading Check

What can gardeners and landscapers do to conserve water?

Industries also can conserve water. Companies can treat and recycle the water that is used in industrial plants. Innovative manufacturing processes that conserve water also might increase plant productivity.

Figure 13 There are several ways to conserve water when watering crops and other plants.

Mulching is a good way to conserve water in residential and commercial areas.



Overhead sprinklers use less water than flooding fields does.

What can you do? Think about the activities you do on a daily basis that include water. Do you know how much water you use in your home and at school? Some estimates are shown in **Figure 14**. Wouldn't it be helpful to conserve some of this water? It can be done. For starters, you could conserve water in your shower. Turn the water off when you are soaping up, then use it just for rinsing. Do the same while brushing your teeth and washing your hands. See whether your home has a low-flow toilet system. Toilets are available that use only 6 L per flush compared to about 19 L per flush for older toilets.

Some ornamental plants require less water than others. What if your school administrators used these plants to landscape your school grounds? Over the course of a year or more, small measures such as these can save large amounts of water.

Did you know the water you showered in this morning could have been in Galileo's teapot or in King Tut's reflecting pool? The water on Earth today has been around for millions, even billions, of years. In the next section, you will see how water continuously cycles through the environment.

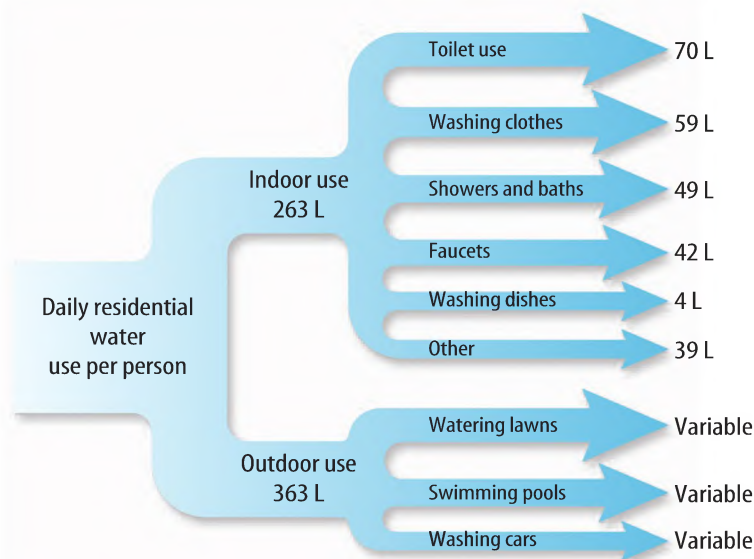


Figure 14 Humans use water every day.

Describe how you use water in your home.

section 2 review

Summary

Water and Life

- Water is essential for life.
- Your body is about 70 percent water.

Water and Society

- Society uses water for many purposes, including industry, agriculture, transportation, and recreation.

Water Use

- Society and nature depend on abundant, clean water.
- Conserving water helps to ensure a steady supply of clean water.

Self Check

1. **Describe** three ways that water is essential for life on Earth.
2. **List** five ways that water is used for recreation.
3. **Explain** why clean water is important for nature and society.
4. **Describe** some methods that agriculture and industry can use to conserve water.
5. **Think Critically** Why might cities restrict residential water use?

Applying Skills

6. **Concept Map** Make a network-tree concept map that shows the ways water is used in society.

Recycling Water

as you read

What You'll Learn

- **Identify** Earth's water reservoirs.
- **Describe** sources of freshwater on Earth.
- **Explain** how water is recycled.

Why It's Important

The water cycle makes water available for many processes on Earth.

Review Vocabulary

cycle: a repeating sequence of events

New Vocabulary

- groundwater
- soil water
- aquifer
- surface water

Earth's Water Reservoirs

Many people call Earth the “water planet” because about 70 percent of Earth’s surface is covered by water. But, only a small portion is available for human use. Of the world’s total water supply, 97 percent is located in the oceans and is salt water. Only about three percent is freshwater, as shown in **Table 1**. More than three-quarters of Earth’s freshwater is frozen in glaciers. Of the less than one percent of Earth’s total water supply that is available for human use, much of it lies beneath Earth’s surface. Next you can think big as you begin your examination of Earth’s water reservoirs with the oceans.

Oceans *Water, water everywhere, but not a drop to drink,* so goes the poem. Ocean water is plentiful on Earth, but it’s salty and therefore not readily available for human use. You would have to remove the salt if you wanted to use ocean water for drinking, bathing, or irrigating crops. Unfortunately, removing salt from ocean water usually isn’t practical, and it is only done in a few arid regions. To find a lot of freshwater, you might want to travel to Earth’s frozen poles.

Ice Glaciers are common in Earth’s polar regions. For example, large areas of Greenland and Antarctica are covered by ice. These ice sheets lock up a high percentage of Earth’s freshwater. Ice accounts for just more than two percent of the total water on Earth, but that’s 77 percent of the planet’s freshwater supply. People have proposed using ships to tow large pieces of polar ice to places that need freshwater. It’s an expensive proposition, and imagine how difficult it would be to tow a large iceberg. Melting the ice into usable water also would be a difficult task.

Table 1 Distribution of Earth’s Water

Location of Water	Total Supply (%)
Oceans	97.2
Glaciers	2.15
Groundwater	0.62
Freshwater lakes	0.009
Saline lakes and inland seas	0.008
Soil water	0.005
Atmosphere	0.001
Stream channels	0.0001

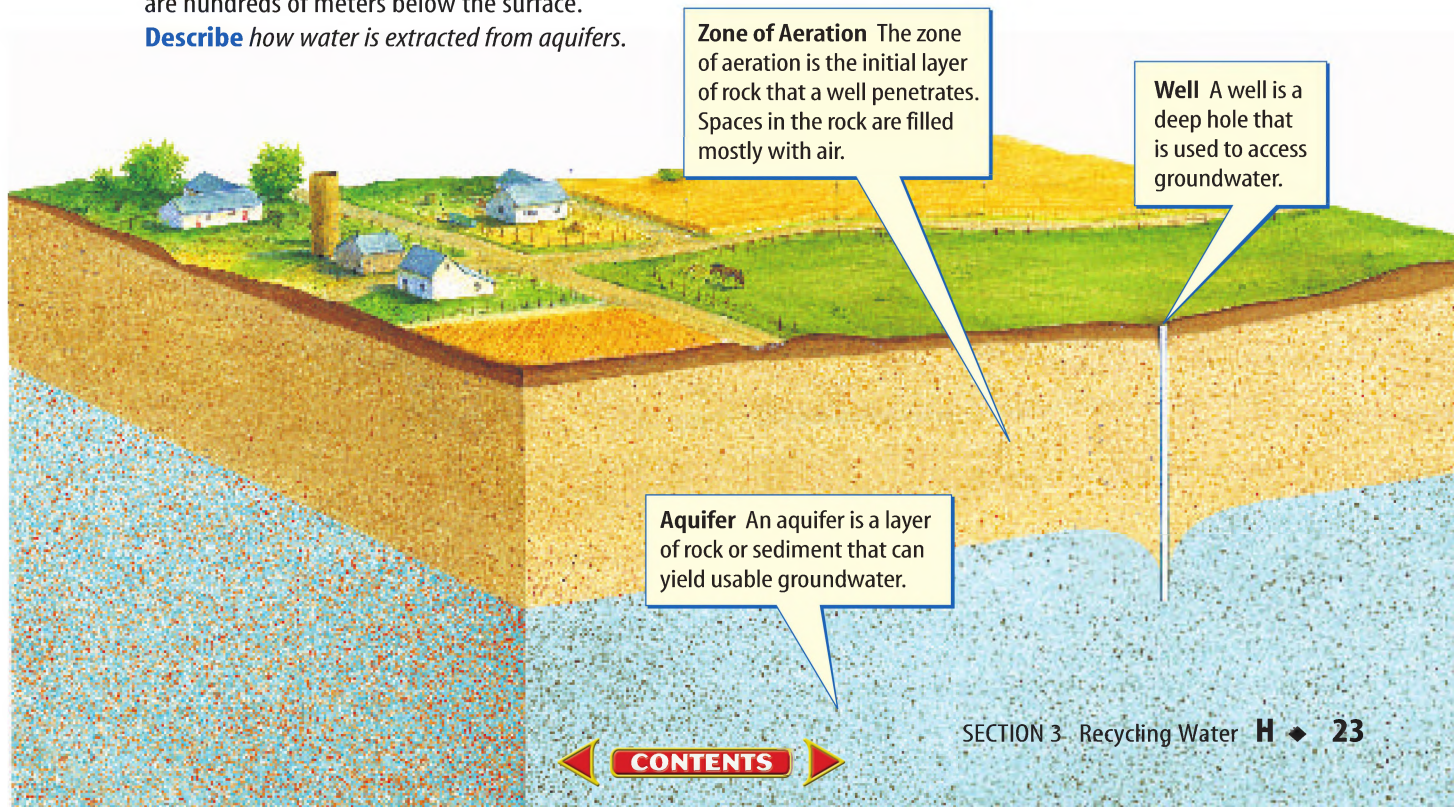
Groundwater You might have wondered what happens to rain after it falls. If you leave a bucket outside in a rainstorm, it can fill quickly with water. Where does the water that lands on the ground go? Some of it runs off and flows into streams, and some evaporates. A large amount soaks into the ground. Water that is held underground in layers of rock and sediment is called **groundwater**. The part of the groundwater that is held within openings in the soil is called **soil water**. It keeps plants and crops alive. People who live in houses that get water from wells are drinking groundwater. The water is purified as it slowly permeates through layers of sediment and rock. However, if groundwater becomes polluted, it can be extremely difficult to clean.

 **Reading Check** *Where is groundwater found?*

Aquifers An **aquifer** is a layer of rock or sediment that can yield usable groundwater. Water collects in the open spaces between rock particles. This water flows slowly from one open space to another at rates of a few meters per year. Sometimes aquifers are used to supply water to towns and farms, as shown in **Figure 15**. The water is pumped to Earth's surface through a well. Sometimes Earth's surface dips below the level where groundwater would be. This is where natural lakes and rivers often are located.

Figure 15 Aquifers are found at different depths. Some are near the surface, and others are hundreds of meters below the surface.

Describe how water is extracted from aquifers.



INTEGRATE History

Dakota Aquifer Water from the Dakota Aquifer, which exists beneath much of the Great Plains region of the United States, was critical for development of this region. In many places, the water in this aquifer is under pressure, so it can flow from wells without pumping. Because of the Dakota Aquifer, early pioneers had easy access to water. The Dakota continues to supply water to the region today.



Figure 16 Your city might have a water-intake plant like this one in Cincinnati, Ohio. Here, water is processed for drinking and many other uses.

Lakes, Rivers, and Ponds You already learned about groundwater. The water at Earth's surface is called **surface water**. It is found in streams, rivers, ponds, lakes, and reservoirs. This is the water you easily can see and use, as shown in **Figure 16**.



Reading Check

What are three sources of surface water?

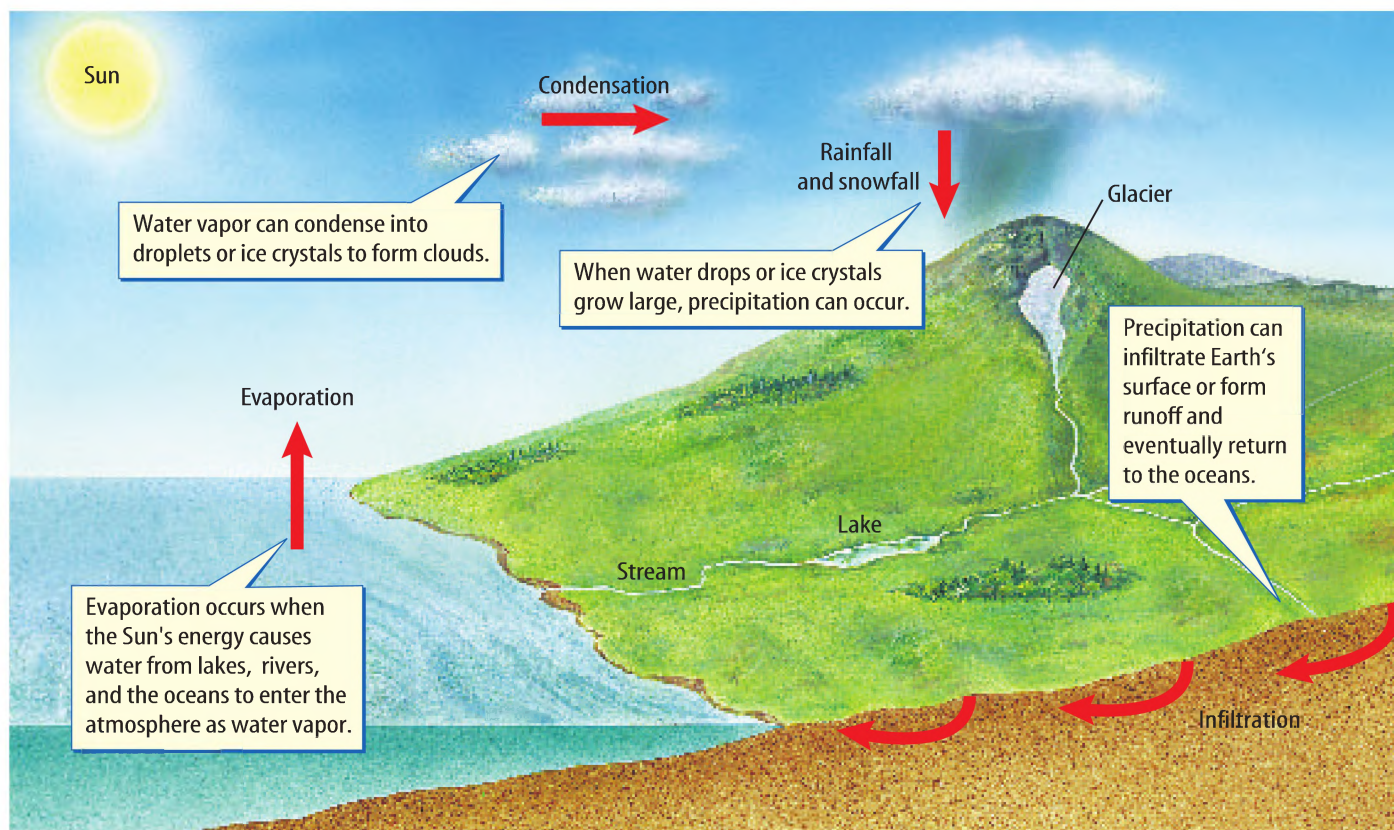
Water in the Atmosphere Have you tried to dry your towel on a towel rack and discovered it remained damp hours later? That's because air holds water, too. Earth's atmosphere can consist of anywhere from near zero to about four percent water vapor by volume. Water vapor in Earth's atmosphere has several important roles. Clouds need it to form; therefore, water vapor is the source of rain, sleet, and snow. But the role of water vapor in the atmosphere is even more complex.

Recall that each time water undergoes a change of state it gives off heat or absorbs heat. For example, heat is given off when water vapor condenses to form the water droplets in clouds. But, heat is absorbed when water evaporates to water vapor. That's why you feel cold when you are soaking wet. The atmosphere uses these heating and cooling properties of water to move energy around. In the process it can brew up wind, storms, and even hurricanes.

Water vapor serves another important function in the atmosphere. Much as a sweater keeps warm air next to your skin, water vapor in the atmosphere absorbs heat and acts as a blanket to help keep Earth warm and hospitable to life.

The Water Cycle

Are you still wondering how water from King Tut's reflecting pool might make it into your morning shower? It is because the water on Earth constantly is recycled through the water cycle. Water evaporates from oceans, lakes, rivers, puddles, and even the ground. It then rises into Earth's atmosphere as water vapor, which condenses to form the droplets and ice crystals in clouds. When the water droplets or ice crystals become heavy enough, they fall back to Earth as rain, snow, or sleet. Rainwater runs off the surface back to rivers, lakes, and finally the ocean, as shown in **Figure 17**. Water continuously circulates in this way.



A Valuable Resource Humans are lucky that water circulates, but this doesn't mean that it doesn't need to be cared for. Now that you have learned how important water is to Earth, you can understand why it is crucial that it be protected. Earth holds many treasures, and water is truly a valuable resource.

Figure 17 Water constantly cycles from Earth to the atmosphere and back to Earth again.

section 3 review

Summary

Earth's Water Reservoirs

- About 70 percent of Earth's surface is covered by water.
- Earth's water reservoirs include the oceans, glacier ice, groundwater, surface water, and water in the atmosphere.
- Groundwater is water that is underground in layers of rock and sediment.

The Water Cycle

- Water constantly is cycled from Earth to the atmosphere and back again.
- Water is one of Earth's most valuable resources.

Self Check

1. **Identify** the percentage of Earth's total water supply that is available as surface freshwater.
2. **Explain** how soil water differs from other groundwater.
3. **Define** the term *aquifer*.
4. **Describe** sources of freshwater on Earth.
5. **Think Critically** How could a water molecule in a puddle near your home get to the ocean?

Applying Math

6. **Use Numbers** Look back at **Table 1**. How many times more water is in Earth's atmosphere than in all of Earth's streams? How many times more water is in soil than in all of Earth's streams?

Conserving Water

Goals

- **Calculate** the amount of water the members of your family use during a three-day period.
- **Design** techniques by which your family can conserve water.
- **Calculate** how much water your family conserves.

Materials

calculator



Real-World Question

Clean water is a valuable resource. The more humans conserve, the fewer problems society will have maintaining the economy, the environment, and general health. How much water can a family conserve during a three-day period?

Form a Hypothesis

Based on the water-use practices of your family members, hypothesize how much water you can conserve as a group during a three-day period.

Test Your Hypothesis

Make a Plan

1. **Consider** the problem, develop a hypothesis, and decide how you will test it. Identify results that will support your hypothesis.
2. **List** the steps you will need to take to test your hypothesis. Be specific. Describe exactly what you will do in each step. List your materials.
3. **Prepare** a data table in your Science Journal to record your observations.
4. **Read** the experiment to make sure all steps are in logical order.
5. **Identify** the variables in your experiment. List all variables that must be kept constant.

Follow Your Plan

1. Make sure your teacher approves your plan before you start.
2. Carry out the experiment as planned.
3. While doing the experiment, record your observations and complete the data table in your Science Journal.

Water Conserved During Three Days

Item	Water Conserved (L)
Toilet	Do not write in this book.
Washing machine	
Others	
Total	

Using Scientific Methods

Analyze Your Data

1. **Calculate** the average amount of water that your family uses on a typical day.
2. **Determine** how much water your family conserved during the three-day period of your experiment.
3. **Compare** your results with those of others.
4. What had to be kept constant in this experiment?
5. What were the variables in this experiment?

Conclude and Apply

1. Did the results support your hypothesis? Explain.
2. **Describe** what effect water conservation would have on the day-to-day habits of a typical American family.
3. **Infer** whether steps taken at home can contribute significantly to water conservation.

Communicating Your Data

Write a step-by-step brochure about water conservation that can be shared with all students and their families. Include simple suggestions about how to conserve water at home.



Not a Drop to Drink

During the next few decades, finding and protecting freshwater supplies will be more important—and more difficult—than ever. Freshwater is needed to keep organisms such as humans alive and well. It also is used in factories and for growing crops.

In some parts of the world, water is especially precious. People might walk from their homes to a community well that might be several miles away. There, they load up on water for cooking, drinking, and bathing. Then they must carry the water back home.

Not a Drop to Drink

This isn't the case in the United States, but the lack of freshwater is a problem in this country, too. In the Southwest, for example, water is scarce. As the population of the region grows,

more and more water is used. Growing cities, such as Phoenix, Arizona, are using freshwater faster than it can be replaced by nature.

To grow food, farmers pump more and more water out of underground aquifers to irrigate, or water, their fields. An aquifer is a layer of rock or sediment that can yield usable groundwater. In some places, the aquifers might run dry because of all the water that is being used.

More Crop for the Drop

Cities and farms often compete for the same water. Irrigation uses a lot more water than people use, so research is being done to find ways for farmers to use less water while still increasing the amount of food they can grow.

Still, even where freshwater is available, it can be too polluted to use. Together, preventing pollution and using water more wisely will help Earth's freshwater supplies last a long time.

Postel's Passion

The problems of freshwater use and their solutions are the concern of Sandra Postel. Postel studies how people use water around the world and how governments are dealing with water use. Her book, *Pillar of Sand*, talks about methods to improve irrigation efficiency. She shows how food and water—two basic human needs—are tied together.

Research Investigate xeriscaping (ZI ruh skay ping)—landscaping homes with native plants that don't require much water. What kinds of local plants can people use? How will this save water?

Science  **online**

For more information, visit
bookh.msscience.com/time

Reviewing Main Ideas

Section 1 The Nature of Water

1. Water exists in three states on Earth—solid, liquid, and gas. Energy is either absorbed or given off when water changes state.
2. Water is a polar molecule.
3. The formation of weak bonds among water molecules causes water to have cohesion.

Section 2 Why is water necessary?

1. Water is essential for life on Earth.

2. Agriculture and industry use freshwater.

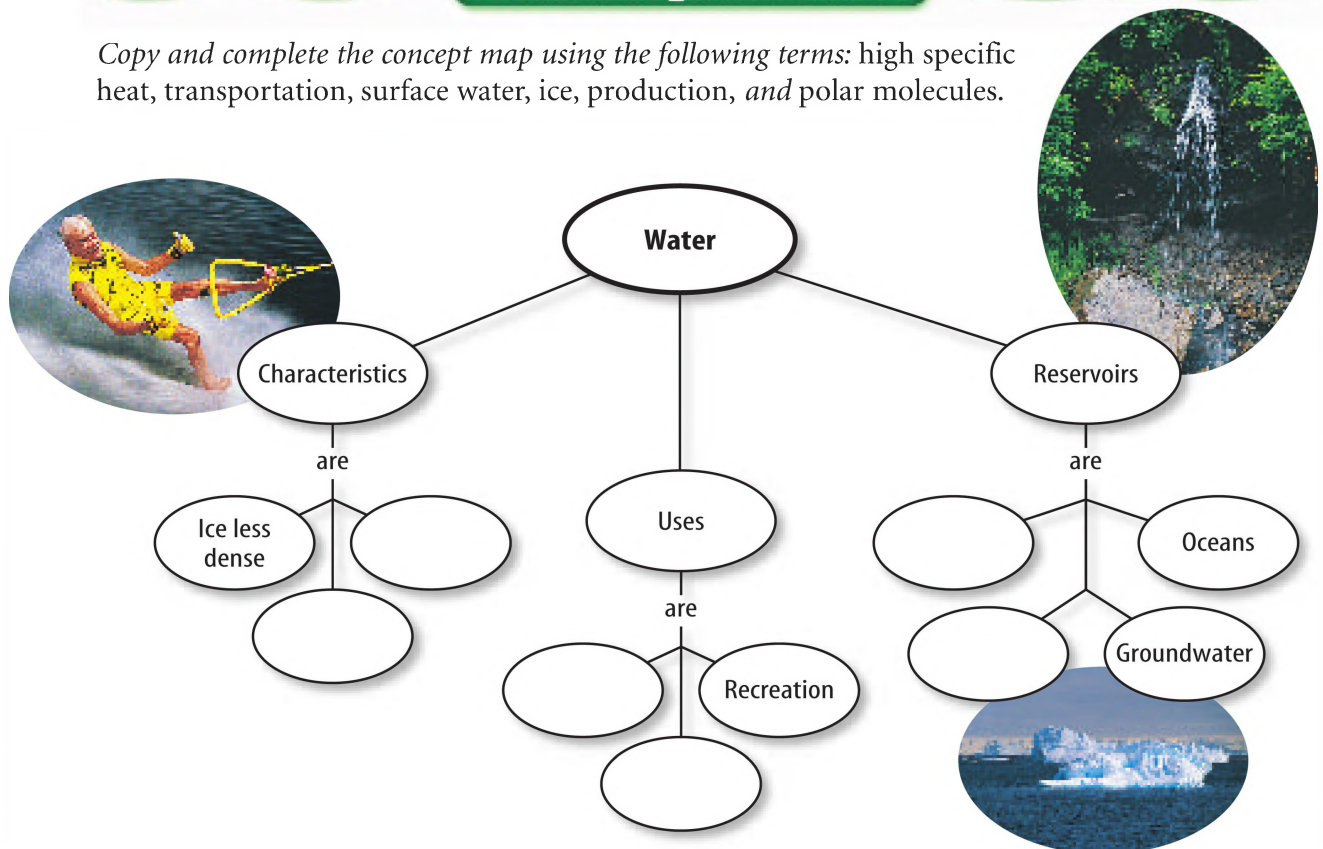
3. Water also is used for transportation and recreation.

Section 3 Recycling Water

1. Most of Earth's water is in the oceans. Less than one percent is available as freshwater.
2. Groundwater is held underground in layers of rock and sediment.
3. Water continuously circulates through Earth's water cycle.

Visualizing Main Ideas

Copy and complete the concept map using the following terms: high specific heat, transportation, surface water, ice, production, and polar molecules.



Using Vocabulary

aquifer p. 23

cohesion p. 12

density p. 11

groundwater p. 23

irrigation p. 17

polar molecule p. 12

soil water p. 23

specific heat p. 14

surface water p. 24

water conservation p. 20

Fill in the blanks with the correct vocabulary word or words.

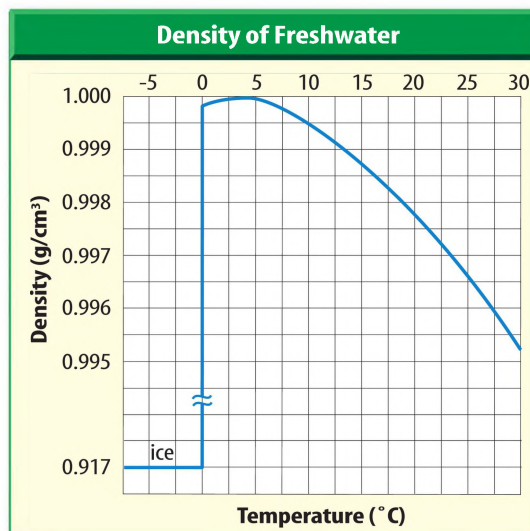
- The _____ of a substance means how massive it is for its size.
- The attraction between water molecules is called _____.
- Lakes, streams, and rivers are _____.
- Water that is held between spaces in the soil is _____.
- The practice of piping water from elsewhere to water plants is _____.

Checking Concepts

Choose the word or phrase that best answers the question.

- Which of the following is water in layers of rock or sediment?
 - groundwater
 - aquifer
 - well
 - surface water
- Which is the amount of heat needed to change ice to water?
 - specific heat
 - heat of vaporization
 - heat of fusion
 - cohesion
- Which of the following is the attraction among water molecules?
 - specific heat
 - density
 - conservation
 - cohesion
- Examine the graph above. At which temperature is freshwater most dense?
 - 10°C
 - 0°C
 - 4°C
 - 15°C
- What is the amount of heat needed to change water to water vapor?
 - specific heat
 - heat of vaporization
 - heat of fusion
 - cohesion
- What is the amount of energy that is needed to raise the temperature of 1 kg of a substance 1°C?
 - specific heat
 - heat of vaporization
 - heat of fusion
 - density
- Which is the pumping of water from one place to another for watering crops?
 - groundwater
 - soil water
 - irrigation
 - aquifer
- Which is a recreational use of water?
 - drinking
 - bathing
 - irrigation
 - kayaking

Use the graph below to answer question 9.



Thinking Critically

- 14. Explain** When ice melts, the temperature of the water stays constant even as heat is added. Explain why this happens.



- 15. Infer** Diving into a pool on your stomach can hurt. Which property of water explains why this is so?
- 16. Recognize Cause and Effect** How does the water cycle produce freshwater from salt water?
- 17. Draw Conclusions** After decades of pumping groundwater, some wells go dry. Explain.
- 18. Recognize Cause and Effect** How is the formation of weak bonds among water molecules responsible for cohesion?
- 19. Form Hypotheses** How could a river continue to flow during a drought?
- 20. Research Information** Select a topic that was discussed in this chapter. Do further research about the topic in the library and write a short paper to inform others about your topic. Make sure that your paper has an introduction, body, and conclusion.
- 21. Communicate** Write a newspaper article about the importance of soil water.

Performance Activities

- 22. Poster** Use photographs from old magazines to create a poster illustrating a variety of different uses for water in society. Combine your poster with those of your classmates.
- 23. Letter** Write a letter to the local water company asking for suggestions about how to conserve water in the home. With your family's help, decide whether you will use some of these suggestions in your home.
- 24. Communicate** Use a word processor to produce a brochure that encourages people to conserve water in their homes.

Applying Math

Use the table below to answer questions 25–27.

Process	Amount of Water (km^3)
Evaporation from ocean	350,000
Precipitation on ocean	310,000
Precipitation on land	100,000
Evaporation from land	60,000
Stream and groundwater flow to oceans	?

- 25. Ocean Water** According to the table, how much more water is evaporated from the ocean than falls on the ocean as precipitation?
- 26. Water on Land** How much more water falls on the land than is evaporated from the land?
- 27. Water Flow** Assuming that Earth's water budget is in balance, how much water must flow from land to the oceans in streams or as groundwater each year?

Part 1 Multiple Choice

Record your answers on the answer sheet provided by your teacher or on a sheet of paper.

Use the photo below to answer question 1.



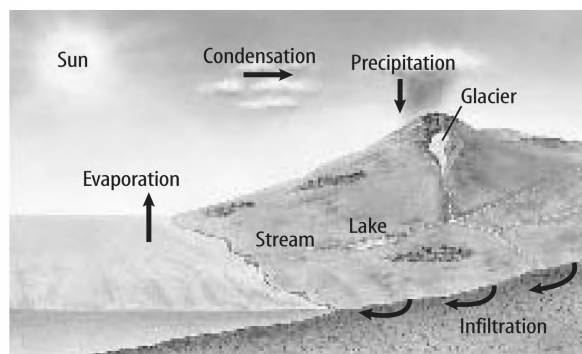
- Which use of water is shown in the photo above?
 - water for industry
 - water for agriculture
 - water for recreation
 - water for transportation
- About what percent of Earth's surface is covered by water?
 - 40%
 - 10%
 - 70%
 - 90%
- Which water reservoir contains the most water?
 - groundwater
 - streams
 - lakes
 - oceans
- Which elements are in water?
 - carbon and oxygen
 - hydrogen and oxygen
 - nitrogen and oxygen
 - hydrogen and carbon

Test-Taking Tip

Consider All Choices Be sure you understand the question before you read the answer choices. Make special note of words like NOT or EXCEPT. Read and consider all the answer choices before you mark your answer sheet.

- What is a layer of rock or sediment that can yield usable groundwater?
 - aquifer
 - well
 - soil
 - glacier
- Which type of water includes lakes, streams, and ponds?
 - groundwater
 - surface water
 - soil water
 - ocean water
- Which indoor, residential activity uses the most water?
 - washing dishes
 - flushing toilets
 - washing clothes
 - showers and baths

Use the diagram below to answer questions 8–10.



- During which process does water change from a liquid to a gas?
 - evaporation
 - runoff
 - condensation
 - infiltration
- Which process transfers water from the atmosphere to Earth's surface?
 - evaporation
 - precipitation
 - infiltration
 - runoff
- During which process does water change from a gas to a liquid?
 - evaporation
 - runoff
 - condensation
 - infiltration

Part 2 Short Response/Grid In

Record your answers on the answer sheet provided by your teacher or on a sheet of paper.

11. Why is water essential for life? List some life processes that need water.
12. How is water used in society? List at least three different ways.
13. What's the difference between latent heat of fusion and latent heat of vaporization?
14. Explain how water can exist beneath Earth's surface.
15. Explain how the temperature of water changes as it is heated from below freezing to boiling.
16. Explain why ice floats on liquid water.
17. List the ways that you use water everyday.

Use the table below to answer questions 18–21.

Substance	Specific Heat (J/kg°C)
Water (pure)	4,186
Ice	2,093
Air (dry)	1,005
Granite rock	294

18. What is the specific heat value for pure water?
19. What is the specific heat value of granite rock?
20. How many more joules does it take to heat one kilogram of water 1°C than one kilogram of granite rock 1°C?
21. Order the four substances from the one that would change temperature most slowly to the one that would change temperature most quickly when heat is added.

Part 3 Open Ended

Record your answers on a sheet of paper.

Use the photo below to answer question 22.



22. What is cohesion? Why can the insect shown above dart across the surface of a pond?
23. Explain why it is important to protect the quality of Earth's freshwater supply.
24. Explain how water is important for transportation of products.
25. How can water be used more efficiently during irrigation?
26. Where is most freshwater located on Earth? Why is it difficult for people to use this water?
27. How does the water cycle supply freshwater to Earth's land surface?
28. Why does water rise through a plant's stem to the leaves?
29. How does water exist in Earth's atmosphere?
30. Make a drawing of a water molecule. Label each atom in the molecule.
31. Explain why the water molecule is a polar molecule. Which parts of the molecule have a slight positive charge? Which part has a slight negative charge?

Freshwater at Earth's Surface

chapter preview

sections

- 1 Streams
 - 2 Lakes and Reservoirs
Lab Lake Nutrients
 - 3 Wetlands
 - 4 Pollution of Freshwater
Lab Adopt a Stream
-  **Virtual Lab** How can water pollution be detected?

Flowing Rivers

Rivers shape Earth's surface and provide a home for many organisms. The water flowing through rivers constantly moves sediment from one place to another. This changes the shape of the land. Organisms from algae to fish to beavers live in river and other freshwater environments.

Science Journal Write a vivid description of one type of river environment. You might choose a waterfall, a gentle river meander, a river sandbar, or a swift whitewater region.

Start-Up Activities



How do lake nutrients mix?

The temperature of lake water affects the distribution of nutrients. During summer, warm surface water can be low in nutrients. During autumn, surface water cools, and nutrient-rich deep water mixes throughout the lake.

1. Label a sheet of graph paper with depth on the vertical axis and temperature on the horizontal axis.
2. Plot the data points for June and November with a different colored pencil. Connect each set of data points with a smooth curve or line.
3. **Think Critically** Explain how seasonal changes in a lake's temperature profile allow nutrients to mix throughout the lake.

Lake Temperature

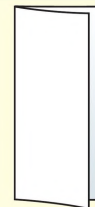
	June	Nov.
Depth (m)	T (°C)	T (°C)
0	18	7
5	16	7
10	13	7
15	11	7

FOLDABLES™ Study Organizer

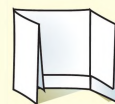
Freshwater at Earth's Surface

Make the following Foldable about lakes, streams, and wetlands.

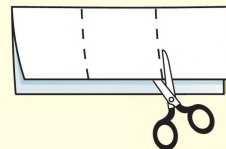
- STEP 1** **Fold** a sheet of paper from side to side. Make the front edge about 1.25 cm shorter than the back edge.



- STEP 2** **Turn** lengthwise and **fold** into thirds.



- STEP 3** **Unfold and cut** only the top layer along both folds to make three tabs.



- STEP 4** **Label** each tab as shown.



Read and Write Before you read the chapter, describe each source of freshwater on the front of the tabs. As you read the chapter, write information about each under the tabs.



Preview this chapter's content
and activities at
bookh.msscience.com

Streams

as you read

What You'll Learn

- **Discuss** the distribution of Earth's water.
- **Compare and contrast** stream types.
- **Describe** how streams erode and deposit sediment.

Why It's Important

Streams change Earth's surface and can cause flooding.

Review Vocabulary

stream: a body of water in a channel that flows downhill because of gravity

New Vocabulary

- runoff
- load
- meandering stream
- stream discharge
- point bar
- floodplain
- braided stream
- drainage basin

Where is Earth's freshwater?

Water is essential for life. Plants use water, along with carbon dioxide, to make food with the aid of sunlight. Animals use water to move nutrients and wastes through their bodies. Humans can survive for weeks without food, but for only a few days without freshwater. How much of the water on Earth is freshwater? As **Figure 1** shows, freshwater at Earth's surface is a minute fraction of all the water on the planet. Learning about freshwater on Earth and the factors that can affect this precious resource helps protect the life that depends on it.

Runoff

Think about the last time you were outside when it suddenly started raining. As you ran for cover, what did you notice about where all the water was going? Some of it was sinking into the ground, but much of it was flowing over the surface of Earth. The water that doesn't sink in, but instead runs across Earth's surface, is **runoff**.

As water falls on Earth's surface, runoff moves from higher to lower areas. Over time, the water enters small channels and eventually flows into streams. The slope of the land, how much vegetation is on it, and how much it rains help determine how much water runs off into stream channels.

Figure 1 If 1 L of water represents all of Earth's water, a drop represents all the water in lakes and rivers.

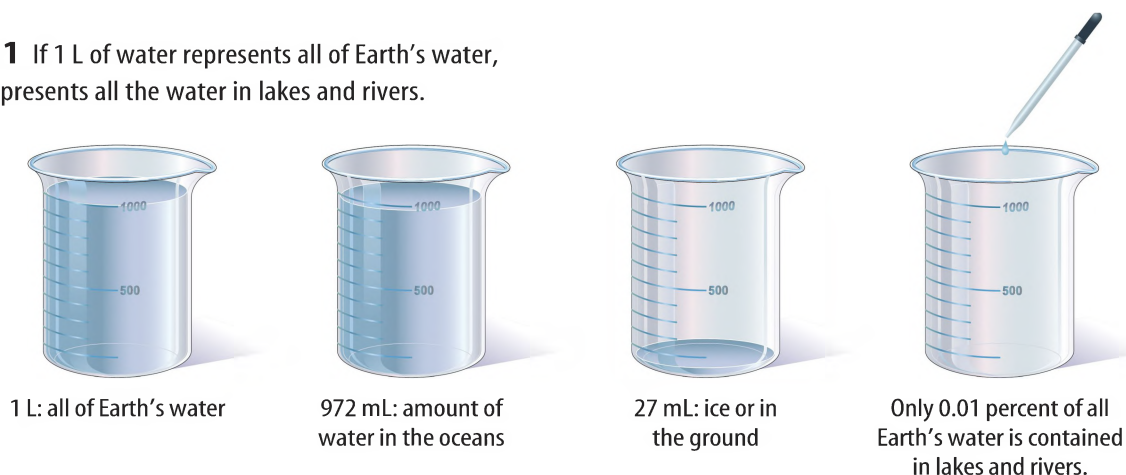
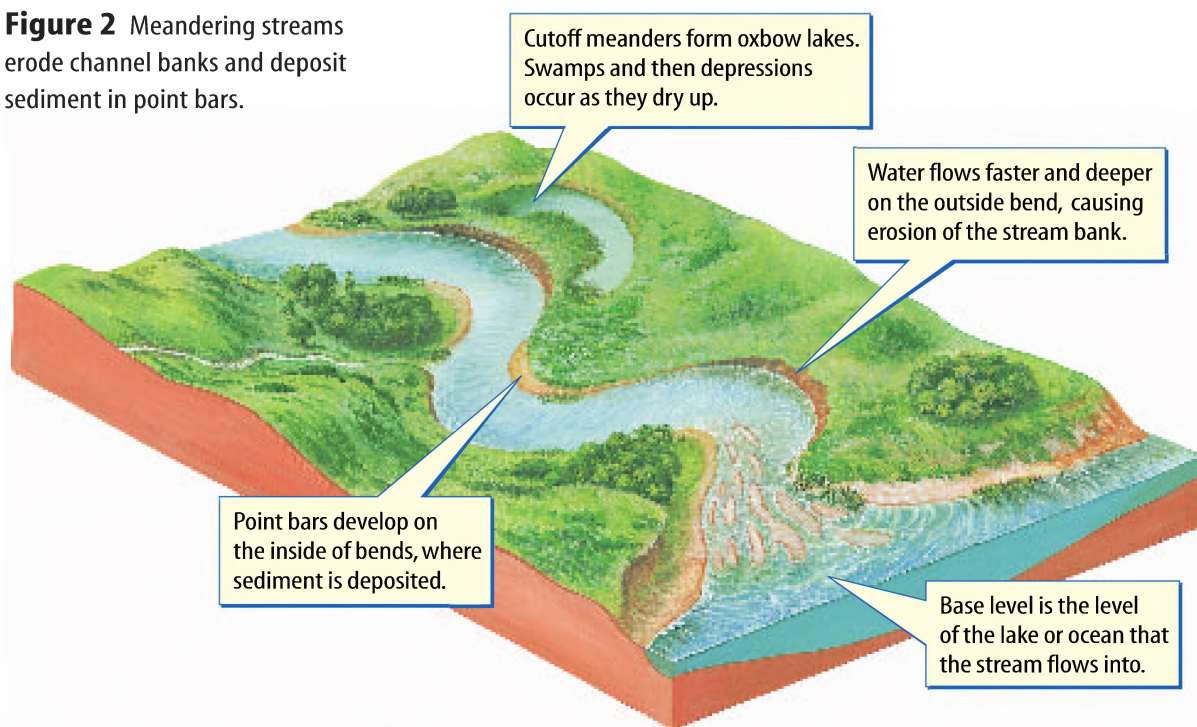


Figure 2 Meandering streams erode channel banks and deposit sediment in point bars.



Types of Streams

Do all streams and rivers look the same to you? Some are narrow, and others are wide. Some streams have a lot of turns and twists, and others flow straight. However, all streams shape Earth's surface. Water flowing over Earth's surface erodes the land by wearing away rock and moving weathered rock and soil. However, a stream can erode Earth's surface no deeper than its base level, the level of the water body that the stream flows into.

Meandering Streams Streams that have channels with many curves, as shown in **Figure 2**, are called **meandering streams**. Rivers that meander usually develop on low slopes and carry a lot of fine sediment, such as silt and clay. The water in meandering streams erodes the land in some places and deposits sediment in others. For example, water on the outside of a bend, or meander, is deeper and flows faster, so it erodes the bank of the stream. Water on the inside of a meander flows slower, so sediment gets deposited there. Soon a **point bar**, a pile of sand and gravel that is deposited on the inside of a meander, forms.

 **Reading Check** *How do point bars form?*

Meandering streams are always changing. Erosion on the outside of a meander and deposition of sediment on the inside cause the stream to move back and forth across its valley over time. Meanders also slowly migrate down the valley.

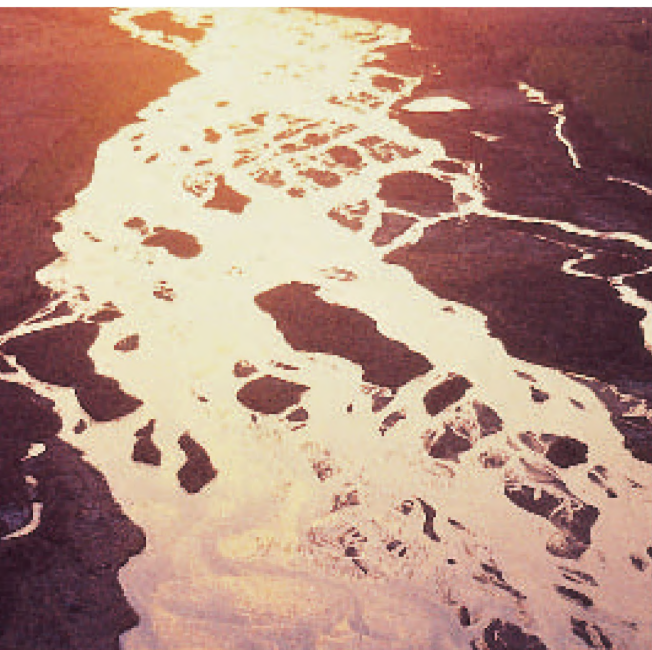


Figure 3 Water channels flowing around bars in the Platte River resemble a braid.

Braided Streams Eroded sediment, such as sand and gravel, can be deposited in the middle of a stream channel, forming bars. As the bars develop, water flows through many different channels. Sometimes these bars get so large that they become islands within the river. Streams with many bars and islands separated by river channels are called **braided streams**. One well-known braided stream is the Platte River in Nebraska, shown in **Figure 3**.

Drainage Basins

Because of gravity, water falling on Earth's surface flows downhill until it reaches the lowest level that it can flow to—its base level. Streams transport water from higher ground to an ocean or a lake. Each stream drains water from a specific area of Earth's surface. This area is called the stream's

drainage basin. As shown in **Figure 4**, large rivers, like the Mississippi, can have huge drainage basins that include many smaller streams.

Divides An elevated area of land called a divide separates the drainage basin of one stream from the drainage basin of another. Divides can be as small as a ridge or as large as a mountain range. An area that separates drainage basins of an entire continent is called a continental divide, shown in **Figure 4**.

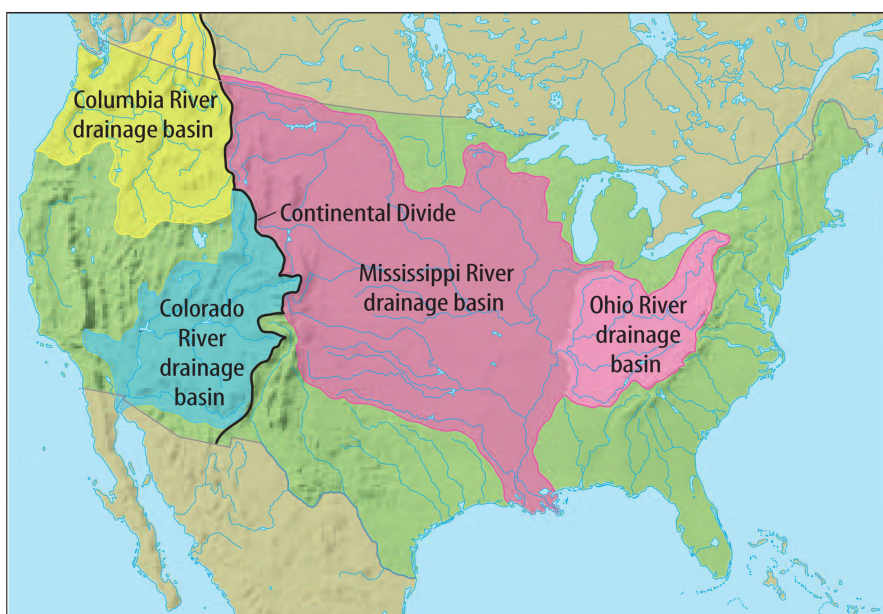
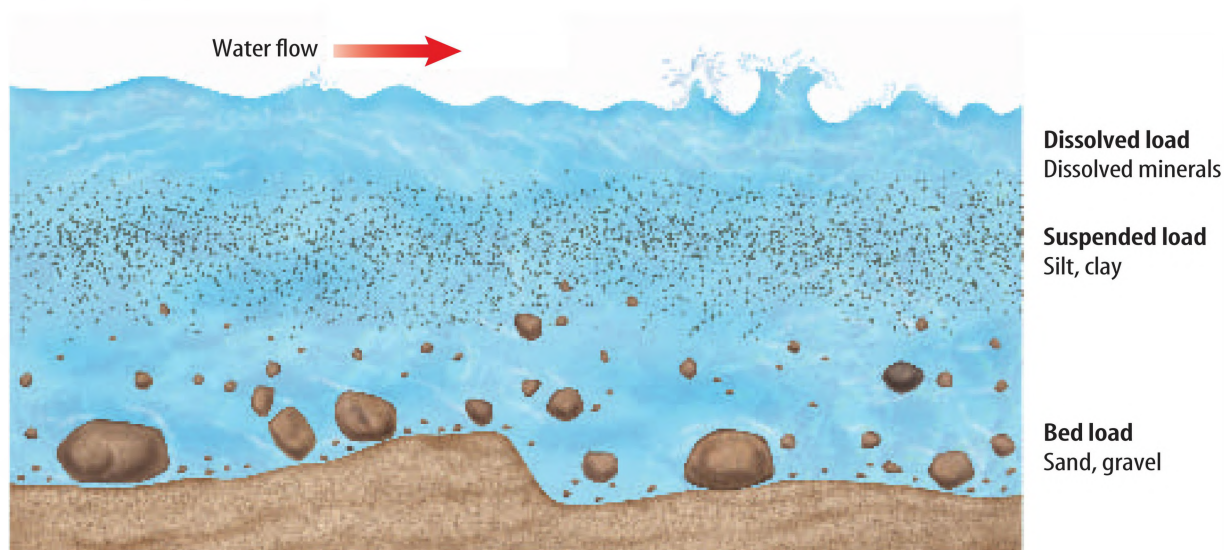


Figure 4 Some of the major drainage basins in the United States are shown here.
Explain why the highest ridge of the Rocky Mountains is called the Continental Divide.

Figure 5 A stream carries material from one place to another.

Identify which type of load cannot be seen in the water.



Stream Erosion

As you have learned, streams erode Earth's surface. Streams remove rock and sediment from some places and transport it to other places. Streams erode in two important ways. The force of the flowing water in a stream can be strong enough to move loose sediment, such as silt, sand, and gravel. The faster the water flows, the more sediment a stream moves. The sediment that is moved by the water allows streams to erode in another way. When the grains of sediment hit rock on the stream bottom, small pieces can be broken off of the rock and carried away.



Load Sediment that is carried by a stream is called stream **load**. The three different types of stream load, as shown in **Figure 5**, are bed load, suspended load, and dissolved load. Sediment that moves along the bed of a stream by rolling, bouncing, or sliding is the bed load. These are particles that are too heavy to be carried by the flowing water. When sediment is light enough to become suspended in the water, it is carried by the stream as suspended load. Suspended load makes some streams appear to be muddy. Some rock materials become dissolved in water and are carried in solution by the stream as dissolved load. Much of the dissolved load is carried into streams by groundwater.



Reading Check What type of stream load rolls, bounces, and slides along a stream's bottom?

Mini LAB

Modeling Stream Flow

Procedure

1. Obtain a large, flat pan or stream table.
2. Fill one end of the pan with sand, tilt the pan at a 10° angle, and form a small channel through the sand.
3. Using flexible tubing, direct a flow of water into the channel in the sand.
4. Using a bucket, catch the water at the bottom of the pan.

Analysis

1. Observe what happened to the sand as the water flowed in the pan.
2. Did you model a meandering or a braided stream?



Figure 6 This canyon formed when the Big Horn River in Montana cut downward as the land rose.

Canyon Formation Sometimes the land on which a stream is located is uplifted gradually. This uplifting changes the distance from the stream to its base level. The streambed becomes steeper, and the stream cuts down into its channel. Even if the stream is wide with many meanders, the gradual change in elevation can cause it to cut down while it continues to follow its original channel. Over time, the stream can carve a steep canyon along its course, as shown in **Figure 6**.



Reading Check

How does a canyon form?

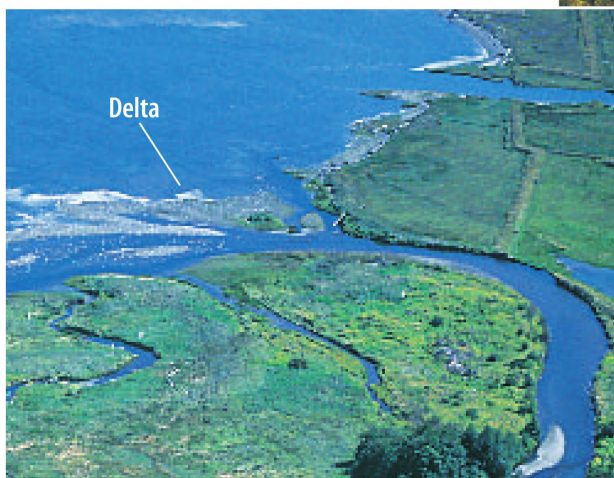
Stream Deposition

You have been learning about how a stream erodes its channel, but do you know why the load carried by a stream eventually is deposited somewhere, such as in the bars shown in **Figure 7**? Think about the last time you worked until you were physically exhausted. When you started the job, you had lots of energy and worked quickly. As the job continued, you had less energy and became tired. It became harder to move things after your energy supply was reduced. You can think about water in the same way. When water has a lot of energy, as it does when a stream has large volumes of fast-moving water, it carries and moves more sediment. As water loses energy, it drops some of its load. Heavier pieces of sediment drop out first, then the lighter pieces are deposited. Where does this occur? It occurs where the speed of the water decreases.

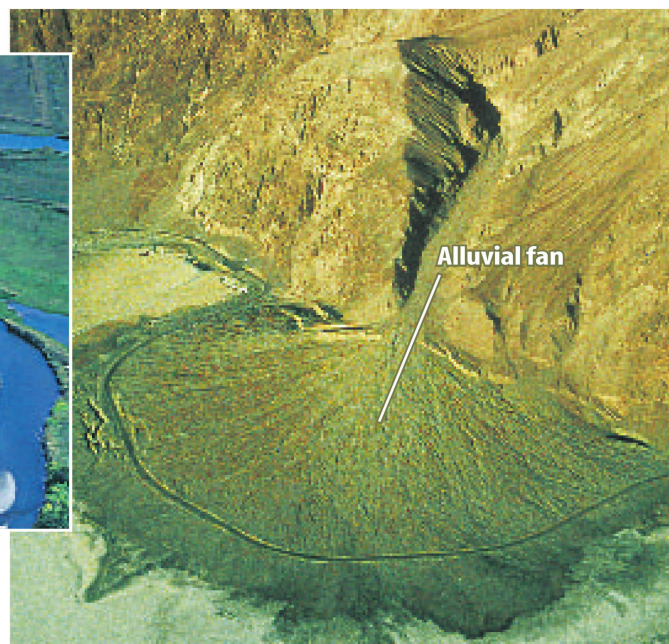
Figure 7 Whether stream sediment is carried or deposited depends upon the speed of flowing water. Bars form where the speed of water slows, and stream load is deposited.

Explain why these bars might change during a flood.





Deltas form where streams such as the Dungeness River in Washington State deposit sediment into a body of water.



Alluvial fans form where a stream deposits sediment onto a flat area of land.

Deltas and Alluvial Fans Water in a stream loses energy and might deposit sediment where the streambed becomes flatter, or where the stream channel widens. However, a stream has the least amount of energy when it reaches its base level. As a stream empties into a body of water such as a lake, gulf, or bay, the remaining sediment is deposited, forming a delta such as the one shown in **Figure 8**. The deposited sediment eventually raises the bottom of the water body, and the stream forms new channels through the deposit. Eventually, the delta grows and new land is created.

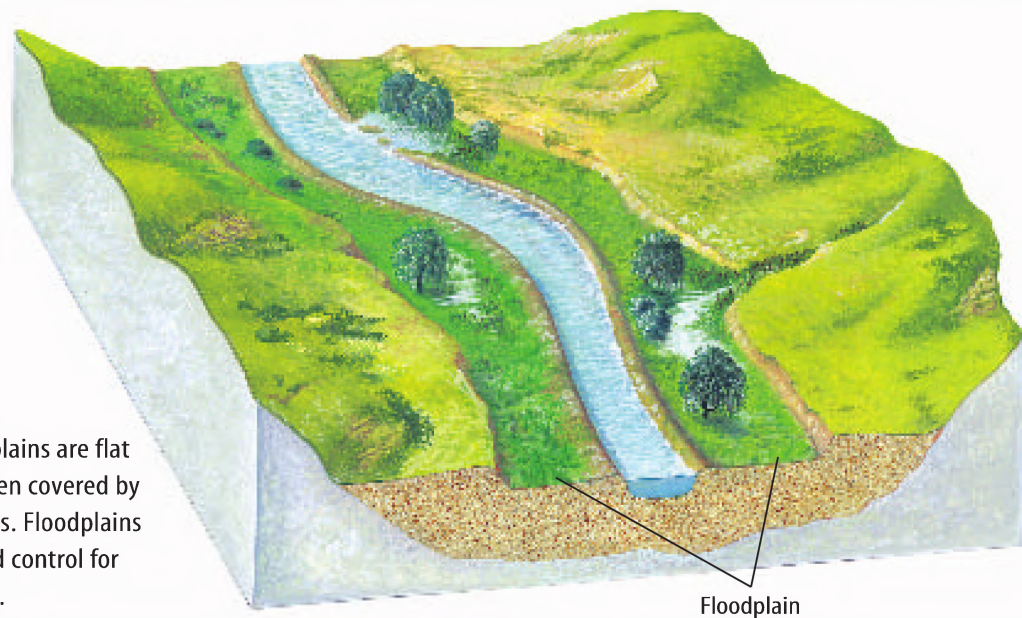
When a fast-moving mountain stream flows onto a flat plain or valley, a fan-shaped deposit of sediment, called an alluvial fan often forms. Alluvium is rock and sediment that is deposited by streams. Alluvial fans are similar to deltas, except that alluvial fans form on land, whereas a delta forms in the water.

Floods

The volume of water flowing through a stream in a given amount of time is called **stream discharge**. For example, if 200 m^3 of water flow past a point along the stream channel in 1 s, the discharge is $200 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$. Heavy rain or melting ice and snow can lead to an increase in discharge. As discharge increases, the stream's speed also increases and it can carry more sediment. This can lead to erosion of the stream channel.

Figure 8 Deltas and alluvial fans form where a stream deposits sediment.

Figure 9 Floodplains are flat regions of land often covered by water during floods. Floodplains act as natural flood control for downstream areas.



Floodplains Sometimes a stream's discharge increases so much that the river channel cannot hold the increased volume of water. Water flows onto the stream's floodplain. The **floodplain** of a stream is the region of land next to the stream channel that is covered by water during a flood, as shown in **Figure 9**. When the water overflows its banks, it spreads out over the floodplain and the speed of the water flow decreases. Sediment is deposited on the floodplain. Floodplains help reduce stream discharge downstream, reduce erosion, and collect new, fertile soil from stream deposits.

Controlling Floods Floodplains have some features of ideal building sites. Flat, level ground that is full of rich soil is a perfect place to build a community. Unfortunately, as many people have experienced, living on a floodplain can have serious consequences—the floodplain often is covered with water.

One way to control a flood is to build artificial levees, which are mounds of soil placed on the sides of a stream channel. The levees help keep the water within the channel, protecting the property and lives of people who live nearby. However, building levees sometimes can affect downstream regions. Farther downstream, where levees might not be built, more severe flooding could occur because more water is flowing in the stream channel. The water also flows faster and causes more erosion. During times of heavy stream discharge, levees might not remain intact. If a levee breaks in one area, the floodwater becomes trapped on the floodplain and cannot easily return to the stream channel. The area can remain flooded for weeks.



Topic: Flood Control

Visit bookh.msscience.com for Web links to information about flood control.

Activity Using photos and diagrams, prepare a public information brochure about one type of flood control. Describe the risks and benefits associated with this flood-control method in your brochure.

Changing Stream Flow Dams have been used for flood control for many years. Flood-control dams store the additional stream discharge and let it out a little at a time, thus preventing the flood. However, dams are expensive and can be difficult to build. They also create large water areas that once were land, and they block the movement of river organisms.

Stream channels can be altered to hold more water. Dredging the channel makes it deeper and straighter, allowing the water to move faster and perhaps preventing it from rising to flood stage. This flood-control method, shown in **Figure 10**, is called channelization. However, some problems are associated with this method. As more water moves faster, erosion of the stream banks and channel increases. Often, trees that shade the stream and keep the water cool must be removed to channelize the river. Cooler water has more oxygen and often has a wider variety of organisms in it than warm water does. In addition, increasing the stream discharge in one part of a stream can make downstream flooding worse.

Perhaps the best solution to flood problems is to use the land wisely. Identify areas of the floodplain that are likely to be flooded and then use the area appropriately. For example, in agricultural areas, farmers can wait until after spring rains to plant some crops. Many communities carefully control development, permitting buildings only on areas above the floodplain.



Figure 10 Channelizing a stream involves removing Earth materials to straighten and deepen the stream channel.

Explain why this might be a temporary solution to flooding.

section

1

review

Summary

Types of Streams

- Meandering streams have channels with many curves.
- Bars separate channels in braided streams.

Stream Erosion

- Streams pick up and move sediment.
- A stream's load includes bed load, suspended load, and dissolved load.

Stream Deposition

- Streams deposit sediment where water speed decreases.
- Floods occur when streams overflow their banks.

Self Check

1. **Describe** how much of Earth's water is found in streams and lakes.
2. **Explain** why streams deposit sediment on the inside of a meander.
3. **Explain** how divides separate different drainage basins.
4. **Think Critically** A community near a river that floods frequently builds levees and straightens the river channel. How might this affect downstream regions?

Applying Math

5. **Solve One-Step Equations** The slope of a stream equals the change in elevation divided by the distance over which it flows. If a stream drops 75 m over 3 km, what is the stream's average slope?

Lakes and Reservoirs

as you read

What You'll Learn

- **Explain** how lakes form.
- **Describe** organisms found in lakes.
- **Summarize** how lakes change through time.

Why It's Important

Natural and human-made lakes are an important source of drinking water and recreation.

Review Vocabulary

density: the mass of a substance divided by its volume

New Vocabulary

- nutrient
- eutrophication
- turnover

Formation of Lakes

Do you remember the last time you were outside after a heavy rain? You probably had to step around a lot of puddles. Puddles form when water collects in a depression in the ground. Lakes and ponds form in a similar way.

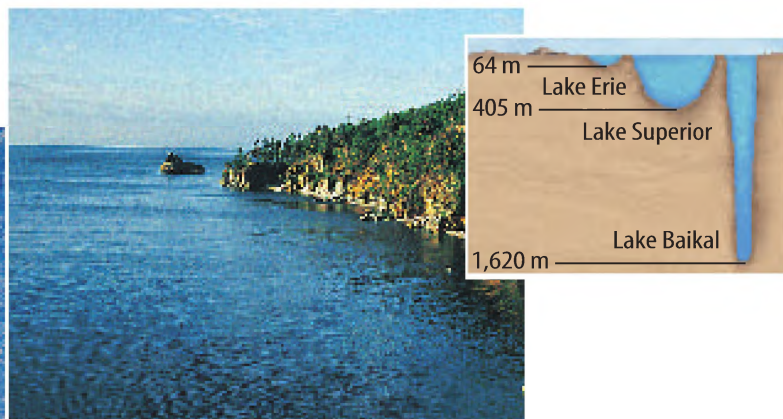
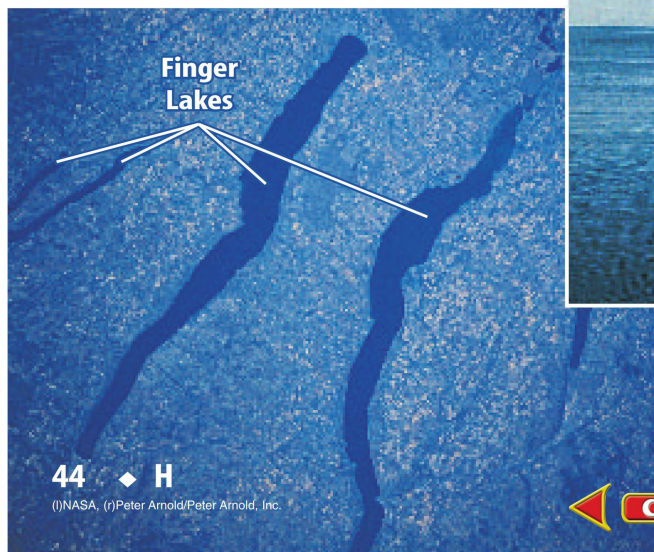
Lakes and ponds are bodies of relatively still, or standing, water. Although no definite size distinguishes a lake from a pond, lakes generally are larger and deeper than ponds. Water enters lakes from streams and rivers, by rain or snow falling on or near the depression, and from groundwater. **Figure 11** shows that lakes can form in many different ways. You will see how this happens by first looking at natural and then human-made lakes.

Reading Check How does water enter lakes?

Natural Lakes Many North American lakes, including the Great Lakes, formed when glaciers scoured out depressions that filled with rainwater, groundwater, or water from melting ice. Lakes also formed when sediment that was deposited by glaciers dammed the flow of streams.

Figure 11 Lakes form when natural and human-made structures capture freshwater.

The Finger Lakes in New York state formed when glaciers scoured out depressions in Earth's crust.



Some lakes form when Earth's surface is stretched. Lake Baikal in Russia is among the world's deepest lakes.

Crustal Movements Movement of Earth's crust can create depressions that fill with water. These lakes often form along faults—surfaces along which rocks break and move. Rock lying between two faults can sink to form a depression. If Earth's crust continues to move along the faults, the lake will deepen. Lake Baikal in Russia, shown in **Figure 11**, formed because blocks of rock moved along faults.

Lakes also can form after a volcanic eruption. Magma from beneath Earth's surface can spill out of a volcano. The top of the volcano then might collapse into the partially emptied magma chamber and form a large depression called a caldera. Rainwater and runoff later fill the caldera.

 **Reading Check** *How do calderas form?*

Human-Made Lakes When a dam is built within a stream, a human-made lake forms. Often, the lake that is formed behind the dam is used to supply drinking water for nearby cities and for irrigation of farmland. When water in a natural or artificially created lake is used for human consumption, the lake is called a reservoir.

Lake Mead, on the Nevada-Arizona border, was created in 1936 when the Hoover Dam was built across the Black Canyon, blocking the flow of the Colorado River. As shown in **Figure 11**, Hoover Dam is one of the largest human-made dams in the world. Like many human-made lakes, Lake Mead is used for flood control, water supply, and recreation. Lake Mead also is used to generate power. Water moving through Hoover Dam produces enough electricity to serve 1.3 million people per year.

This lake in Ecuador formed when the top of a volcano collapsed and filled with rainwater.




Topic: Hoover Dam
 Visit bookh.msscience.com for Web links to information about Hoover Dam and Lake Mead.
Activity Create a call-out poster illustrating important details about Hoover Dam and Lake Mead.

Hoover Dam blocks the flow of the Colorado River to form Lake Mead.



Life in Lakes

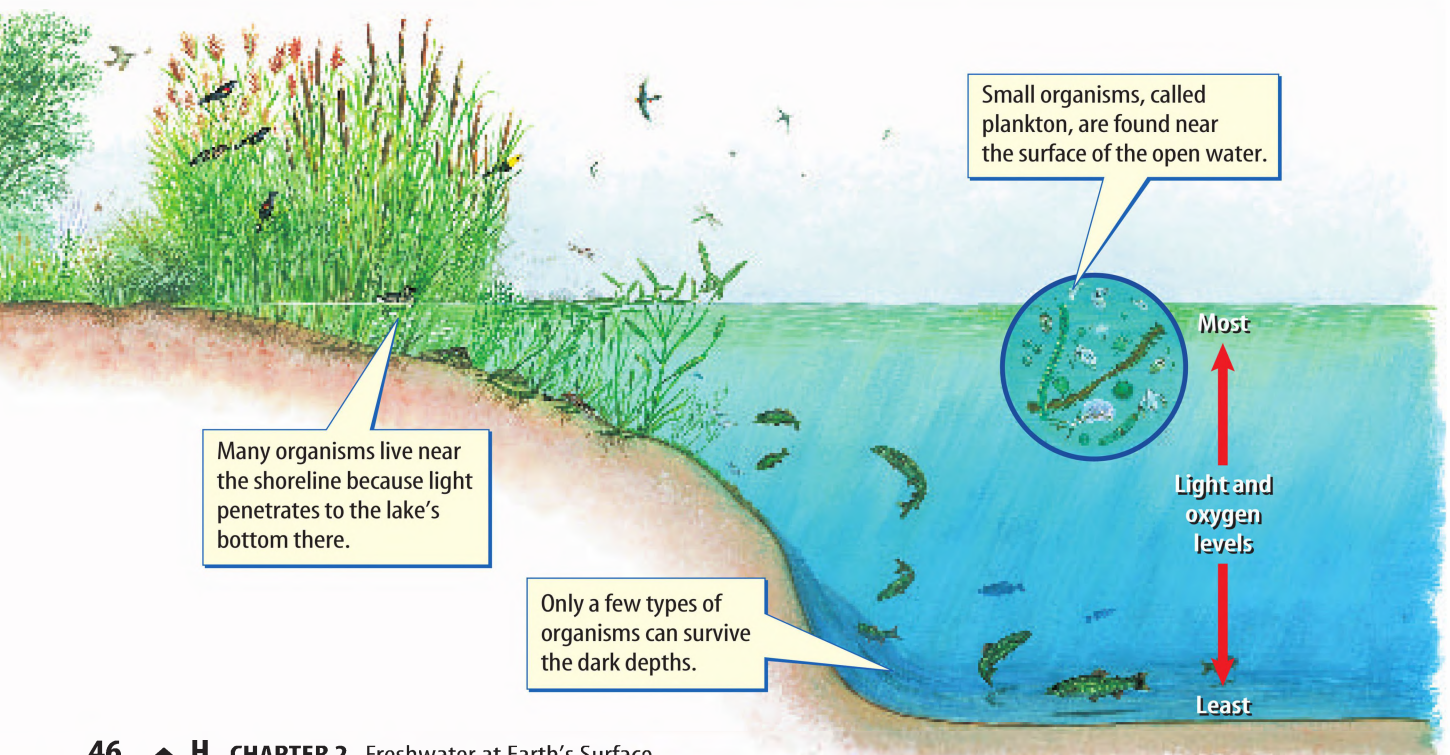
Do you remember the last time you went to a lake? Perhaps you saw one on a nature program at school or at home. Although lakes usually look peaceful, they are full of life. Insects skim across the surface as birds swoop after them. A frog jumps into the water from the shore. A large swirl tells you a fish has caught its dinner.

Many types of organisms can be found in different parts of lakes, as shown in **Figure 12**. Near a shallow, gently sloping shoreline, light penetrates to the lake bottom, allowing many types of rooted aquatic plants to grow. As plants use sunlight to make food, they produce oxygen that other organisms need. Plants also provide many places for small organisms to hide from hungry predators. Organisms that use land and water, such as amphibians, also are found here.

If you take a boat ride to the middle of the lake, you'll notice fewer insects as the boat moves toward open water. You won't see any frogs. Plenty of organisms still live here, but as **Figure 12** shows, most are too small for you to see. Because sunlight cannot penetrate to the bottom of a deep lake, rooted plants cannot survive there, so frogs and small fish have nowhere to hide.

Wormlike organisms, bacteria that feed on dead plants and animals, and animal wastes that fall from higher layers of the lake are found on the lake bottom. Some fish species, such as lake trout, are found in deep waters of large lakes where they feed on the organisms found there.

Figure 12 The depth to which sunlight penetrates into lake water helps determine the types of organisms found in various lake zones.



Sediment and Nutrients

Is a lake forever a lake? When streams and rivers empty into lakes, they deposit sediment on the lake bottom. A lake might fill more quickly if **nutrients**—compounds such as nitrates and phosphates that are used by plants, algae, and some plankton to help them grow—are in the water.

Over time, the deposited sediment decreases the depth of the lake so sunlight can penetrate more of the lake bottom. More plants grow, so more organisms can hide in them and use the oxygen they produce. More life means more death. As organisms die, they sink and decay, adding more material to the lake bottom and releasing more nutrients into the water. This cycle, shown in **Figure 13**, continues until the lake becomes eutrophic. **Eutrophication** (yew troh fuh KAY shun) is an increase in nutrients and organisms that is a normal part of a lake's life. Eventually, the lake will become dry land.



Plankton Two types of plankton are found in lakes—phytoplankton and zooplankton. Which of these makes food from sunlight and which doesn't? Write your answer in your Science Journal.

Applying Math Solve One-Step Equations

BAY DEPTH A small bay in a large lake is filling at a rate of 0.1 cm per year. If the water in the bay averages 100 cm deep, how long will it take for the bay to become land?

Solution

- 1 *This is what you know:*
 - infill rate: $r = 0.1 \text{ cm/y}$
 - average depth of bay: $d = 100 \text{ cm}$
- 2 *This is what you need to find out:*

time: t
- 3 *This is the procedure you need to use:*
 - Put the known values into the equation.
$$\text{time} = \frac{\text{depth}}{\text{infill rate}}$$
 - Solve the equation for *time*:
$$\text{time} = \frac{100 \text{ cm}}{0.1 \text{ cm/y}} = 1,000 \text{ y}$$
- 4 *Check your answer:*

Multiply the answer by the infill rate:
 $1,000 \text{ y} \times 0.1 \text{ cm/y} = 100 \text{ cm}$
The answer is correct.

Practice Problems

1. A different bay in the same lake is filling at a rate of 0.3 cm/y. This bay averages 150 cm deep. How long will it take to fill?
2. A boat-launch area is filling at a rate of 1 cm/y. It has an average depth of 200 cm. At least 50 cm are needed to safely launch the boats. How long will boats be able to use the area?



For more practice, visit
[bookh.msscience.com/
math_practice](http://bookh.msscience.com/math_practice)

Figure 13

Eutrophication is a natural process that ultimately turns a lake into land. Under natural conditions, this process normally takes hundreds, even thousands, of years. The stages by which a lake can become dry land are shown here.



A With little sediment and few nutrients flowing into this lake, its clear waters remain deep and relatively free of living organisms.



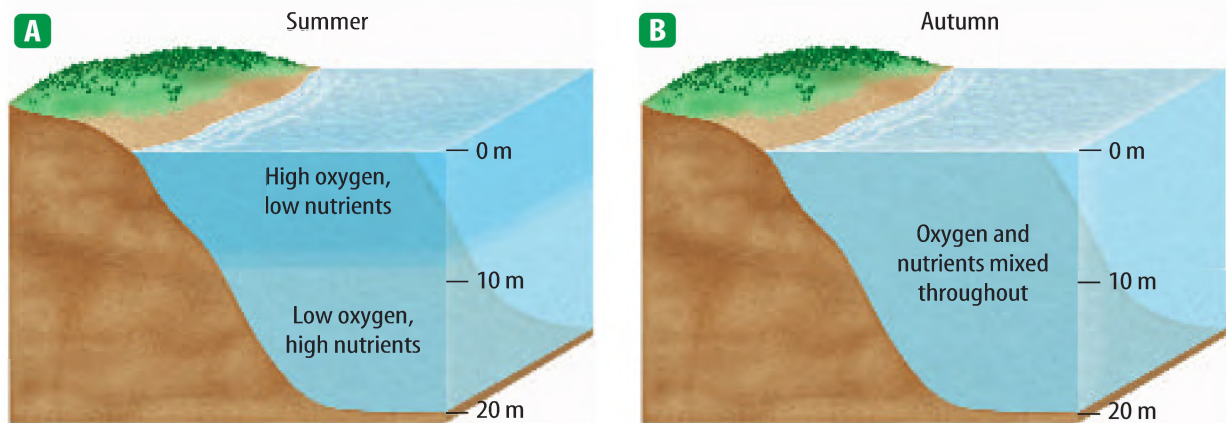
B Sediment accumulating in a lake can decrease its depth, making light available to more of the lake bottom. Nutrients encourage plant growth.



C Plants and algae gradually cover the lake's entire surface. Dead plant matter accumulates and decays on the bottom, depleting the oxygen content of the water.



D Eventually the lake fills in and becomes land.



Turnover When organisms die, they sink to the lake bottom, decay, and nutrients are released into the water. In deep lakes of the northern United States, these nutrients are concentrated at the bottom of the lake during summer and are not available to many organisms. The water in the lake's upper layer warms during summer and becomes less dense than the layers below. Because of the different densities, little mixing occurs between layers. When summer ends, the surface water becomes cooler and denser. It sinks and mixes with nutrient-rich water. This mixing of lake water, as shown in **Figure 14**, is called **turnover**. Turnover causes nutrients from deep in the lake to move upward toward the surface. This process circulates nutrients at the lake bottom to the shallow areas and surface water, where organisms use them to grow and reproduce.

Figure 14 **A** Little mixing of bottom water with surface water occurs in the summer. **B** Cool water sinking in the fall mixes the entire water column, circulating oxygen and nutrients throughout the lake.

SECTION 2 REVIEW

Summary

Formation of Lakes

- Lakes form in many ways.
- Some lakes form naturally, and some are made by humans.

Life in Lakes

- Different types of organisms live in different lake environments.

Sediment and Nutrients

- Most lakes eventually will become eutrophic, which means that they will become shallower and contain more nutrients and more life.
- The water in many large lakes mixes during autumn. This process of mixing is called turnover.

Self Check

1. **Describe** two ways that lakes can form naturally.
2. **Explain** how a lake can become dry land.
3. **Identify** the types of organisms that live near a lake's shore.
4. **Infer** why rooted plants don't live on the bottom of a deep lake.
5. **Think Critically** Lake turnover occurs during fall. Could turnover also occur during the spring? Explain why or why not.

Applying Skills

6. **Communicate** In your Science Journal, write a one-page summary that describes life in a lake.

Lake Nutrients

When plants and animals die, they settle to the bottom of a lake where they decay and release phosphates and nitrates to the water. The amount of algae that is present in lake water depends on the amount of nutrients in the water.

Real-World Question

How does the presence of nutrients in lake water affect the amount of algae that can survive?

Goals

- **Predict** which solution will have the most algal growth.
- **Predict** how nutrients affect algal growth in a lake.

Materials

felt-tipped marker
small baby-food jars with caps (4)
100-mL graduated cylinder
distilled water (200 mL)
0.4% nitrate solution (200 mL)
0.4% phosphate solution (200 mL)
0.4% nitrate-phosphate solution (200 mL)
algae cultures
dropper

Safety Precautions



Procedure

1. Label each jar with your name or lab group.
2. Label and fill each jar with the following:
 - 0.4% nitrate solution
 - 0.4% phosphate solution
 - 0.4% nitrate-phosphate solution
 - distilled water



3. Prepare the algae culture according to the directions and place eight drops of the algae solution in each of the four different jars.
4. With the lid on, shake each jar gently and place each on a windowsill.
5. Remove the lids and check the jars for algal growth each day for five days. Replace the lids after each observation. Record your observations in your Science Journal.

Conclude and Apply

1. **Describe** any changes, such as color or clarity, that you notice in each solution.
2. Based on your observations, which solution or solutions were best for algal growth?
3. What observations can you make about the solution containing distilled water?
4. Relate your observations to the nutrient makeup and the algae present in lakes.

Communicating Your Data

Compare your conclusions with those of other students in your class. For more help, refer to the **Science Skill Handbook**.

Wetlands

Types of Wetlands

When you visit a lake, pond, or stream, do you always know where the land ends and the water begins? At many places, you might be able to walk right up to the water's edge. But what if you step in a muddy area? Is this water or is it land? **Wetlands** are areas of land that are covered with water during some part of the year. Biologists recognize wetlands by the types of plants that grow there.

 **Reading Check** How do biologists recognize wetlands?

Wetlands can have different types of vegetation, depending on where they form and how much water is in them during the year. Types of wetlands include swamps, marshes, and bogs and are defined primarily by their vegetation.

Swamps Swamps, like the one in **Figure 15**, are wetlands where the most common types of plants are trees and shrubs. Swamps need a steady supply of water in order for wetland trees to grow. They often are found in low-lying areas near rivers, where water is slow moving.

A swamp is sometimes named for the type of trees that inhabit the area. For example, cypress swamps are named after the bald cypress trees that grow there. Oak swamps are common in the northeastern United States where that tree is found.

as you read

What You'll Learn

- **Describe** a wetland.
- **Compare and contrast** different types of wetlands.
- **Identify** some organisms that live in wetlands.

Why It's Important

Wetlands reduce flooding, purify water, and provide habitat for many types of organisms.

Review Vocabulary

nutrients: substances, such as nitrates or phosphates, that are necessary for the growth of algae and plants

New Vocabulary

- wetlands



Figure 15 Many swamps, such as this cypress swamp at Caddo Lake State Park, Texas, are found in the southeastern and south central United States.



Figure 16 Marshes are characterized by grasslike plants.

Explain how marshes are different from swamps.

Figure 17 Bogs have a low nutrient content. The Venus's-fly-trap obtains its nutrients from insects.



Marshes A marsh is a type of wetland that doesn't have many trees or shrubs. Sometimes marshes are called wet meadows because they contain mostly grasses and other soft-stemmed plants called rushes and sedges. Marshes, such as the one in **Figure 16**, often form on floodplains where rivers overflow their banks. They also form at the edges of lakes where the shoreline slopes gently. Ponds that are filling with sediment also can become marshes.

Bogs Most bogs formed in depressions that were created by glaciers. Rain is the only source of freshwater in a bog. Because no streams enter a bog to bring in nutrients, plants have developed unique ways to get them. You know that some insects eat plants, but have you ever seen a plant eat an insect? Some plants, such as pitcher plants and the Venus's-flytrap shown in **Figure 17**, get their nutrients from insects.



Reading Check Why don't bogs have many nutrients?

Water doesn't drain from a bog, so dead material builds up. Dead plants sink to the bottom and might eventually form a substance called peat. Most of the peat that is used by gardeners comes from a plant called sphagnum moss. This plant, when dried, can hold as much as 20 times its weight in water. Native Americans used dried sphagnum peat as diapers.

Wetlands Animals

Many different kinds of animals depend on wetlands. Because wetlands are found along the edge between water and land, they provide a habitat for water and land animals. Wetlands are important for migrating birds. They provide cover and resting areas between long flights. They also provide plenty of small insects, fish, and plants to feed on.

Animals such as mink and muskrat live in wetlands. One animal, the beaver, makes its own wetlands by damming up a stream if no wetlands are around. Wetlands also are home to a variety of reptiles, such as alligators, turtles, and snakes. Amphibians, such as salamanders and frogs, also live in wetlands. Many of these animals need the shallow water of wetlands to nest and reproduce. Newly hatched fish depend on wetlands. Young fish find plenty of small organisms to eat, and they can hide from predators among the wetland plants.

Importance of Wetlands

Wetlands once were thought of as wastelands—marshy, buggy, and boggy sites that were better off filled with soil. Today, wetlands are recognized as a valuable resource. Wetlands act as a natural sponge, soaking up excess water from rain, melting snow, and floods and then slowly releasing it. Wetlands near lakes and rivers help protect shorelines and stream banks against erosion because plant roots help hold soil in place and slow the speed of moving water.

Trapping Sediment Wetlands, such as those found on floodplains and deltas, are especially effective at trapping sediment because their vegetation slows the water's flow. Trapped sediment cannot enter the lake or stream, so the water remains clear. Fish, their eggs, and plant life all thrive in clear water.

Removing Nutrients Wetland plants also use nutrients for growth, slowing the rate of eutrophication. Lakes and streams that have large wetland areas generally have better water quality because wetlands remove nutrients from the water. Human wastewater, called sewage, contains high amounts of nutrients. In most cities, the wastewater is treated at a sewage-treatment facility to remove pollutants. The water then is released into a river or other water body. Wetlands are so effective at removing nutrients that they sometimes are created at sewage-treatment facilities to treat sewage, as shown in **Figure 18**.



Figure 18 Wetlands at this sewage-treatment facility are used to remove nutrients before water flows back into the environment.

section

3

review

Summary

Types of Wetlands

- Swamps, marshes, and bogs are types of wetlands.
- Each type of wetlands has different vegetation.

Wetlands Animals

- Many animals depend on wetlands. These animals include mammals, birds, reptiles, amphibians, and fish.

Importance of Wetlands

- Wetlands reduce the impact of floods, prevent shoreline erosion, and keep water clean.

Self Check

1. **Define** the term *wetlands*.
2. **Explain** how wetland areas near lakes and streams improve water quality.
3. **Explain** how wetlands reduce erosion.
4. **Describe** how migratory birds use wetlands.
5. **Think Critically** How might a marsh become a swamp?

Applying Skills

6. **Compare and Contrast** Use a three-circle Venn diagram to compare and contrast swamps, marshes, and bogs.

Pollution of Freshwater

as you read

What You'll Learn

- **Identify** sources of water pollution.
- **Explain** the difference between point source and nonpoint source pollution.
- **Describe** laws that regulate water pollution.

Why It's Important

Clean water is necessary for a healthy environment.

Review Vocabulary

pollutant: a substance that contaminates the environment

New Vocabulary

- point source pollution
- nonpoint source pollution

Pollution Sources

Imagine that you are walking on a footbridge over a river near your home or school. You stop to look at the flowing water, but you see more than water. Perhaps you see a multicolored film of something on top of the water, or maybe the water has a strange odor. A pollutant is a substance that contaminates the environment. Water pollution occurs when substances are added to water that lower its quality. In this section, you'll learn where water pollution comes from. You'll also learn about some of the sources of the pollution that enters freshwater.

Point Source Pollutants How do pollutants get into Earth's freshwater? Are they from one source or are they from many? Pollution that enters water from a specific location, such as shown in **Figure 19**, is called **point source pollution**. When a ditch or pipe discharges water, you can see exactly where the water is coming from. Point sources are fairly easy to control because the location of the pollution source is known.

Figure 19 Point sources of water pollution are easy to see. **Identify** ways that these sources of pollution might be controlled.





Figure 20 Runoff containing pesticides and herbicides is one type of nonpoint source pollution.

Nonpoint Source Pollutants Most water pollution doesn't enter a body of water from sources you can identify. When pollution comes from a wide area such as lawns, construction sites, and roads, it is called **nonpoint source pollution**. Pollutants can be delivered to a body of water by runoff from yards, parking lots, and farm fields, as shown in **Figure 20**. Nonpoint sources also include pollutants in rain or snow. Nonpoint sources are much harder to control because it is hard to tell exactly where the pollution comes from. For example, when a stream gets muddy, do you know exactly where the sediment came from?

 **Reading Check** *Why are nonpoint sources hard to control?*

Reducing Water Pollution

The key to clean water is to reduce the amount of pollutants that enter it. Controlling point source pollutants might seem easy—reduce the amount of pollutants at the source. However, what if the pollution comes from manufacturing products that you use, like stereos, TVs, and food packaging? You might not want to give these up, or pay more for them at the store. Controlling nonpoint source pollution is more difficult. For example, fertilizers, herbicides, and insecticides are sprayed on crops and gardens over large land areas to encourage plant growth and reduce damage from weeds and insects. However, these substances can be carried into Earth's surface freshwater. Reducing these pollutants requires cooperation and careful use of chemicals.

Controlling pollution is not easy. It requires difficult decisions about the types and amounts of pollutants that should be allowed in water. Laws that limit pollutants are written carefully to protect the water resource and the economy.

Mini LAB

Evaluating Dilution

Procedure

1. Set four empty **drinking glasses** on a counter.
2. Fill the first glass with **tap water** and add three drops of **red food coloring**.
3. Pour half of the water from the first glass into the second glass. Add tap water to fill the second glass.
4. Pour half of the water in the second glass into the third glass. Add tap water to fill the third glass.
5. Pour half of the water in the third glass into the fourth glass. Add tap water to fill the fourth glass.

Analysis

1. What does the water in the fourth glass look like?
2. How does dilution with clean water affect polluted water?





INTEGRATE History

Formation of the EPA

The U.S. EPA was created in response to an outpouring of public opinion. Do research to learn about the events that led to the formation of the EPA and the confirmation of its first Administrator. Report what you learn to the class.

Legislation As governments came to realize the importance of protecting Earth's freshwater, protective laws were enacted. The Rivers and Harbors Act of 1899 was the first attempt to use legislation to help regulate water pollution. This law required that when any work was done in water that ships use for navigation, like dredging the bottom, the wildlife resources of the water must be considered.



Reading Check

What legislation was the first attempt to help regulate water pollution?

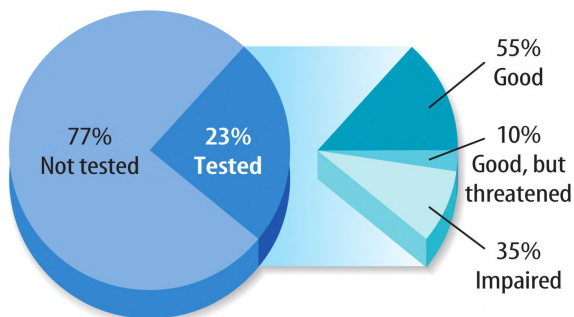
By the late 1960s, water pollution became so bad in the United States that many beaches along the east and west coasts were unhealthy for swimming. Drinking-water supplies were contaminated. Then, in 1969, greasy debris floating on a large river in Cleveland, Ohio, caught on fire. This was a wake-up call for many people. In 1972, the U.S. Congress responded by passing the Federal Water Pollution Control Act. Amendments were added to this act in 1977 and 1987, and it was renamed the Clean Water Act. These laws put limits on the types of pollution that can be discharged into streams and lakes.

In 1970, Congress created the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), to enforce water pollution limits. The Clean Water Act amendments also provided federal funds for communities and industries to limit their water pollution sources. Today, 55 percent of streams and rivers and 46 percent of lakes that have been tested have good water quality. Still, as **Figure 21** shows, much improvement is needed.

The EPA, America's Clean Water Foundation, and the International Water Association are working together to promote water quality testing. October 18, 2003, was selected as the first World Water Monitoring Day.

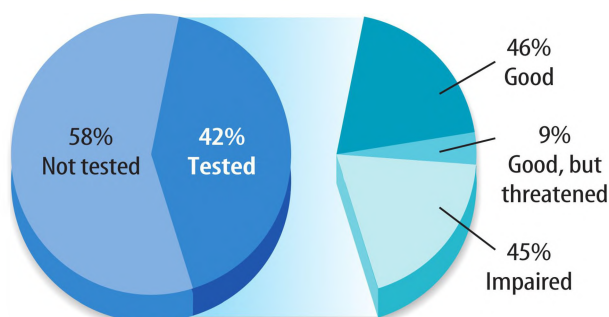
Figure 21 The circle graphs below show that the majority of streams and lakes that have been tested have good water quality. However, improvement is still needed.

Rivers and Streams



Approximately 55 percent of the tested streams and rivers have good water quality.

Lakes, Reservoirs, and Ponds



Of the 42 percent of lakes that have been tested, 45 percent still are impaired by pollution.



Figure 22 Piling yard wastes makes compost, which can be used in your garden instead of purchasing commercial fertilizer.

How can you help? You can do many things to reduce water pollution. Pay attention to how much water you use. When you use water, it must be treated before it can be returned to a stream. Just turning off the faucet when you brush your teeth can save more than 19 L of water per day. Keep your yard and driveway free of pet wastes, oil, and other debris. When it rains, these pollutants run off to streams and lakes.

Learn alternate methods to care for your yard and garden, like composting grass clippings as shown in **Figure 22**. Composting yard wastes reduces the amount of fertilizer and other chemicals needed for your yard. Properly dispose of any hazardous substances, such as used oil, antifreeze, and paint. Learn about programs in your community for safe disposal of hazardous waste.

section 4 review

Summary

Pollution Sources

- Substances added to water that reduce its quality cause water pollution.
- Sources of pollution include point sources and nonpoint sources.

Reducing Water Pollution

- Decisions about controlling pollution are difficult to make and are sometimes controversial.
- Many laws have been made to restrict the amount of pollution that can enter freshwater.
- You can help reduce water pollution by not using more water than is necessary.

Self Check

1. **Describe** some sources of water pollution.
2. **Describe** some laws meant to reduce water pollution.
3. **Explain** the purpose of the EPA.
4. **List** three ways you can reduce water pollution.
5. **Think Critically** Compare and contrast point source pollution and nonpoint source pollution.

Applying Math

6. **Use Statistics** An industry released wastewater to a stream every day for a week. The concentrations of a pollutant in the wastewater for each day are the following: 2 mg/L, 1 mg/L, 3 mg/L, 1 mg/L, 4 mg/L, 1 mg/L, 2 mg/L. Calculate the average daily concentration of the pollutant.

Adopt a Stream

Goals

- **Analyze** data about a local stream.
- **Measure** water temperature, dissolved oxygen, pH, alkalinity, and nitrate concentration.
- **Evaluate** the effects of point and nonpoint source pollution on your stream.

Materials

bucket with rope attached to handle
alcohol thermometer
string
plastic sample bottles
100-mL beakers
500-mL graduated cylinder
pH paper or pH meter
dissolved oxygen kit
alkalinity kit
nitrate test kit

Safety Precautions



WARNING: Be careful near streams. Do not enter the water. Use testing chemicals with care. Wear gloves and follow your teacher's directions carefully.

Real-World Question

The quality of the water in a stream determines whether organisms can live in it. How can you monitor the quality of a stream through time?

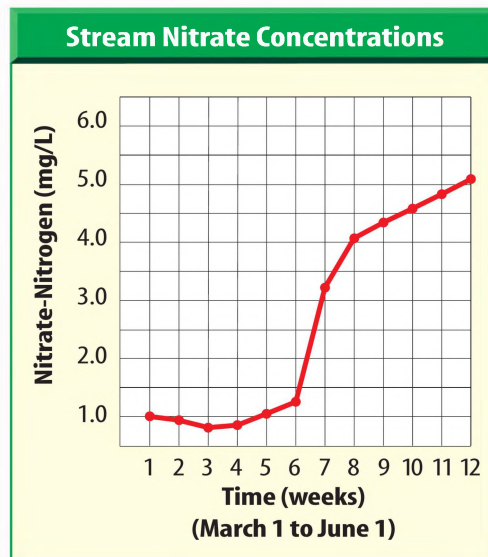
Procedure

1. With your teacher's help, select a location along a local stream to monitor. You should use this same location each time you collect a water sample. Perform all measurements at the stream site just after collecting your sample.
2. Following your teacher's directions, collect a water sample from the stream each week. All samples should be collected on the same day of the week and at the same time of day. Use a bucket with a rope attached to the handle to collect the water samples.
3. Measure the temperature of your water sample. Tie a piece of string to an alcohol thermometer and lower the thermometer into your water sample. Wait 5 min. and record the temperature. Repeat your measurement two more times.



Using Scientific Methods

4. Fill a bottle with your sample water. Make sure that the bottle is completely full. Use your dissolved oxygen kit to determine the amount of dissolved oxygen in your sample. Follow your teacher's directions carefully. Repeat the procedure two more times. Record your data.
5. Half-fill a 100-mL beaker with your sample water. Use pH paper or a pH meter to measure the pH of your sample. Repeat this procedure two more times. Record your data.
6. Half-fill a clean 100-mL beaker with your sample water. Use an alkalinity kit to determine the alkalinity of your sample. Follow your teacher's instructions carefully. Repeat this procedure two more times. Record your data.
7. Use your nitrate test kit to determine the amount of nitrate in your water sample. Follow the kit directions and your teacher's directions carefully. Repeat the procedure two more times. Record your data.
8. Calculate averages for each data category. Eliminate values that seem unreasonable. Repeat procedures as necessary.



Analyze Your Data

1. **Describe** any trends that you observe in your data through time. Do the data vary with time of year or with the amount of water flowing in the stream?
2. **Graph** your data to illustrate any changes through time.

Conclude and Apply

1. **Evaluate** the quality of the water in your stream. Is your stream healthy? Does the health of your stream vary through time?
2. **Evaluate** the effects of pollution on your stream. Do you think that any point or nonpoint sources of pollution are affecting your stream? Explain.

Communicating Your Data

Create a poster or other visual display that illustrates any effects of point or nonpoint source pollution on your stream.

GREAT LAKES AT A GLANCE

History of the Great Lakes

About 25,000 years ago, giant sheets of ice moved across North America scouring out large depressions in the land. When the climate warmed about 12,000 years ago, the glacier's edge slowly retreated to the north. As it moved, the depressions filled with water that melted from the glaciers. Streams that ran into the depressions also helped fill them up. Today, the five Great Lakes hold 18 percent of the surface freshwater on Earth. Only Lake Baikal in Siberia contains more freshwater.

The border between the United States and Canada runs through the middle of four of the Great Lakes. So, the United States and Canada share the job of keeping the lakes clean and safe for shipping. The two nations work together to build and maintain the locks and canals that link the Great Lakes to the St. Lawrence River and the Atlantic Ocean. Ships from all over the world use this inland waterway to sail into the heartland of



An important part of the canal system, the Erie Canal connects the Hudson River near Troy, New York, to the Niagara River near Buffalo. The Erie Canal was completed in 1825, in spite of political opposition to the project.

North America. Iron ore, coal, finished steel, and grain are the most important items shipped in and among the Great Lakes.

Oral Presentation Pick one of the Great Lakes and prepare a presentation about how one of the following subjects affects the future of the lake—pollution, erosion, cormorants, zebra mussels, or changing water levels.

Science  **online**

For more information, visit
bookh.msscience.com/time

Reviewing Main Ideas

Section 1 Streams

1. Streams shape Earth's surface by eroding and depositing sediment.
2. Floodplains are covered by water during floods. Severe flooding can kill people and damage property.

Section 2 Lakes and Reservoirs

1. Lake environments support a wide variety of life.
2. Through time, the addition of nutrients can cause lakes to become eutrophic.
3. Turnover during fall or spring mixes nutrients throughout a lake.

Section 3 Wetlands

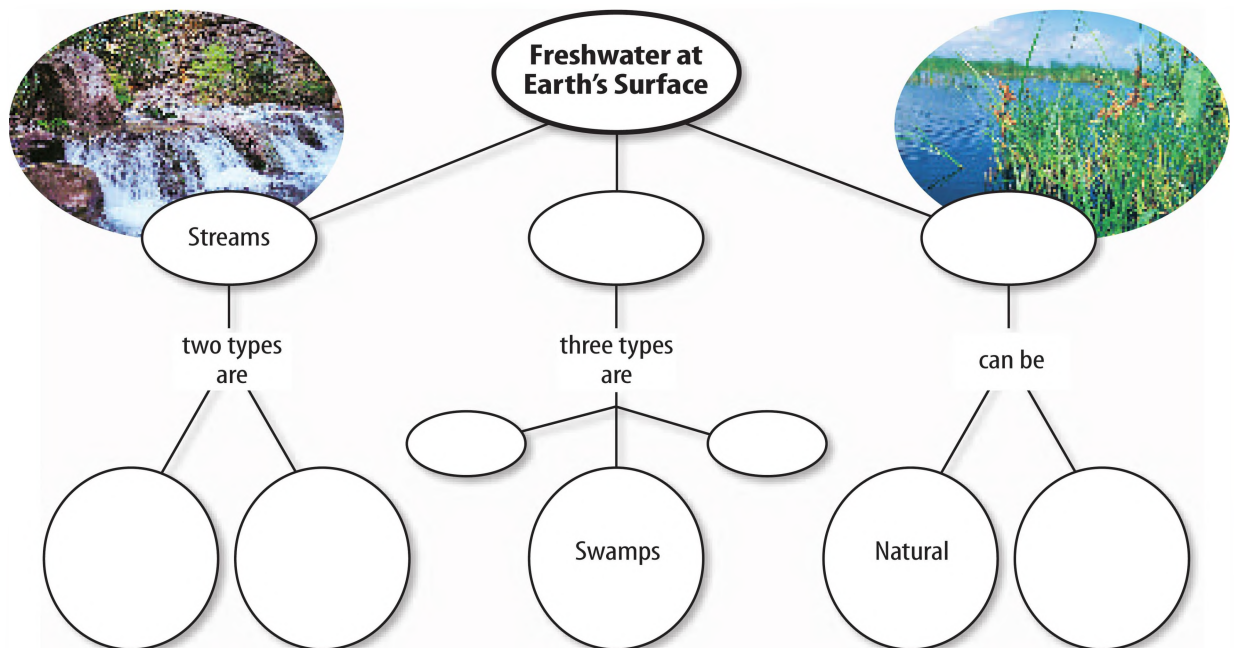
1. Wetlands include swamps, marshes, and bogs.
2. Wetlands are classified according to their vegetation.
3. Wetlands reduce erosion and flooding, and remove excess nutrients from water.

Section 4 Pollution of Freshwater

1. Water pollution comes from point sources and nonpoint sources.
2. Point sources are specific locations where pollution is released.
3. Nonpoint sources are spread across a wide area.

Visualizing Main Ideas

Copy and complete the following concept map.



Using Vocabulary

braided stream p.38	nutrient p.47
drainage basin p.38	point bar p.37
eutrophication p.47	point source pollution p.54
floodplain p.42	runoff p.36
load p.39	stream discharge p.41
meandering stream p.37	turnover p.49
nonpoint source pollution p.55	wetlands p.51

Use what you know about the vocabulary words in this chapter to answer the following questions.

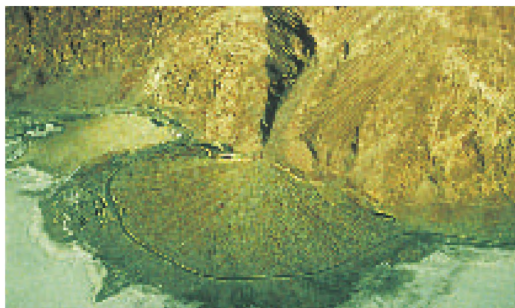
1. What is the difference between a meandering stream and a braided stream?
2. How does lake turnover make nutrients available to plants?
3. What is stream load?
4. How do point bars form?
5. How do point sources of pollution differ from nonpoint sources of pollution?

Checking Concepts

Choose the word or phrase that best answers the question.

6. Which type of stream has wide bends in its channel?
 - A) braided stream
 - B) wide stream
 - C) meandering stream
 - D) narrow stream
7. What is a deposit of sediment that forms on the inside of a stream meander?
 - A) point bar
 - B) runoff
 - C) floodplain
 - D) turnover
8. Which type of wetlands contains trees and shrubs and often forms on a floodplain?
 - A) marsh
 - B) bog
 - C) stream
 - D) swamp

Use the photo below to answer question 9.



9. Which feature is shown in the photo above?
 - A) delta
 - B) alluvial fan
 - C) point bar
 - D) meander
10. What is the entire area of land that is drained by a stream?
 - A) base level
 - B) drainage basin
 - C) floodplain
 - D) meander
11. What are pollutants that enter a stream from a wide area?
 - A) point source pollutants
 - B) nonpoint source pollutants
 - C) chemical pollutants
 - D) varied pollutants
12. What is the lowest elevation to which a stream can erode?
 - A) base level
 - B) drainage basin
 - C) floodplain
 - D) meander
13. What is sediment that moves along the bed of a stream?
 - A) bed load
 - B) suspended load
 - C) dissolved load
 - D) nutrient load
14. What part of a stream valley is covered by water during a flood?
 - A) bar
 - B) meander
 - C) floodplain
 - D) braid
15. Which of the following causes lake water to mix?
 - A) delta
 - B) turnover
 - C) eutrophication
 - D) aquatic plants

Thinking Critically

16. **Infer** why whitewater rapids are common in mountain streams.
17. **Explain** how you might determine whether water pollution comes from a point source or a nonpoint source.
18. **Predict** how a stream channel might change if the stream is dammed to create a reservoir.
19. **Compare and contrast** deltas and alluvial fans.
20. **Recognize Cause and Effect** A clear stream near your home becomes muddy after a heavy rain. Explain.
21. **Draw Conclusions** Are the bars in a braided stream permanent features? Explain.
22. **Recognize Cause and Effect** Why might thick, green mats of algae form on the surface of a lake?
23. **Classify** Obtain several photographs of stream valleys. Classify each stream.

Use the table below to answer question 24.

Depth of Great Lakes	
Great Lake	Maximum Depth (m)
Superior	405
Michigan	281
Ontario	244
Huron	229
Erie	64

24. **Make and Use Graphs** Make a bar graph that compares the depths of the Great Lakes. Remember to include a title and axis labels on your graph.
25. **Use Scientific Explanations** Summarize how a stream moves its bedload.

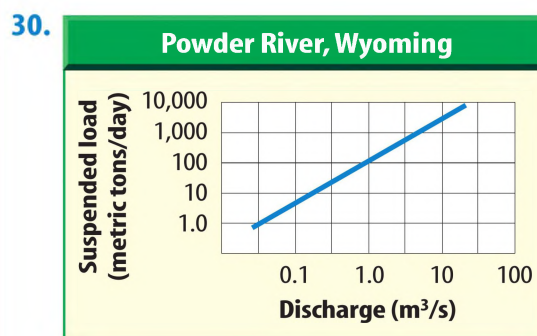
Performance Activities

26. **Poster** Use photographs from old magazines to create a poster that shows the types of plants and animals that use wetland habitats. Combine your poster with those of your classmates to create a classroom display.
27. **Oral Presentation** Develop a land use plan for an imaginary floodplain and illustrate your plan by making a map. Give a persuasive speech to convince others that your plan is a good one.

Applying Math

28. **River Discharge** The Amazon River in South America has a discharge of about $180,000 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$. The Mississippi River has a discharge of about $17,500 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$. How many times higher is the Amazon River's discharge?
29. **Power from Dams** Hydroelectric dams in the United States produce about 3 percent of the country's electricity. What percentage of U.S. electricity is produced by all other sources combined?

Use the graph below to answer question 30.



- a. **Suspended Load** According to the graph, does the amount of suspended load in this river increase or decrease as discharge increases? How do you know?
- b. **Suspended Load and Discharge** Hypothesize about why the relationship shown in the graph exists.

Part 1 Multiple Choice

Record your answers on the answer sheet provided by your teacher or on a sheet of paper.

Use the photo below to answer question 1.



- Which type of stream is shown in the photo above?
 - braided stream
 - meandering stream
 - straight stream
 - wide stream
- What forms when a stream cuts down as the land is uplifted?
 - a canyon
 - a delta
 - a cut bank
 - an alluvial fan
- What agency is responsible for enforcing water pollution laws in the United States?
 - USGS
 - NASA
 - EPA
 - DOE
- Which term refers to a lake that is used to supply water for human consumption?
 - caldera
 - reservoir
 - bog
 - marsh

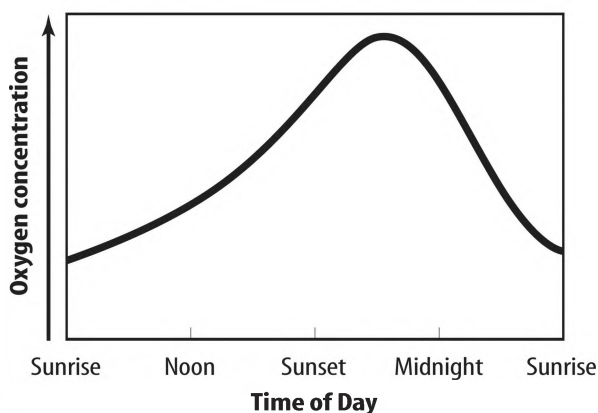
Test-Taking Tip

Skills and Practice Remember that test-taking skills can improve with practice. If possible, take at least one practice test and familiarize yourself with the test format and instructions.

- How are wetlands classified?
 - by their shape
 - by their size
 - by the type of animals that live in them
 - by the type of plants that live in them

Use the graph below to answer questions 6 and 7.

Daily Oxygen Concentration in Colorado River



- According to the graph, at which time of day was the oxygen concentration highest?
 - between sunrise and noon
 - between noon and sunset
 - between sunset and midnight
 - between midnight and sunrise
- Which is a reasonable explanation for why the oxygen concentration in a stream might vary this way?
 - When the Sun rises, plants begin to produce oxygen and the concentration increases until just after sunset.
 - When the Sun sets, plants use more oxygen and the concentration declines.
 - When the Sun rises, animals become more active and use more oxygen.
 - When the Sun sets, animals become more active and use more oxygen.

Part 2 Short Response/Grid In

Record your answers on the answer sheet provided by your teacher or on a sheet of paper.

8. What is a point source of pollution? List two examples.
9. Explain why the water in a stream cannot flow below the stream's base level.
10. Why do rooted plants only grow in the shallow parts of a lake?
11. How does a Venus's-flytrap obtain nutrients?
12. Describe the vegetation in a marsh.
13. How was Lake Mead created?

Crater Lake in Oregon is the deepest and one of the clearest lakes in the United States. Use the data about Crater Lake to answer questions 14–17.

Clarity Depth in Crater Lake

Date of Measurement	Clarity Depth (meters)
March 1	28.5
March 2	28.8
March 3	29.2
March 4	29.8
March 5	22.1

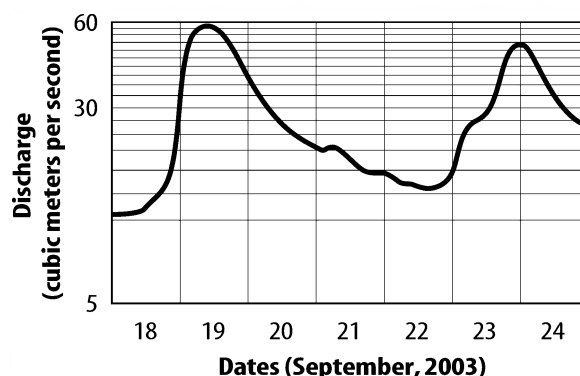
14. Calculate the mean and determine the median of these data.
15. What is the range of these data?
16. Clarity depths are determined by lowering a disk into the lake until it can no longer be seen. On which day was the water clearest?
17. Hypothesize about why the water clarity might have changed between March 4th and March 5th.

Part 3 Open Ended

Record your answers on a sheet of paper.

Use the graph below to answer questions 18–20.

Discharge of Neuse River near Clayton, NC



18. On which day was the discharge highest? On which day was it lowest?
19. On September 17, 2003, and September 18, 2003, Hurricane Isabel made landfall in North Carolina. How did this hurricane affect discharge in the Neuse River? Explain why this occurred.
20. On September 22nd and September 23rd, a weather front passed over North Carolina. How did this frontal passage affect discharge in the Neuse River? Explain.
21. Describe the process of eutrophication in lakes.
22. What is lake turnover? Why does it occur?
23. Write a detailed explanation about how deltas form.
24. How are dams used for flood control?
25. What are wetlands? Why are they important?

Groundwater Resources

chapter preview

sections

- 1** Groundwater
Lab Artesian Wells
- 2** Groundwater Pollution and Overuse
- 3** Caves and Other Groundwater Features
Lab Pollution in Motion



Virtual Lab How does soil type affect the movement of groundwater?

Underground Lakes

Groundwater. You can't see it, but it's probably under your feet right now. Underground reservoirs of water, or groundwater, exist below much of Earth's surface. As shown in this picture, groundwater can rise to the surface, often as pools of warm water.

Science Journal List three household uses for groundwater.

Start-Up Activities



Groundwater Infiltration

When it rains, water sinks into the ground at some locations and runs off the surface at others. What do you think causes these differences? Water soaks into the ground if there are spaces in the soil and rock. Do the following lab to investigate these spaces.   

1. Immerse a dry paper towel in a large beaker of water.
2. Remove the towel. Let it drip into the beaker for 10 s.
3. Squeeze the towel into another beaker. Use a graduated cylinder to measure the volume of water held by the towel.
4. Repeat the experiment using the damp towel.
5. Repeat the experiment with a different brand of paper towel.
6. **Think Critically** In your Science Journal, record the amount of water held by each towel. Infer why the damp towels and the dry towels don't hold the same amounts of water. Infer which brand of paper towel has more pore space.

FOLDABLES™ Study Organizer

Groundwater Resources Make the following Foldable to help you identify the main concepts about groundwater resources.

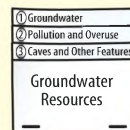
- STEP 1** **Collect** 2 sheets of paper and layer them about 3 cm apart vertically.



- STEP 2** **Fold** up the bottom edges of the paper to form 4 equal tabs.



- STEP 3** **Fold** the papers and staple along the fold. **Label** each tab as shown.



Finding Main Ideas As you read the chapter, summarize the main concepts in sections 1, 2, and 3.



Preview this chapter's content
and activities at
bookh.msscience.com

Groundwater

as you read

What You'll Learn

- **Explain** the importance of groundwater.
- **Describe** how groundwater moves.
- **Compare and contrast** the formation of springs, artesian wells, and geysers.

Why It's Important

Groundwater is one of Earth's most important resources for drinking, washing, and irrigation.

Review Vocabulary

drought: a prolonged period of dry weather due to a lack of rain

New Vocabulary

- groundwater
- porosity
- permeable
- aquifer
- zone of saturation
- water table
- artesian well
- geyser

Figure 1 Every day each person in the United States directly or indirectly uses more than 5,600 L of water.

Importance of Groundwater

What do washing clothes, brushing teeth, and taking a bath have in common? These activities wouldn't be possible without freshwater from Earth. Look at the man in **Figure 1**. He is pumping water from deep underground. Every day, people depend on groundwater and other sources of freshwater for drinking, cooking, washing dishes, flushing toilets, and watering lawns. It's used in swimming pools, in industrial plants, and to irrigate crops.

One of the most important sources of freshwater is groundwater. **Groundwater** is water contained in the open spaces, or pores, of soil and rock. There is about 30 times more groundwater than all the surface freshwater on Earth. Water in streams and lakes are examples of surface freshwater. In the United States, 23 percent of the water used by people comes from groundwater. And, more than half of all drinking water in the United States comes from underground sources. Almost everyone who lives in rural areas uses groundwater for drinking and other household uses. If the human population continues to increase, even more groundwater will be used.



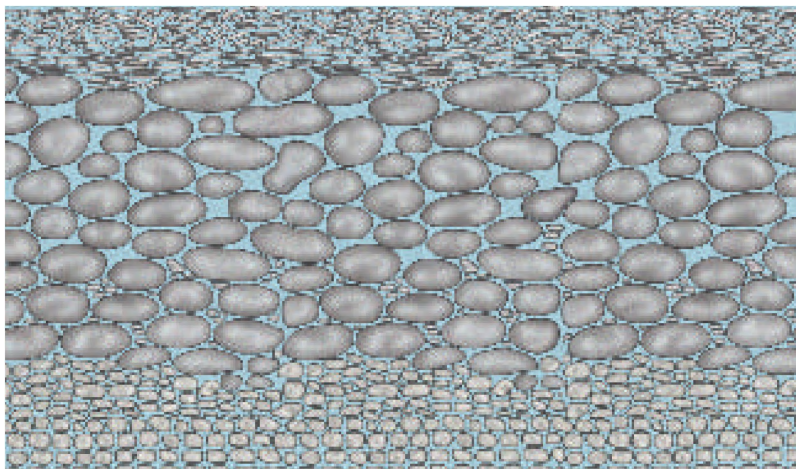


Figure 2 Pore sizes and shapes vary in different kinds of rocks.

Water Beneath Earth's Surface

Unlike Earth's surface water, groundwater normally is not found in pools or channels. Instead, it flows through a series of interconnected pores in soil and some rock. As you learned if you did the Launch Lab, the amount of pore space determines how much water can be held. The pores in soils are the spaces between the fragments and pieces of rock. The pores in rocks are the spaces between the grains and crystals, and also cracks in the rock. Pore size varies, as shown in **Figure 2**. Rocks such as sandstone and loose deposits of sand and gravel can hold large amounts of groundwater.

Porosity Not all soil and rock have the same amount of pore space. The volume of pore space divided by the volume of a rock or soil sample is its **porosity**. Soil or rock with many large pores has high porosity. Even soil or rock with small openings between grains can be porous. But soil or rock with few, small pores has low porosity.

Reading Check What is porosity?

Permeability When soil or rock has high porosity and the pores are interconnected, water passes through it easily. The ability of rock and soil to transmit water and other fluids is called permeability. Rock that is **permeable** contains many well-connected pores or cracks and allows groundwater to flow through it. Although limestone might contain very little space between grains, it usually has many interconnected cracks. Therefore, limestone is permeable. Impermeable rock, such as shale and granite, has few pores or pores that are not well connected. Groundwater cannot pass through impermeable rock.

Mini LAB

Measuring Porosity

Procedure

1. Put 100 mL of dry gravel into a 250-mL beaker and 100 mL of dry sand into another 250-mL beaker.
2. Fill a graduated cylinder with 100 mL of water.
3. Pour the water slowly into the beaker with the gravel. Stop pouring the water when it just covers the top of the gravel.
4. Record the volume of the water that is used. This amount is equal to the volume of the pore spaces.
5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 with the beaker containing the sand.

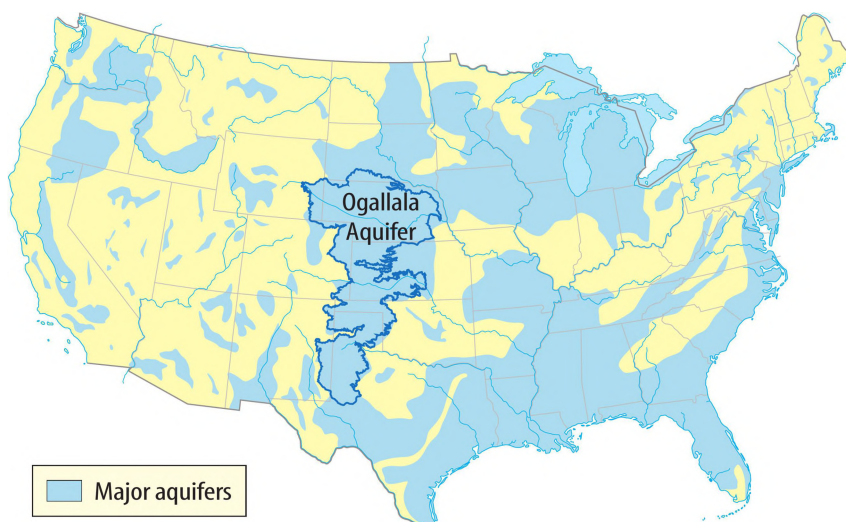
Analysis

1. Which substance has more pore space—gravel or sand?
2. Using the formula below, calculate the porosity of each sediment sample.

$$\frac{\text{Volume of pore spaces}}{100 \text{ mL of sediment}} \times 100 = \text{Percent porosity}$$

Figure 3 This map shows the major aquifers in the United States. The large Ogallala Aquifer stretches from the Texas Panhandle to South Dakota.

Explain why large aquifers are found throughout the eastern two-thirds of the country while smaller ones are found in the west.



Aquifers When it rains or when snow melts, water seeps into permeable soil and rock. You might wonder how deep it can go. Groundwater will keep moving down until it reaches an impermeable layer of rock or sediment. When this happens, the impermeable layer acts like a dam. The water stops seeping downward and begins filling up the pores in the rock and soil above the impermeable layer.

An **aquifer** is a layer of permeable rock through which water flows freely. Aquifers act as reservoirs, or storage areas, for groundwater. **Figure 3** shows some of the larger aquifers in the United States. Sand, gravel, sandstone, porous limestone, and highly fractured bedrock of any type can make good aquifers. Shale, mudstone, clay, or other impermeable rocks or sediments that don't contain fractures are not good aquifers. Layers made up of these materials are called aquitards. Aquifers and surface water occur in watersheds, which are large regions drained by a particular river system.

The Water Table The upper part of an aquifer is called the zone of aeration. The pores in this area are partially filled with water, mainly concentrated around the surfaces of grains and fractures. The rest of the pore space in the zone of aeration is filled with air. Below this zone is the **zone of saturation**, where the pores of an aquifer are full of water. The top surface of the zone of saturation is the **water table**. **Figure 4** shows that the water table meets Earth's surface at lakes, streams, and swamps. Much of the water in some streams is groundwater that has flowed into the stream channels. How deep below ground the water table is depends on rainfall. During heavy rainfall, the water table rises toward Earth's surface. During a drought, the water table falls, and some streams and ponds might dry up.



Topic: Groundwater Interactions

Visit bookh.msscience.com for Web links to information about the relationship between groundwater and surface water in a watershed.

Activity List major rivers in the Ogallala aquifer region.

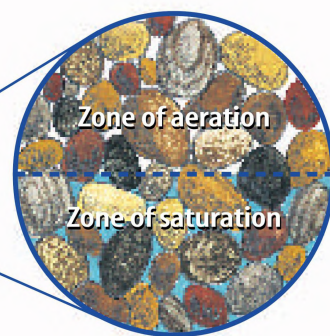
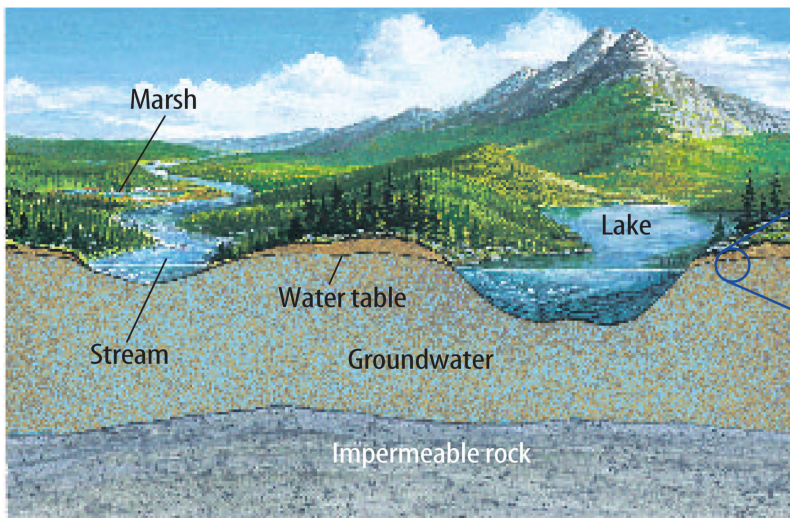


Figure 4 The water table of an area intersects the surface at lakes, streams, and other wetlands.

Describe some relationships between groundwater and surface water in a watershed.

Groundwater Flow

Water below the surface doesn't just sit there—it's on the move. How fast groundwater moves depends on the permeability of the rock and soil that it flows through and the groundwater's pressure. Where permeability is high, groundwater speed is faster. Where permeability is low, its speed is slower. Groundwater pressure is caused by gravity. Groundwater flows from higher-pressure regions toward lower-pressure regions.

You can imagine the shape of the water table as being much like the surface of Earth, with hills and valleys in some areas. In fact, the water table may mimic the shape of the land surface, with higher levels located under hills and lower levels located under valleys. Just as water in a river flows from higher elevations to lower elevations, groundwater flows from where the water table is relatively high to where it is low. The greater the slope of the water table is, the faster groundwater flows. Groundwater can flow toward or away from streams or lakes, depending on the slope of the water table.

Speed of Groundwater Flow Water in rivers or streams flows at speeds ranging from about 3 km to 18 km per hour. Groundwater moves much more slowly. What would happen if you could move only a few centimeters per day? It might take you a year to get from your bedroom to the breakfast table. At that rate, it would take you the rest of your life to walk to school. It's hard to picture something moving so slowly, but that's about the average speed of groundwater. The speed of groundwater moving through an aquifer ranges from about 1.5 m per year to 1.5 m per day. Its speed averages about 2 cm per day.



Hard Water Water in some aquifers contains dissolved calcium and magnesium. It is called hard water because it is hard to form suds or lather with soap. Find out if you live in an area that has hard water and how water is treated to make it soft.

Figure 5 Springs form where the water table meets Earth's surface.

Explain why springs often are seen on hillsides.



(t)Willard Luce/Earth Scenes, (b)Fred Habegger from Grant Heilman

Springs and Wells

How do people obtain groundwater to use? In some regions, groundwater flows freely out of the ground onto the surface. Where the water table meets Earth's surface, water seeps out to form a spring, shown in **Figure 5**. Some communities get their water from flowing springs.

 **Reading Check** What is a spring?

Figure 6 This truck has drilling equipment that can drill deep water wells in solid rock.



Digging Wells Where springs do not occur, wells must be dug or drilled to obtain water. Most modern wells are drilled using drill rigs mounted on large trucks like the one in **Figure 6**. A drill head, or bit, is placed at the end of a metal pipe. As the bit drills deeper, more pipe is added at the top. Wells more than 300 m deep can be drilled in this way.

The hole, or shaft, for the well must be drilled into the zone of saturation. The lower end of the shaft is lined with screens. Then a well casing—a pipe that has slots on the lower part—is set in place inside the hole. The slots allow water in, but keep sand and gravel out. The well casing extends about 0.3 m above ground. The upper part of the shaft around the casing and the surface area around the shaft are sealed with concrete. This prevents surface water from flowing into the well. After such a well has been dug, water can be pumped to the surface. At one time, windmills or hand-operated pumps were used to pump water. Today, most wells have electric-powered pumps.

Artesian Springs You learned earlier that pressure on groundwater is caused by gravity. Pressure on groundwater can be high when water is trapped between formations of rock or sediment. Where aquifers are trapped between two layers of impermeable material, water in the sandwiched aquifer is under pressure. The impermeable layers act like the wall of a pipe. Water enters the sandwiched aquifer at the highest part of the aquifer, which puts pressure on water at lower elevations. If a crack or fault cuts through the impermeable layers, groundwater from the aquifer rises toward the surface along the crack. This groundwater can form artesian springs. Artesian springs are common in the Great Plains of the United States, as well as in Australia and northwestern Africa.

Artesian Wells Some communities get water from wells without using pumps. These wells, called **artesian wells**, are drilled into pressurized aquifers, as shown in **Figure 7**. The amount of water pressure depends on the difference in elevation between the highest part of the aquifer and the well. The greater this difference in elevation, the greater the pressure. However, some artesian wells do require pumping. Sometimes the top of the well is above the surface to which water under pressure will rise. Then water will not flow freely from the well.

Artesian springs and wells helped shape the history of the United States. The largest aquifer in the United States covers more than 450,000 km². Look back at **Figure 3**. Notice that the Ogallala Aquifer stretches from the Texas Panhandle northward to South Dakota. Using artesian springs and wells from this aquifer, pioneers had easy access to water. Early settlements developed around these water supplies.

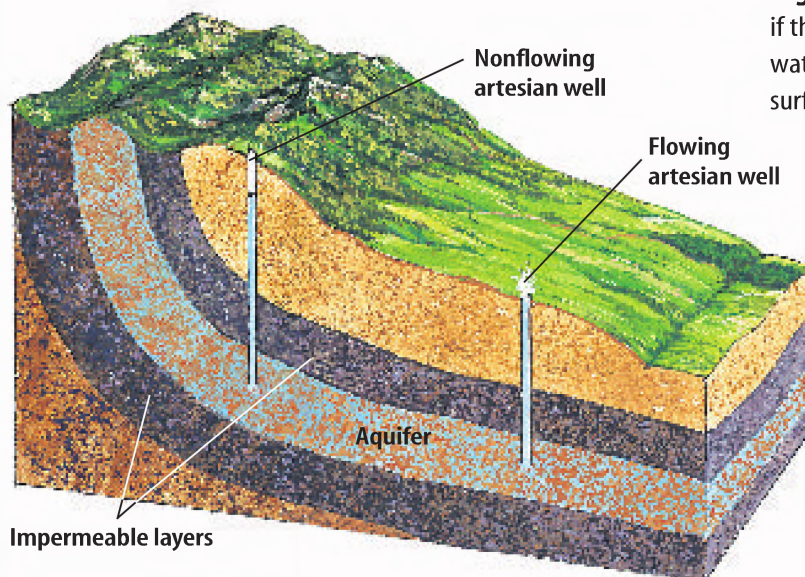


Figure 7 In an artesian well, if the pressure is great enough, water will be forced up to the surface and into the air.



Topic: Springs

Visit bookh.msscience.com for Web links to information about hot springs.

Activity Prepare a travel brochure about one of the sites that would encourage people to visit the springs.



Figure 8 Old Faithful is the most famous geyser in the United States. The time between its eruptions can vary from 35 min to 120 min. As it erupts, it shoots out about 40,000 L of water and steam high into the air.

Geysers

Molten material below Earth's surface can reach temperatures above 650°C. Rock in contact with molten material can heat groundwater to high temperatures. Water heated naturally in this way can form geysers, such as the one shown in **Figure 8**. A **geyser** is a hot fountain that erupts periodically, shooting water and steam into the air.



Reading Check

What is a geyser?

Geyser Eruptions Below the surface, a network of fractures and cavities fills with groundwater. Groundwater is heated to temperatures higher than the boiling temperature at the surface. The water expands, forcing its way out at the top of a cavity. As some of the water escapes, the pressure inside the cavity drops. This allows the remaining water to boil quickly because of the drop in pressure. Much of the water turns to steam. The steam shoots out the opening, much like steam out of a teakettle, forcing the remaining water out with it. Some of the geyser water reenters the channels to begin the process again. Although geysers erupt repeatedly, many are not entirely predictable. Old Faithful in Wyoming's Yellowstone National Park is more predictable than most geysers.

Groundwater is an important water resource, but in many locations, it is polluted. In the next section, you'll learn about the sources of pollution and how they can be cleaned up.

section

1

review

Summary

Importance of Groundwater

- As the human population continues to increase, more groundwater is used.

Water Beneath Earth's Surface

- Groundwater is contained in open spaces in rocks called pores.
- Aquifers are large underground reservoirs of water.
- Groundwater moves much more slowly than surface water.

Springs, Wells, and Geysers

- Wells are used to collect groundwater from deep underground.
- Geysers shoot hot water from the ground when water comes in contact with molten material.

Self Check

1. **Explain** why humans use groundwater.
2. **Describe** the difference between permeability and porosity.
3. **Explain** why some rocks are more permeable than others.
4. **Summarize** the eruption process of a geyser.
5. **Think Critically** What happens to the water table if the amount of water pumped from an aquifer is greater than the amount of water seeping in?

Applying Math

6. **Use Percentages** Of the 289.2 billion liters of groundwater used in the United States each day, 185.5 billion liters are used for irrigation. Calculate the percentage of groundwater used for irrigation.

LAB

Artesian Wells

How much water pressure exists at an artesian well? This depends on where it is drilled. The difference between the elevation of the top of an aquifer and the top of the artesian well determines the water pressure. In this lab, you'll observe some variables that affect the difference in elevation and the resulting water pressure.

Real-World Question

How do the amount of water in an aquifer and the position of an artesian well affect water pressure at an artesian well?

Goals

- **Model** an aquifer with artesian wells.
- **Observe** and infer how variables affect the water pressure at artesian wells.

Materials

tall, soft-plastic	sink with water
bottle with cap	plastic straw
nail or awl	scissors
hammer	metric ruler
protractor	

Safety Precautions



WARNING: Be careful not to pierce yourself with the nail or awl when making the holes in the plastic bottle.

Procedure

1. With the hammer and nail, or an awl, carefully poke two holes in the same side of a plastic bottle. One hole should be 3 cm from the bottom of the bottle, and the other should be 10 cm from the bottom.

2. Cut two pieces of plastic straw, each about 4 cm long. Insert one piece of straw in each of the holes.
3. Hold the bottle over the sink. While your partner covers both straws, fill the bottle with water.
4. Keep the bottle in a vertical position and uncover both holes. Observe and record in your Science Journal what happens at both straws as the water level drops.
5. Repeat the experiment, but this time tilt the bottle at a 30-degree angle from vertical, keeping the straws on the upper side of the bottle. Observe and record what happens.



Conclude and Apply

1. Which part of your bottle apparatus represents the impermeable rock layers? The aquifer? Artesian wells?
2. How does the amount of water in an aquifer affect the water pressure at an artesian well?
3. How does tilting the aquifer affect the water pressure at an artesian well?
4. How does the position of an artesian well in an aquifer affect the pressure of the water at the well?

Communicating Your Data

Make a diagram of your bottle apparatus. Compare your diagram with those of other students.

Groundwater Pollution and Overuse

as you read

What You'll Learn

- **Identify** the sources of groundwater pollution.
- **Explain** the ways groundwater is cleaned.
- **Explain** what happens when too much water is pumped from an aquifer.

Why It's Important

Good health depends on having clean water.



Review Vocabulary

toxic: pertaining to or caused by poison

New Vocabulary

- pollution
- sanitary landfill
- bioremediation
- subsidence

Sources of Pollution

It's easy to spot some kinds of water pollution. Polluted rivers and lakes can smell bad or have oil slicks. However, it's harder to detect the many chemicals that find their way into groundwater from polluted surface water and soil. One reason so many chemicals get into groundwater is that many substances dissolve in water that enters the groundwater system.

Pollution comes in many forms and from many different sources. **Pollution** is the contamination of soil, water, air, or other parts of the environment by something harmful. Water pollution comes from two types of sources—point sources and nonpoint sources. An example of point-source pollution is waste dumped directly into water from a pipe or a channel. Nonpoint-source pollution originates over larger areas, such as roadways, shown in **Figure 9**, agricultural areas, and industrial sites. Most groundwater pollution comes from nonpoint sources. These pollutants can seep into soil and eventually travel down into aquifers. **Figure 10** shows some examples of where groundwater pollution comes from.

Figure 9 Salt spread on this road might eventually seep down into groundwater.





Figure 10

Pollutants can enter the groundwater of an aquifer in a number of different ways. Pollutants can come from factories, farms, or homes. The three-dimensional cutaway below shows some of the major sources of groundwater pollution.

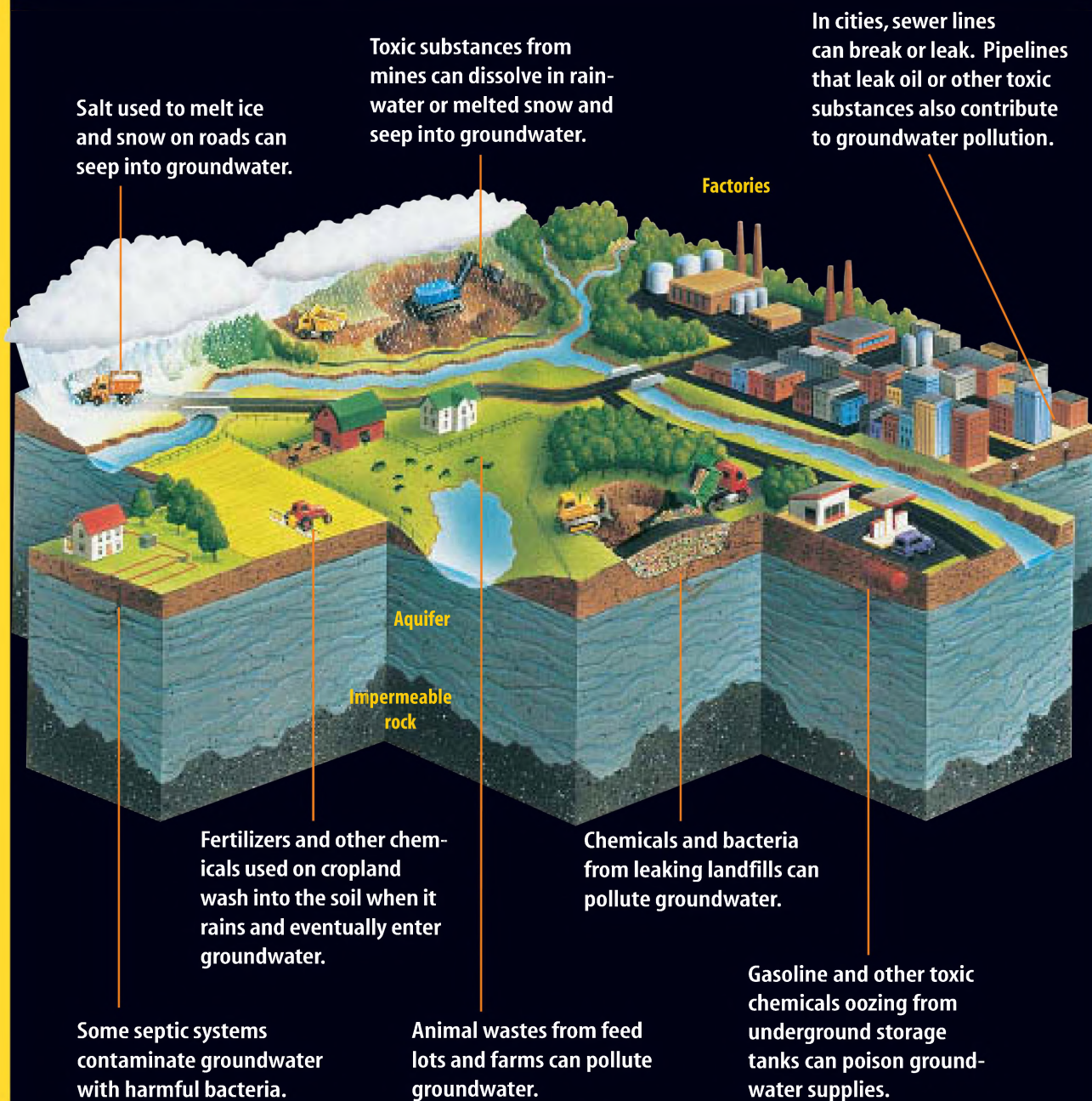




Figure 11 About 55 percent of the solid wastes collected in cities and towns is put in sanitary landfills. The landfills must be checked constantly for leaks so that the soil and the groundwater below it are not polluted.

Landfills Most of the materials that people throw away end up in landfills. These wastes include food wastes, paper, metals, oils, sprays, batteries, baby diapers, cleaners, cloth, and many other items. Some of these substances are poisonous and cause cancer. Because landfills are dug into the ground when they are constructed, there is a possibility that landfill waste can seep into the ground. To help reduce groundwater pollution, communities construct sanitary landfills, shown in **Figure 11**.

In a **sanitary landfill**, there is a lining of plastic or concrete, or the landfill is located on clay-rich soils that trap the liquid waste. Although sanitary landfills greatly reduce the chance that hazardous substances will leak into the surrounding soil and groundwater, some still gets into the environment. The best solution to limiting the hazardous substances getting to groundwater is to reduce the waste disposed in landfills. You can help by contacting your local waste management office about where to safely dispose of your family's hazardous wastes. Examples of household hazardous wastes are insect sprays, weed killers, batteries, drain cleaners, bleaches, medicines, and paints.

Road Runoff and Waste Spills Another source of groundwater pollution is runoff from roadways and parking lots. When cars leak oil or gasoline is spilled, groundwater pollution can result. Another risk to groundwater involves the transportation of toxic materials along roadways and railways. Many communities require roadway carriers of such materials to use outer belt freeways. Outer belts often are located far enough from towns and cities that a spill would not pose as much of a risk to city wells.

Road Salt Many states use salt to melt ice and snow on roads and highways. Often, salty water runs off roads, where it seeps into the soil and eventually reaches the groundwater. Snowplowing speeds up the process when plows push salt-containing snow to the sides of roads where it melts and more readily seeps into the ground.

Storage Tanks Gasoline and other substances often are stored in large underground tanks. Storing hazardous materials underground can cause groundwater contamination if the tanks leak. This is being reduced by using double-walled containers for hazardous substances that resist underground weathering. If left to rust or corrode, leaking pipelines and underground storage tanks pose a risk to aquifers. Federal laws now require that all underground storage tanks be monitored continuously for leaks. If a leak is found, action must be taken for cleanup. Sometimes, this involves removing the tank from the ground.

Septic Systems About one-third of all homes in the United States dispose of their wastewater through septic systems. Septic systems consist of a septic tank and an absorption area, shown in **Figure 12**. Solids are removed from the wastewater in the tank. Pipes carry wastewater from the tank to the absorption area. The absorption area then uses the soil and crushed rock to filter and treat the water before it reaches the water table.

If septic systems are not properly designed or maintained, sewage can get into surrounding soil and rock. As it migrates, sewage can carry harmful bacteria. If the bacteria get into drinking water, they can make people ill. Proper installation of septic systems and pumping out tank wastes on a regular basis greatly reduce the chances that groundwater will be polluted.



Health Department Local health department officials often test residential wells for contamination when complaints are filed. They often test water for bacteria, typhoid, dysentery, and hepatitis. If you have a well, why should you have your well water tested on a regular basis?

Figure 12 Although newer septic systems work efficiently, many older systems can allow pollutants to enter the groundwater.

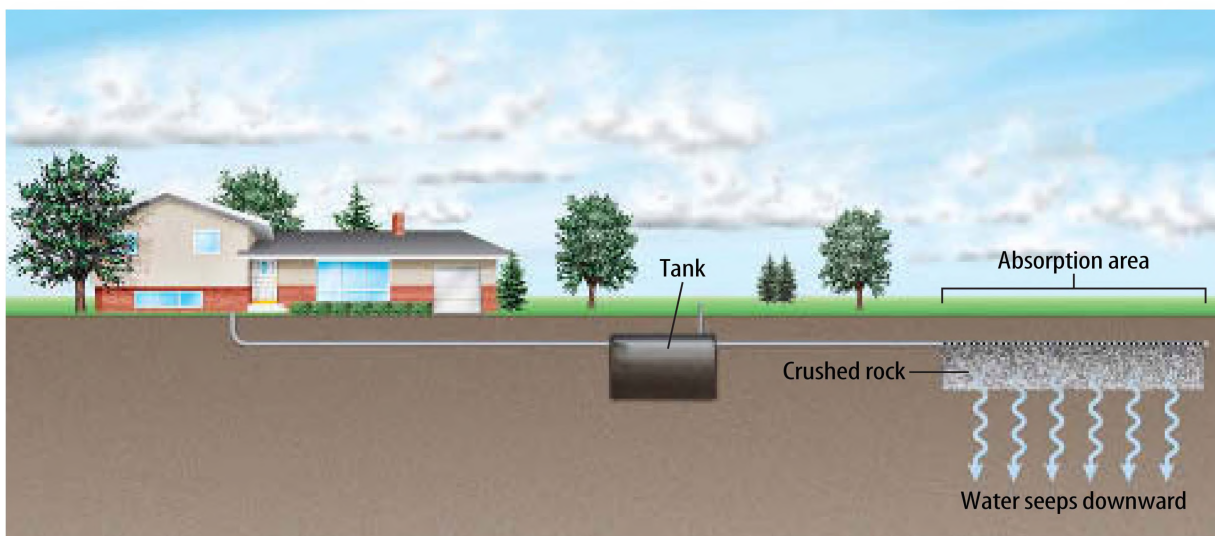


Figure 13 Properly lined holding ponds reduce the chances of groundwater pollution.



Mini LAB

Modeling Groundwater Pollution

Procedure



1. Use a **rubber band** to secure a **coffee filter** or a **sheet of porous paper** to the top of a **clear drinking glass**.
2. Place one spoonful of powdered **coffee, hot chocolate, or other powdered drink** onto the filter.
3. Slowly pour **water** over the powdered liquid and examine the water at the bottom of the glass. *Do NOT drink the water.*

Analysis

1. Compare the spoonful of powdered drink to a stockpile or waste pile at an industrial plant. Compare the coffee filter to soil.
2. Infer why the water at the bottom of the glass is discolored. Explain how groundwater below a stockpile or waste pile can be polluted after a heavy rain.



Industrial Wastes One of the major sources of groundwater pollution is from holding ponds like the one in **Figure 13**. These are shallow depressions in the ground that are used for holding industrial chemicals. These ponds sometimes contain concentrated toxic solutions that leak through the soil and into groundwater. If holding ponds are lined with plastic, concrete, clay or other fine-grained sediments, the liquids are less likely to seep into the groundwater supply. However, even lined ponds can overflow during heavy rains, spilling liquid wastes directly into the surrounding soil.



Reading Check

How can chemical holding ponds cause groundwater pollution?

Another source of industrial groundwater pollution is from stockpiles and waste piles. A stockpile is a pile of materials that will be used at a later time. A waste pile is a mound of debris that is to be disposed of in the future. When rain falls and dissolves materials in stockpiles and waste piles, toxic materials can get into groundwater.

Mining Wastes When water flows across soil or rock in a mine, toxic metals and other substances can dissolve in the water. Some of these substances combine with water to form acids, such as sulfuric acid. These toxic substances can, in turn, migrate into groundwater.

Today, laws require that mining companies make every effort to prevent the flow of pollutants into groundwater. Some of these efforts include changing the pathway of water entering a mine after it rains or snows. Channels and pipes can divert water so that it does not flow across mining wastes. If some water does migrate across mining wastes, it can be captured and treated before entering an aquifer.

Agricultural Runoff When rain falls on fields and lawns that have been treated with pesticides and fertilizers, these substances can move through soil and pollute groundwater. Fertilizers are especially harmful. When ammonia fertilizers decompose, they create nitrates. Water that is high in nitrates creates a serious health problem for infants and elderly people. In some rural areas, people must use bottled water for drinking because of nitrates in their well water.

Feedlots Another source of groundwater pollution is from animal feedlots. A feedlot is where a large number of animals like chickens, cows, sheep, or pigs are raised for food. In these areas, large amounts of animal wastes, or manure, collect. Manure contains large concentrations of nitrates and bacteria that can pollute aquifers if the manure is not stored and handled properly. Monitoring wells can be installed around manure storage ponds or tanks. These wells allow groundwater to be constantly monitored for pollution.



Topic: Groundwater Pollution

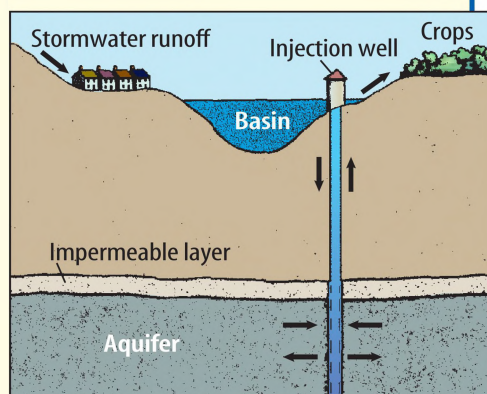
Visit bookh.msscience.com for Web links to information about what farmers are doing to reduce groundwater pollution.

Activity List some of the major chemicals that farmers apply to the land and their purpose.

Applying Science

Can stormwater be cleaned and reused for irrigation?

The council of Parfitt Square in Bowden has called a meeting of all residents to discuss implementing a new stormwater management system. Plans will be presented that call for the storage of all stormwater runoff in the aquifer. The water will be cleaned to remove pollutants before storage and then reused for irrigation.



Identifying the Problem

All of the stormwater will be collected in a basin. It will pass through a sediment trap, where most of the sediment will settle out. The water then will be treated and sent to the aquifer, where it will be stored until it is needed for irrigation. The aquifer is large and contains coarse river gravel. Water in the aquifer has a high concentration of salt, which currently makes it unusable for irrigation. Residents can examine

the diagram of the stormwater system and ask questions. What questions would you ask the council members?

Solving the Problem

1. If the objective is to collect all of the stormwater runoff, how will this affect the aquifer?
2. What would be the advantages of this stormwater management system to the neighborhood? Are there any disadvantages?

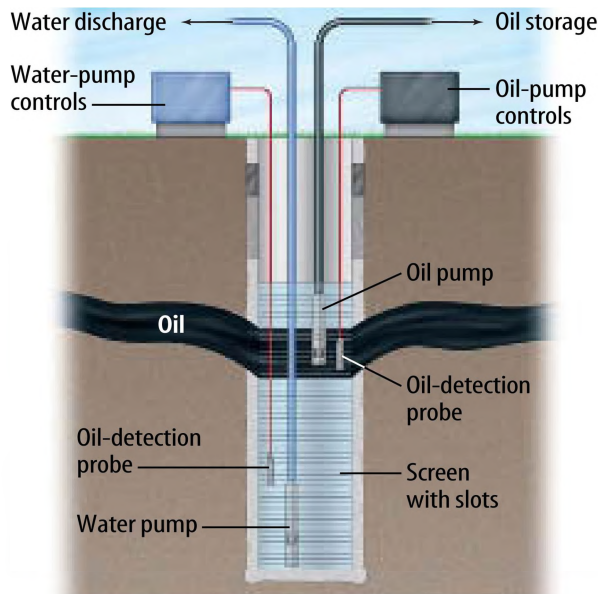


Figure 14 Pumping causes water and oil to move into a well. One pump removes groundwater, while the other pump removes the oil. A control system shuts off the water pump if oil is detected by the probe just above the water pump.

Infer What would happen if the lower oil-detection probe was broken?

Groundwater Cleanup

Imagine trying to clean paint or oil out of a sponge. You would have to soak the sponge in chemicals, squeeze it, rinse it, and repeat this process several times. Even after this, you may never get all the paint or oil out because some will cling to the sides of the pores. Now, imagine trying to clean the polluted pores in rocks. You aren't allowed to use dangerous chemicals. You can't squeeze rocks. In addition, water moves through the pores slowly. Cleaning groundwater isn't easy.

In many ways, it's easier to prevent groundwater pollution than it is to clean it up. The slow speed of groundwater movement often makes groundwater cleanup a slow and difficult process. Surface water and groundwater

is constantly being used for human consumption, recreation, and industrial purposes. Therefore, water that is polluted should be cleaned.

Removing Pollution Sources The first step in cleaning groundwater is to remove the source of the pollution. In 1980, Congress established a program called Superfund to eliminate the worst hazardous-waste sites in the United States. The Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) works in cooperation with states to locate, investigate, and clean up these sites. These sites include abandoned warehouses, manufacturing facilities, processing plants, and landfills. The cleanup operation for Superfund sites is expensive and time consuming, but it often is possible to clean these and many other point-source pollution sites. Nonpoint-source pollution is much more difficult to eliminate. If the pollution source can be removed, the next task is to clean the groundwater itself.

Cleanup Methods One way of cleaning groundwater is to pump the water out, remove the pollutants, and then return the water to the aquifer. Another way is to treat water while it remains in an aquifer. The method used for treatment of water left in an aquifer depends on the type of pollutant. In one method, gas is injected under pressure into wells to push the pollutants to the surface, where they can be removed. Another method uses steam, heated water, or electricity to increase the flow of pollutants to a well, where they can be removed. **Figure 14** shows one way that oil polluting groundwater can be removed.

Bioremediation Another way to clean groundwater is by bioremediation. **Bioremediation** is a process that uses living organisms to remove pollutants. Bacteria and fungi often are used in bioremediation because they use organic materials for food. In water that is polluted with sewage and other organic materials, these organisms break down harmful substances into harmless substances.

Some kinds of plants also can be used for bioremediation. The roots of some plants are able to absorb certain dangerous metals. Where groundwater is within 3 m of the ground surface and soil contamination is within 1 m of the ground surface, plants have been used successfully to remove pollutants. Poplar trees like those shown in **Figure 15** have been successfully used to remove petroleum products from groundwater in Ogden, Utah.

 **Reading Check** What is bioremediation?

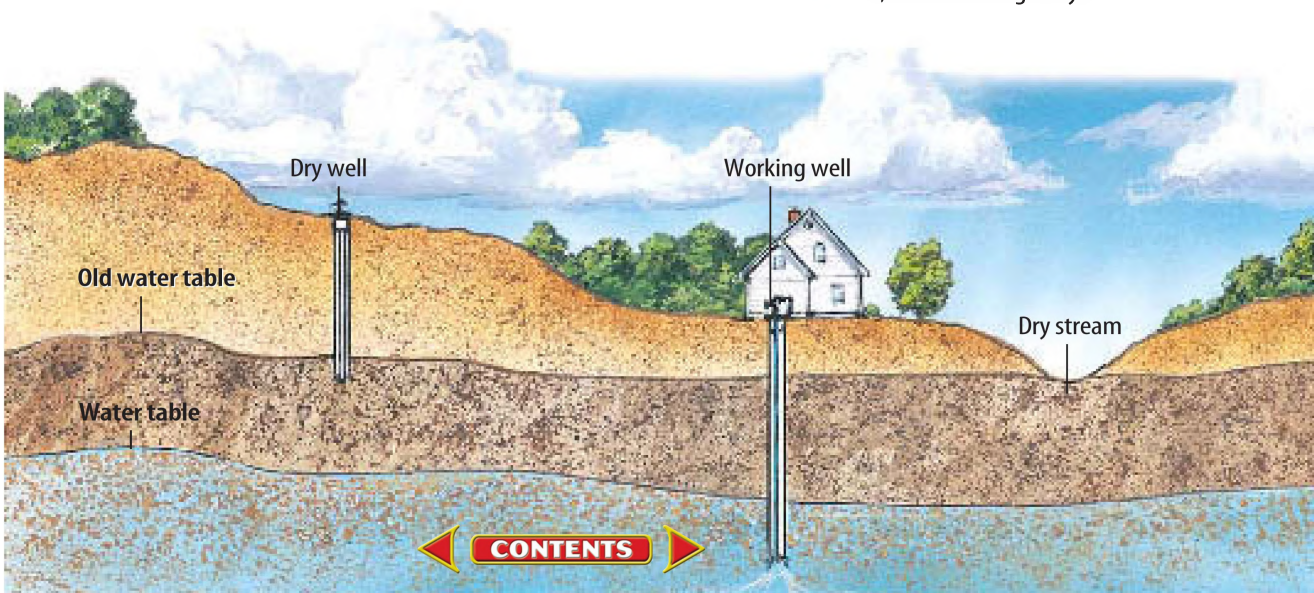
Groundwater Shortages

Besides pollution, another groundwater problem exists. It's caused when large populations overpump aquifers. Overpumping means that the amount of groundwater removed from an aquifer is greater than the amount of water flowing into the aquifer. In some parts of the southwestern United States, increased demand for water has caused groundwater to be removed faster than rain and snow can replenish it. When this happens, the water table drops and some wells go dry, as shown in **Figure 16**. This creates water shortages in some regions. You learned earlier about the Ogallala Aquifer. Its water has supported life and agriculture on the High Plains for many years. However, over the years more water has been pumped out of this aquifer than has been replaced by rainfall. It's one of many aquifers that are drying up.



Figure 15 In addition to sunflowers, alfalfa, and clover, poplar trees also have been used for bioremediation. Because tree roots grow more deeply into the ground than the roots of smaller plants, trees can be used to remove deeper pollution.

Figure 16 When the amount of water pumped out of an aquifer is greater than the amount flowing in, some wells go dry.



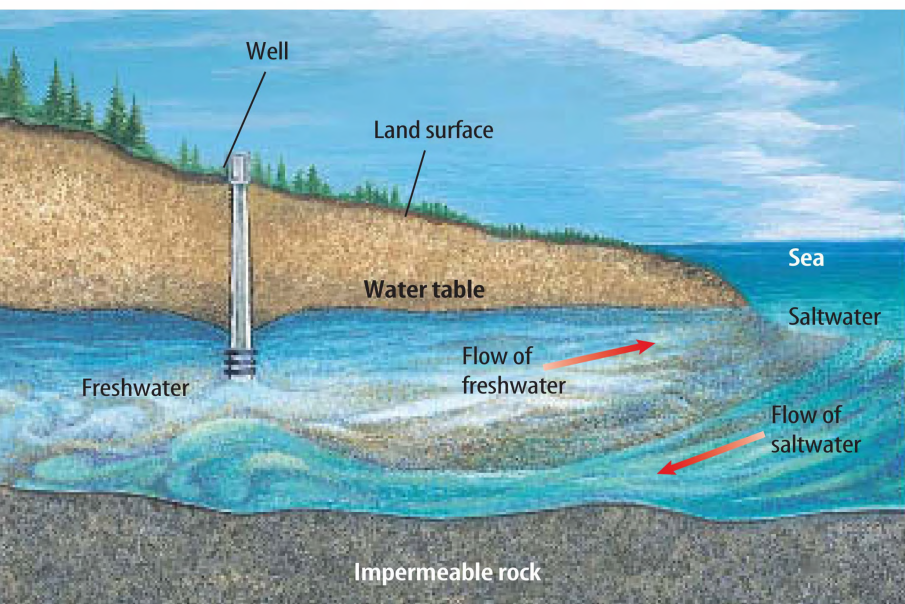


Figure 17 Pumping of groundwater can reduce freshwater flow toward coastal areas and cause salt water to be drawn toward the freshwater zones of the aquifer.

Describe what will happen when the saltwater layer reaches the bottom of the well.

Seawater Pollution Another problem can arise when too much water is removed from an aquifer along a coast. Seawater can seep into the aquifer and contaminate wells, as shown in **Figure 17**. Seawater is more dense than fresh groundwater because it contains dissolved salts. As a result, salt water tends to flow slowly into the lower levels of a coastal aquifer. Notice how the layer of salt water forms an upward cone near the pumping well. This process, called saltwater intrusion, has happened in Florida and Texas, as well as in other places.

Sinking Land

When water no longer fills the pores in an aquifer, the land above the aquifer sinks. This is called **subsidence** (sub SI dents). So much groundwater has been removed in parts of California, Florida, and Texas that land surfaces have dropped 5 m or more. In coastal regions, the result of sinking land is a rise in sea level. As a result, flooding along Galveston Bay in Texas has caused some people to abandon their homes.

section 2 review

Summary

Sources of Pollution

- Pollution comes from both point and nonpoint sources.
- Fertilizers that are put on fields and lawns are toxic and can contaminate groundwater.

Groundwater Cleanup

- Groundwater cleanup can be a slow, difficult, and expensive process.
- Preventing groundwater contamination is often easier than cleaning polluted water.

Groundwater Shortages and Sinking Land

- Water shortages and subsidence can be caused when large populations use aquifers.

Self Check

1. **Name** three sources of groundwater pollution. How do these pollutants get into groundwater?
2. **Explain** why it is difficult to clean groundwater.
3. **Name** two different ways to clean groundwater.
4. **Describe** four things that can happen when too much water is pumped from an aquifer.
5. **Think Critically** Benjamin Franklin once said, "When the well's dry, we'll know the worth of water." What do you think he meant?

Applying Math

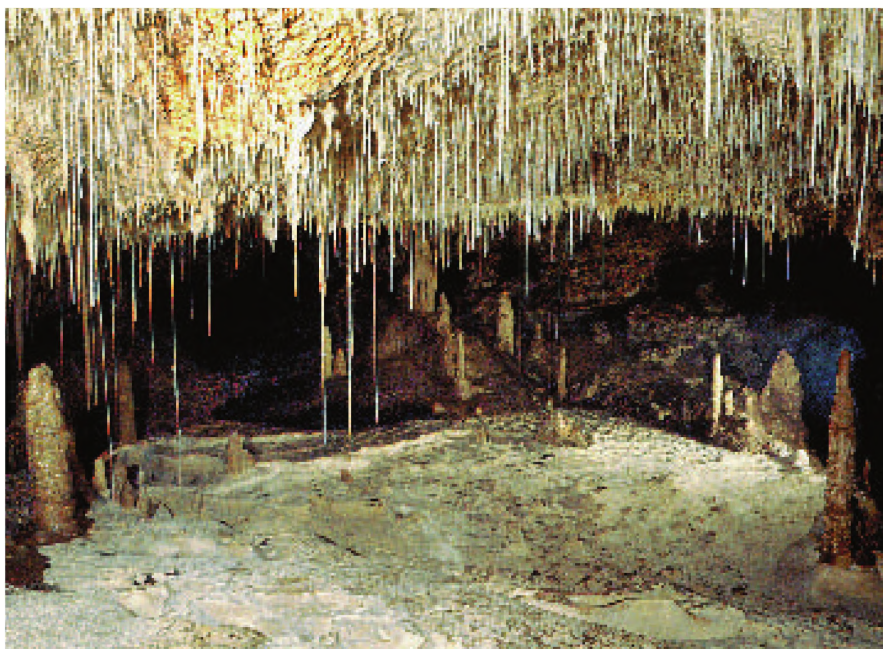
6. **Calculate** If a 500-gallon gasoline spill has occurred and 300 gallons of gasoline have been removed, what percentage of the spill remains in the ground?

Caves and Other Groundwater Features

Formation of Caves

Some of the most beautiful natural features on Earth are caves like the one shown in **Figure 18**. A **cave**, or cavern, is an underground chamber that opens to the surface. A cave system is a place where many caves are connected by passages. Carlsbad Caverns and Mammoth Cave are two very famous cave systems in the United States. Carlsbad Caverns, in New Mexico, has at least 48 km of passages. One of the caves in the system is so big it could hold 11 football fields. This cave is 25 stories high. The Mammoth Cave system, in Kentucky, has about 540 km of mapped passages. It is the longest recorded cave system in the world. Scientists estimate that there could be as many as 900 km of passages that have yet to be discovered and explored in this cave system.

About 17,000 caves have been found in the United States. Probably many more remain to be discovered and explored. Did you ever wonder what happens to make caves form?



as you read

What You'll Learn

- **Recognize** how caves change through time.
- **Explain** how cave features form.
- **Explain** what causes sinkholes and disappearing streams.

Why It's Important

As caves evolve, surface features sometimes change.



Review Vocabulary

evaporate: the physical change of a material from the liquid state to the vapor state

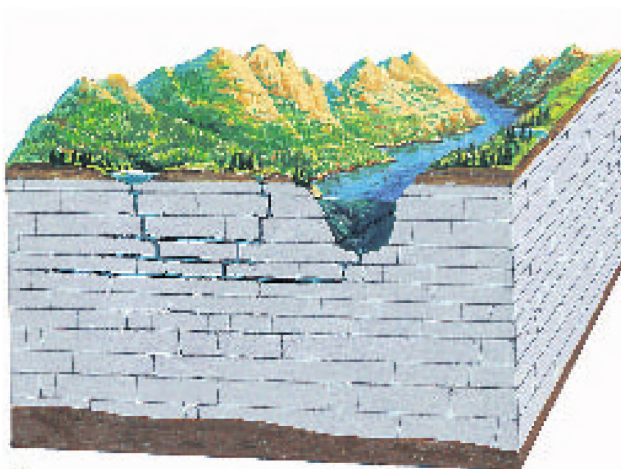
New Vocabulary

- cave
- dripstone
- sinkhole

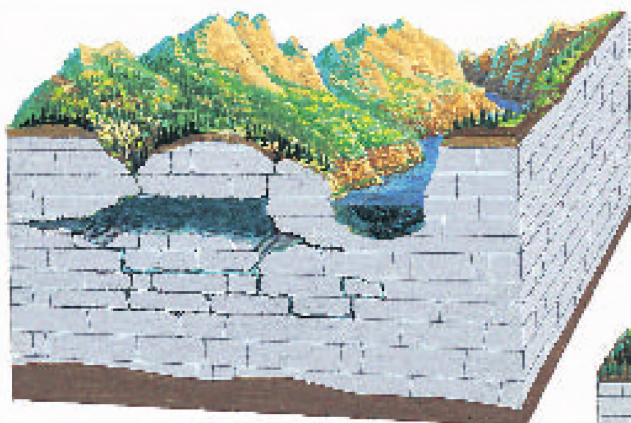
Figure 18 This cave near Austin, Texas, is one of more than 100 caves in the United States that people can visit to experience the work of groundwater.

Figure 19 Caves form in regions where groundwater dissolves rock.

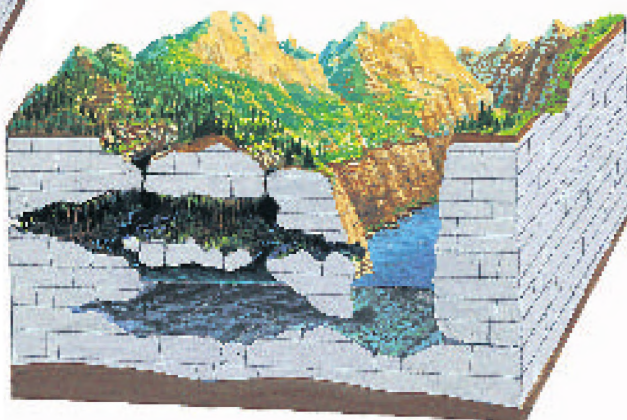
Acidic water moves through cracks and pores in the rock.



Minerals in the rock dissolve in the water and are carried away, forming chambers and passages.



As the water table drops, the process is repeated on a lower level, leaving the upper cave dry.



Effects of Groundwater Caves form because groundwater is slightly acidic. As you learned earlier, groundwater originates as surface water. Surface water forms when rain falls or snow melts. As water from precipitation falls through the atmosphere and then seeps through soil, it chemically combines with carbon dioxide to form carbonic acid.

Carbonic acid makes groundwater naturally acidic. As this weak acid moves slowly through fractures and pores in certain kinds of rock, the acid reacts with the rock. For example, when carbonic acid passes through limestone, marble, and dolostone, the rocks dissolve easily. Some of the compounds forming these rocks are carried away as ions in solution. **Figure 19** shows how caves change over time.

(l)Runk/Schoenberger from Grant Heilman, (tr)M.L. Sinibaldi/The Stock Market/CORBIS, (br)Coral

Formation of Cave Features

Groundwater doesn't only dissolve rocks to create caves. It sometimes creates spectacular ceiling, wall, and floor deposits inside the caves. As the water drips and then evaporates, it leaves behind deposits of calcium carbonate called **dripstone**.

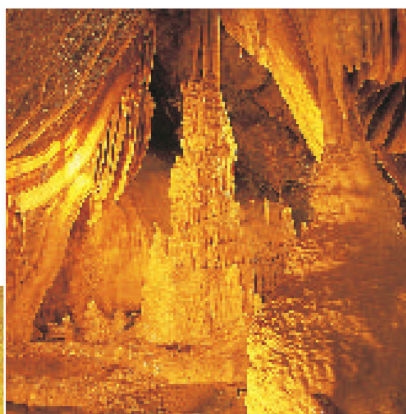
Figure 20 shows different kinds of dripstone formations.

When water drips from the ceiling, it can create long, wavy shapes, much like draperies. It also can form tubes like soda straws that fill with deposits. Some material also is added to the outside of the tubes. Soda-straw formations are the first stage of stalactites. When the soda straws are plugged, water trickling down their outside turns them into larger stalactites. Stalactites are dripstone deposits that hang down from the ceilings of caves, much like icicles. As water drips to the floor, towers of stalagmites can build up toward the ceiling. Where stalactites join stalagmites, columns are created. Round pearl-like objects, called cave pearls, form when water drips into shallow cave ponds.

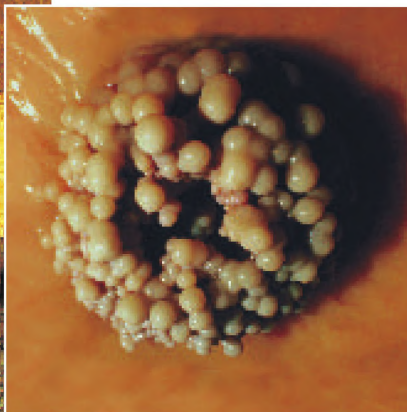
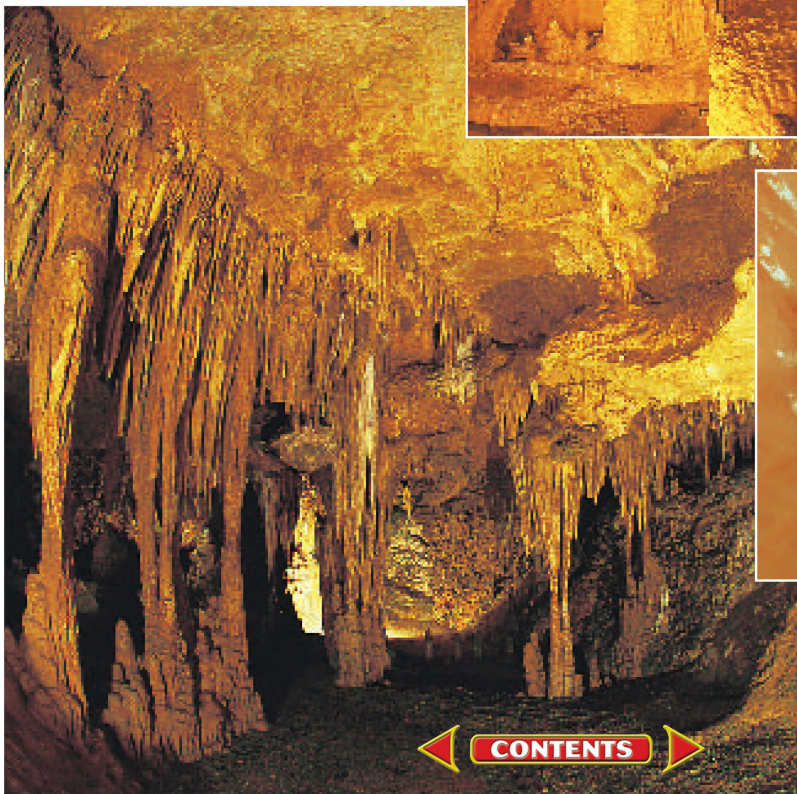
Reading Check *What is dripstone?*

Figure 20 Dripping water creates beautiful formations in some caves.

Find the stalactites, stalagmites, and columns.



At times, water contains minerals that result in draperies with dark orange, reddish, or brown bands. These draperies are called cave bacon.



Cave pearls form in a variety of sizes and colors.

Topic: Caves

Visit bookh.msscience.com for Web links to information about Carlsbad Caverns and Mammoth Cave.

Activity Determine how many miles of explored cave passages have been discovered in your state.

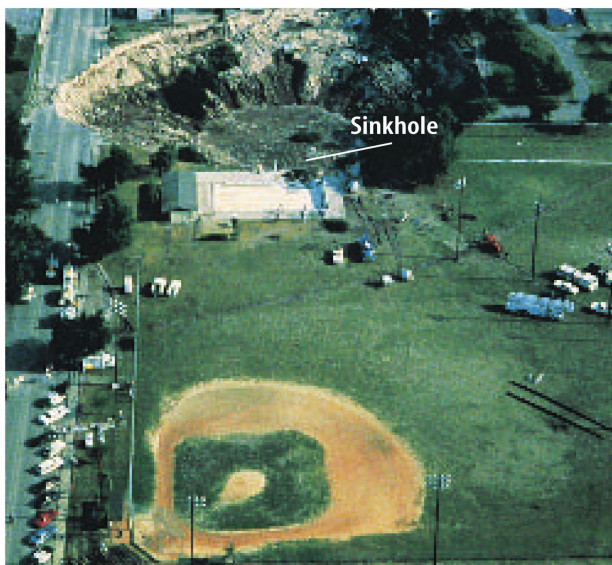


Figure 21 In one day, land collapsed to create this sinkhole in Winter Park, Florida.

Sinkholes In some caves, so much rock dissolves that the cave's roof can no longer support the land above it and the land collapses into the cave. The depression it leaves is called a **sinkhole**. In regions that overlie thin, delicate roofs of caves, dangerous situations can arise. Roadways, housing developments, and agricultural areas are vulnerable when rock and soil collapse rapidly into an underground cavern.

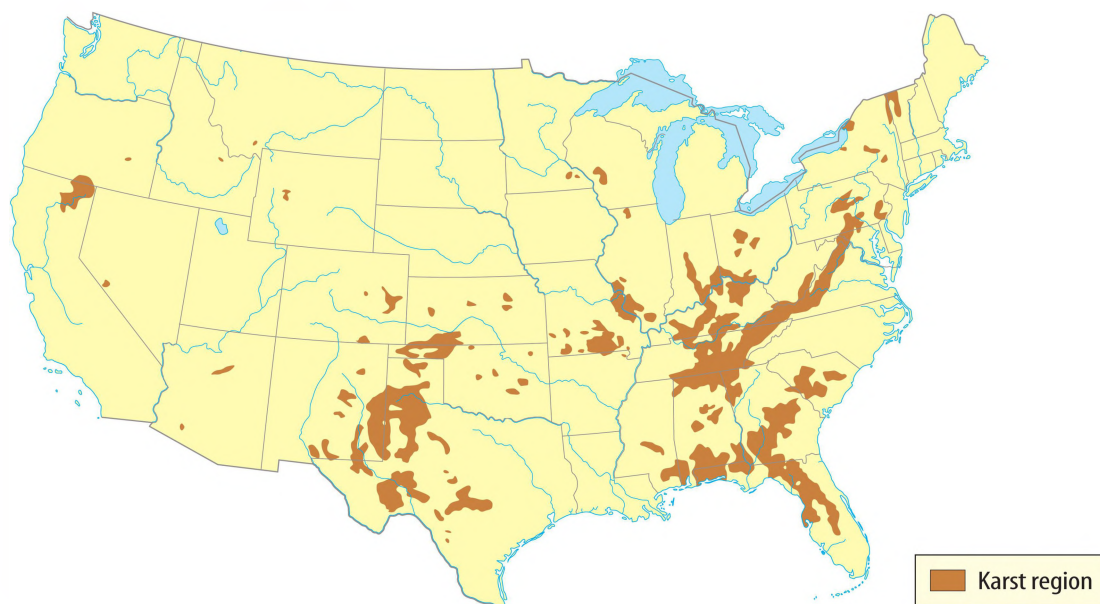
Sinkholes often develop in zones of fractured limestone. When groundwater enters the limestone along the fractures, rock dissolves near the cracks and caves form. **Figure 21** shows a sinkhole that formed in Winter Park, Florida. Sinkholes also occur when so much

groundwater is pumped out that the water table drops and flooded caves become dry. When water is no longer in the cave to help support the roof, the roof of the cave can collapse. An area where there are many sinkholes is called a karst area.

Disappearing Streams Walking through a karst area, such as in central Kentucky, you might see sinkholes and lakes. Some of these lakes formed when sinkholes filled with water. You might also see some strange streams. They flow along the surface and then suddenly disappear. Where do they go? These disappearing streams fall into caves and continue flowing as underground streams. **Figure 22** shows one way that scientists track these disappearing streams.

Figure 22 Fluorescent dye is poured into streams where they sink into caves. The dye can be tracked to help determine how and where underground water moves.





Location of Karst Areas In the United States, karst areas with caves, sinkholes, and disappearing streams are common in Missouri, Tennessee, Kentucky, Indiana, Alabama, Florida, and Texas, among other places, as shown in **Figure 23**. Worldwide, karst areas are found in southern Europe, southern Australia, southeastern Asia, Puerto Rico, and Cuba.

As you've learned in this chapter, groundwater is one of Earth's most important resources. It provides many communities with water, and creates caves. Unfortunately, groundwater also can transport pollutants. Understanding how groundwater moves through soil and rock is a first step in learning how to clean, conserve, and protect groundwater resources that are vital for life.

Figure 23 Most karst regions are in central and southern states where limestone is found and rainfall is abundant.

Discuss Why do you think there are very few karst areas in Arizona and Nevada?

section 3 review

Summary

Formation of Caves

- A cave system is a series of many caves that are interconnected by passages.
- Slightly acidic groundwater can dissolve certain types of bedrock.

Cave Features

- Stalactites and stalagmites are formed over time by the dripping of groundwater that leaves deposits of calcium carbonate.
- Cave pearls form in shallow cave ponds.
- An area where there are many sinkholes is called a karst area.

Self Check

1. **Describe** how carbonic acid forms caves.
2. **Explain** how dripstone forms cave features.
3. **Explain** what causes a sinkhole.
4. **Compare** disappearing and surface streams.
5. **Think Critically** Why don't some areas with limestone in the western United States contain karst features?

Applying Math

6. **Calculate** If dripping water from a cave ceiling produces a stalactite at the rate of 1 cm per month, how long will it take to produce a stalactite of 3 m?

Pollution in Motion

Goals

- **Observe** the flow of groundwater pollution in a model of an aquifer.
- **Observe and infer** the direction pollution flows when water is pumped from an aquifer.

Materials

clear-plastic box
aquarium gravel
water
pump (from a bottle of non-aerosol hair spray or liquid soap)
30 mL of salt water
food coloring
5-cm × 5-cm piece of cloth
1,000-mL beaker
small rubber band
50-mL graduated cylinder

Safety Precautions



Real-World Question

Groundwater pollution is a serious problem in the United States. It becomes more serious as the use of this resource grows. When water seeps into the ground, it can carry with it many pollutants. When the polluted water reaches an aquifer, a pollution plume forms as the contaminated groundwater flows through the aquifer. The movement of a pollutant through an aquifer depends on the permeability of the aquifer, the water pressure, whether the pollutant dissolves in water, and other factors. In this lab, you'll investigate and observe the movement of pollution through a model aquifer. How does a pollutant move through an aquifer?



Procedure

1. Add clean gravel to a clear-plastic box until it is three-fourths full.
2. Pour water into the box until it's just below the top of the sediment.
3. Cover the bottom end of the pump with cloth and secure with a rubber band. Push the pump into the sediment near one end of the box.



Using Scientific Methods

4. Use a few drops of food coloring to dye the salt water.
5. Pour salt water on top of the sediment at the end of the box away from the pump.
6. Observe the salt water's movement.
7. Sketch the box, the sediment, and the direction that the salt water moves inside the box.
8. **Predict** what will happen to the movement of the salt water when you pump water out of the box.
9. Begin pumping water into the empty beaker and observe the movement of the salt water.
10. Complete your drawing of the saltwater movement.



Conclude and Apply

1. **Infer** why the salt water moved in the direction it did before you began pumping water out of the box.
2. **Infer** what caused the movement of the salt water after you began pumping the water.
3. **Predict** what would happen to the direction of the saltwater flow if you used two pumps located next to each other.
4. **Predict** what would happen to the direction of the saltwater flow if you used two pumps that were located at different ends of the box.
5. **Infer** how pumping water from an aquifer affects the movement of pollutants.
6. **Predict** how an increasing population in an area could affect the movement of pollutants in an aquifer and the water quality in people's wells.

Communicating Your Data

Compare your drawings with drawings made by other students. Compare your conclusions with those of other students.

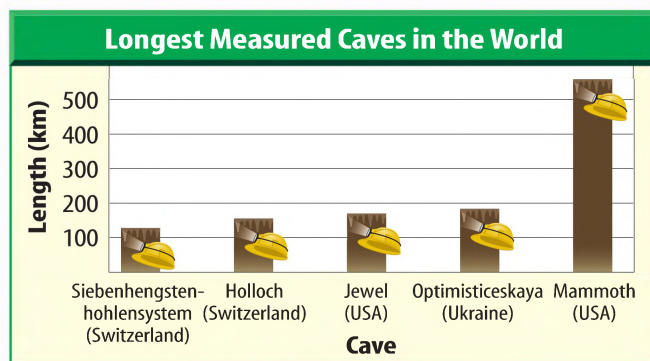
SCIENCE Stats

Caves

Did you know...

...Wind Cave, South Dakota, is one of the world's oldest caves.

It was formed more than 320 million years ago. Wind Cave doesn't have many stalactites or stalagmites. It's known for its boxwork, an unusual cave formation comprised of thin calcite fins resembling honeycombs.



...Mammoth Cave is the longest cave in the world.

Beneath central Kentucky, 540 km of twisting passages snake through Mammoth Cave. Straightened out, these passageways would stretch the distance from Chicago, Illinois, to Cleveland, Ohio.

Applying Math

According to the above graph, Mammoth Cave is about how many times longer than Jewel Cave?

...The deepest cave in the U.S. is in New Mexico. The Lechuguilla (lay chew GEE uh) Cave, in Carlsbad Caverns National Park, is more than 475 m deep. Cave explorers, called spelunkers, are still discovering deeper parts of this cave.



Write About It

Go to bookh.msscience.com/science_stats or a library to find out about the size and history of a cave not discussed in this feature. Write about characteristics of this new cave you've found.

Reviewing Main Ideas

Section 1 Groundwater

1. Groundwater moves slowly through pores in soil and rock. An aquifer is a formation of rock or sediment in which water flows freely through pore spaces.
2. In the zone of saturation, pores in an aquifer are full of water. The water table is the top surface of this zone.
3. Springs form where the water table is exposed on hillsides. When groundwater is heated, geysers can form.

Section 2 Groundwater Pollution and Overuse

1. Sources of groundwater pollution include landfills, spills, holding ponds and septic systems, industrial wastes, mining wastes, and runoff.

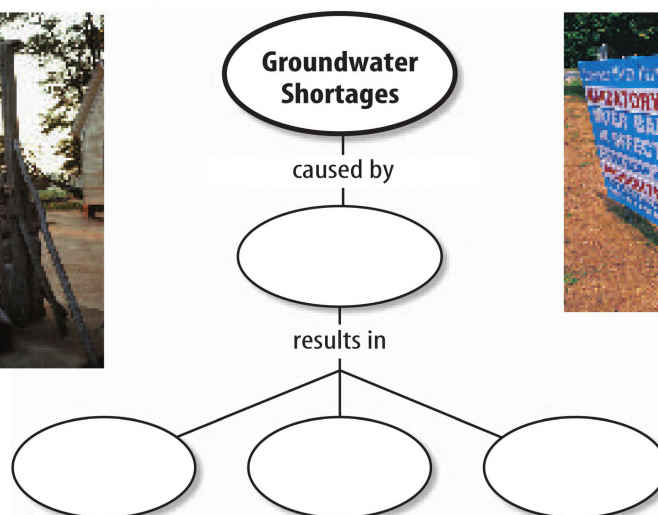
2. Sometimes, polluted groundwater can be cleaned, after the source of pollution is removed. Bioremediation uses organisms to clean water.
3. Too much pumping of water from an aquifer can result in water shortages, subsidence, and saltwater intrusion.

Section 3 Caves and Other Groundwater Features

1. Water can combine with carbon dioxide in air or soil to form a weak acid that dissolves some types of rock to form caves.
2. As water drips within a cave, it leaves behind calcium carbonate. This forms dripstone structures.
3. When the ceiling in a cave can no longer support the ground above it, it collapses. The hole that forms is a sinkhole.

Visualizing Main Ideas

Copy and complete the following concept map on groundwater shortages.



Using Vocabulary

aquifer p.70	pollution p.76
artesian well p.73	porosity p.69
bioremediation p.83	sanitary landfill p.78
cave p.85	sinkhole p.88
dripstone p.87	subsidence p.84
geyser p.74	water table p.70
groundwater p.68	zone of saturation p.70
permeable p.69	

Explain the differences between the vocabulary words in each of the following pairs.

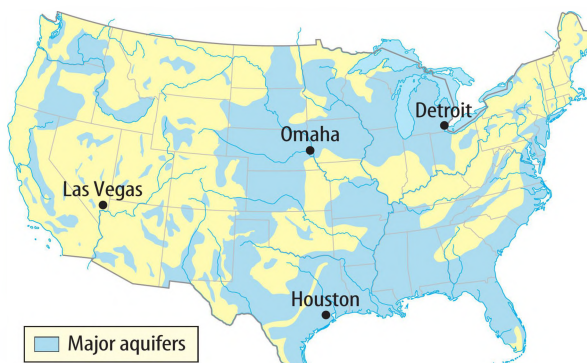
1. water table—zone of saturation
2. artesian well—geyser
3. subsidence—sinkhole
4. pollution—groundwater
5. aquifer—groundwater
6. permeable—zone of saturation
7. bioremediation—subsidence
8. dripstone—sinkhole

Checking Concepts

Choose the word or phrase that best answers the question.

9. Which is rock with unconnected pores?
A) impermeable C) aquifers
B) permeable D) saturated
10. Where do most solid wastes end up?
A) holding ponds C) septic systems
B) landfills D) feedlots
11. Which of the following is an example of nonpoint-source pollution?
A) runoff from a farmer's field
B) a leaking underground storage tank
C) a broken pipeline
D) a leaking landfill

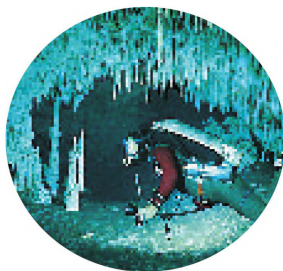
Use the illustration below to answer questions 12–13.



12. Which city is least likely to use groundwater as its primary water source?
A) Detroit, MI C) Houston, TX
B) Las Vegas, NV D) Omaha, NE
13. To which of the following states does the Ogallala Aquifer provide water?
A) Florida C) California
B) Ohio D) Texas
14. Which of the following is an example of an impermeable material?
A) limestone C) clay
B) sandstone D) gravel
15. Which of the following was set up by Congress to clean up hazardous waste sites?
A) Safe Drinking Water Act
B) Superfund
C) The Clean Water Act
D) bioremediation
16. Which cave formation forms when ceiling structures join with floor structures?
A) stalactite C) cave pearl
B) stalagmite D) column
17. Which layer of an aquifer has its pores filled with both air and water?
A) water table
B) impermeable rock
C) zone of saturation
D) zone of aeration

Thinking Critically

- 18. Discuss** What affects the speed of ground-water flowing through rock?
- 19. Predict** Under what conditions would the water table in an aquifer be higher than normal? What could cause the water table to be lower than normal?
- 20. Interpret Scientific Illustrations** This picture shows stalagmites and stalactites in an underwater cave. Was the water there when these cave features were forming? Explain your answer.
- 21. Predict** A homeowner decides not to have his septic system pumped out regularly. How could this create health problems?
- 22. Infer** why a town might choose to spread sand, rather than salt, on icy roadways.



Use the illustration below to answer question 23.



- 23. Draw Conclusions** A property owner's well runs dry when a nearby housing development drills several new wells. Explain what might have caused this to occur.
- 24. Classify** Which sources of groundwater pollution involve sewage?

- 25. Compare and contrast** porosity and permeability.

- 26. Test Hypotheses** Water tests at a city well indicate high levels of an organic pollutant. Some people have suggested that the pollution is coming from an industrial site east of town. Describe how the city could determine if this is true.

Performance Activities

- 27. Make a Diorama** Use clay or a mixture of flour, salt, and water to make a diorama of a cave. Include at least three different kinds of cave formations in your diorama.

Applying Math

Use the table below to answer questions 28–29.

Geotechnical Sample Results

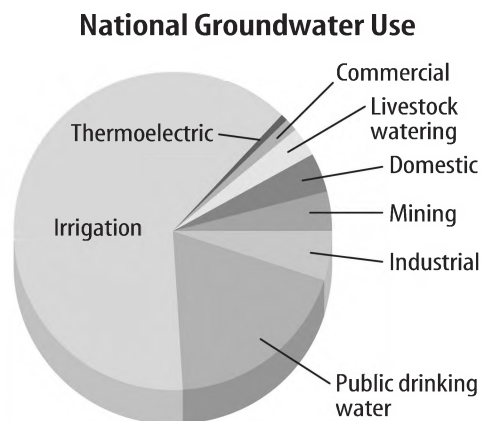
Site Location:	Big City, USA
Soil Type:	Dark brown silty/sand
Sample Depth:	3–4 meters below surface
Porosity:	35%
Bulk Density:	1.3 g/mL

- 28. Sample Density** The sample data presented in the table shows a term called bulk density. Bulk density represents the mass (or weight) of the sample divided by the volume of the sample. As shown in the table the bulk density is 1.30 g/mL. If the volume of the sample was 100 mL, what was the mass (weight)?
- 29. Pore Space** Porosity for a soil sample is the volume of its pore spaces divided by its total volume. The porosity of the sample is 35 percent. If the sample volume is 100 mL, what volume of water will the sample hold?

Part 1 Multiple Choice

Record your answers on the answer sheet provided by your teacher or on a sheet of paper.

Use the illustration below to answer questions 1–2.



- Based on the circle graph, which uses the least amount of groundwater?
A) industrial **C)** mining
B) irrigation **D)** thermoelectric
- According to the circle graph, approximately what percentage of total groundwater is used for irrigation?
A) 30% **C)** 65%
B) 50% **D)** 75%
- Which determines the speed at which groundwater flows?
A) depth **C)** permeability
B) gravity **D)** porosity
- Why was the 1980 Superfund established?
A) elimination of hazardous waste sites
B) protection of rare cave systems
C) replenishment of aquifers
D) discovery of new aquifers

Test-Taking Tip

Breakfast The morning of the test, eat a healthy breakfast with a balanced amount of protein and carbohydrates.

- Which rock is impermeable to water?
A) granite **C)** sandstone
B) limestone **D)** siltstone
- Soda-straw formations develop into
A) cave pearls. **C)** stalactites.
B) dripstone. **D)** stalagmites.
- Permeable rock in which water flows is
A) an aquifer. **C)** groundwater.
B) a geyser **D)** the water table.

Use the illustration below to answer question 8 and 9.



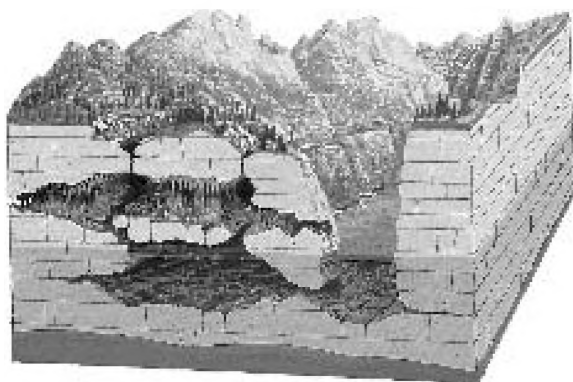
- Which is shown in this illustration?
A) bioremediation
B) nonpoint source pollution
C) point source pollution
D) sanitary landfill
- Which step is first in groundwater cleanup?
A) Pump the water out, remove pollutants, and return it to the aquifer.
B) Remove the source of pollution.
C) Treat the water in the aquifer.
D) Use living organisms to remove pollutants.
- Which is bioremediation?
A) Pump the water out, remove pollutants, and return it to the aquifer.
B) Remove the source of pollution.
C) Treat the water in the aquifer.
D) Use living organisms to remove pollutants.

Part 2 Short Response/Grid In

Record your answers on the answer sheet provided by your teacher or on a sheet of paper.

11. Calculate the porosity of a 350-mL soil sample having a pore space volume of 90 mL.
12. Compare and contrast subsidence and a sinkhole.
13. How do bacteria and plants play a role in cleaning groundwater?
14. How does a karst area develop?

Use the illustration below to answer questions 15–18.



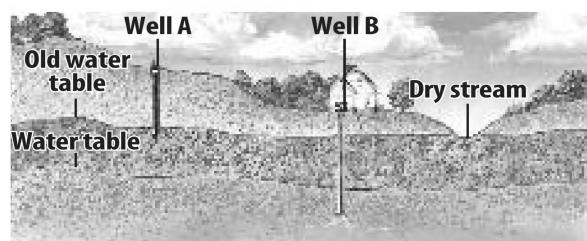
15. What process is occurring above?
16. What role does groundwater play in the formation of caves?
17. What will happen as the water table continues to drop?
18. List and describe at least two formations one might find in a cave.
19. What is the zone of saturation?
20. What traps liquid waste in a sanitary landfill?
21. Describe the zone of aeration.
22. How are the water table and the zone of saturation related?
23. What happens to the flow of groundwater if the slope of the water table increases?

Part 3 Open Ended

Record your answers on a sheet of paper.

24. What are the differences between ground-water and surface water? Explain how groundwater could become surface water.
25. List ways our everyday activities affect groundwater.

Use the illustration below to answer questions 26–28.



26. Why did well A dry up?
27. How did the homeowners decide where to drill well B?
28. What does the dry stream indicate about the water table?
29. Compare and contrast point-source and nonpoint-source pollution.
30. How does pouring oil on the ground to kill weeds cause groundwater pollution?
31. How is the water table related to the surfaces of streams, lakes, and other wetlands?
32. Traveling at 2 cm per day (the average speed at which groundwater moves through an aquifer), how long would it take you to move to the door of your classroom?
33. How do pesticides and fertilizers pollute groundwater?
34. Explain how columns form in caves.

Ocean Motion

chapter preview

sections

- 1 Ocean Water
- 2 Ocean Currents
- 3 Ocean Waves and Tides

Lab Wave Properties

Lab Sink or Float?



Virtual Lab How are tides affected by phases of the Moon?

The Power of Waves

Surfers from around the world experience firsthand the enormous power of moving water. Wind blowing across the ocean surface can create small ripples, the wave shown above in Fiji, and even the giant waves of hurricanes.

Science Journal Record in your Science Journal some facts you know about ocean currents, waves, or tides. Include some pictures to show your ideas.

Start-Up Activities



Explore How Currents Work

Surface currents are caused by wind. Deep-water currents are created by differences in the density of ocean water. Several factors affect water density. One is temperature. Do the lab below to see how temperature differences create deep-water currents.



1. In a bowl, mix ice and cold water to make ice water.
2. Fill a beaker with warm tap water.
3. Add a few drops of food coloring to the ice water and stir the mixture.
4. Use a dropper to place some of this ice water on top of the warm water.
5. **Think Critically** In your Science Journal, describe what happened. Did adding cold water on top produce a current? Look up the word *convection* in a dictionary. Infer why the current you created is called a convection current.



Preview this chapter's content and activities at
bookh.msscience.com

FOLDABLES™ Study Organizer

Ocean Motion Make the following Foldable to help you understand the cause-and-effect relationship of ocean motion.

- STEP 1** Fold a vertical sheet of paper in half from top to bottom.



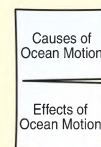
- STEP 2** Fold in half from side to side with the previous fold at the top.



- STEP 3** Unfold the paper once. Cut only the fold of the top flap to make two tabs.



- STEP 4** Turn the paper vertically and label the front tabs as shown.



Read and Write As you read the chapter, write what you learn about why the ocean moves and the effects of ocean motion under the appropriate tabs.

Ocean Water

as you read

What You'll Learn

- **Identify** the origin of the water in Earth's oceans.
- **Explain** how dissolved salts and other substances get into seawater.
- **Describe** the composition of seawater.

Why It's Important

Oceans are a reservoir of valuable food, energy, and mineral resources.



Review Vocabulary

resource: a reserve source of supply, such as a material or mineral

New Vocabulary

- basin
- salinity

Importance of Oceans

Imagine yourself lying on a beach and listening to the waves gently roll onto shore. A warm breeze blows off the water, making it seem as if you're in a tropical paradise. It's easy to appreciate the oceans under these circumstances, but the oceans affect your life in other ways, too.

Varied Resources Oceans are important sources of food, energy, and minerals. **Figure 1** shows two examples of food resources collected from oceans. Energy sources such as oil and natural gas are found beneath the ocean floor. Oil wells often are drilled in shallow water. Mineral resources including copper and gold are mined in shallow waters as well. Approximately one-third of the world's table salt is extracted from seawater through the process of evaporation. Oceans also allow for the efficient transportation of goods. For example, millions of tons of oil, coal, and grains are shipped over the oceans each year.



Reading Check

What resources come from oceans?

Figure 1 People depend on the oceans for many resources.



Krill are tiny, shrimplike animals that live in the Antarctic Ocean. Some cultures use krill in noodles and rice cakes.



Kelp is a fast-growing seaweed that is a source of algin, used in making ice cream, salad dressing, medicines, and cosmetics.

Origin of Oceans

During Earth's first billion years, its surface, shown in the top portion of **Figure 2**, was much more volcanically active than it is today. When volcanoes erupt, they spew lava and ash, and they give off water vapor, carbon dioxide, and other gases. Scientists hypothesize that about 4 billion years ago, this water vapor began to be stored in Earth's early atmosphere. Over millions of years, it cooled enough to condense into storm clouds. Torrential rains began to fall. Shown in the bottom portion of **Figure 2**, oceans were formed as this water filled low areas on Earth called **basins**. Today, approximately 70 percent of Earth's surface is covered by ocean water.

Composition of Oceans

Ocean water contains dissolved gases such as oxygen, carbon dioxide, and nitrogen. Oxygen is the gas that almost all organisms need for respiration. It enters the oceans in two ways—directly from the atmosphere and from organisms that photosynthesize. Carbon dioxide enters the ocean from the atmosphere and from organisms when they respire. The atmosphere is the only important source of nitrogen gas. Bacteria combine nitrogen and oxygen to create nitrates, which are important nutrients for plants.

If you've ever tasted ocean water, you know that it is salty. Ocean water contains many dissolved salts. Chloride, sodium, sulfate, magnesium, calcium, and potassium are some of the ions in seawater. An ion is a charged atom or group of atoms. Some of these ions come from rocks that are dissolved slowly by rivers and groundwater. These include calcium, magnesium, and sodium. Rivers carry these chemicals to the oceans. Erupting volcanoes add other ions, such as bromide and chloride.



Reading Check

How do sodium and chloride ions get into seawater?

Figure 2 Earth's oceans formed from water vapor.



Water vapor was released into the atmosphere by volcanoes that also gave off other gases, such as carbon dioxide and nitrogen.



Condensed water vapor formed storm clouds. Oceans formed when basins filled with water from torrential rains.

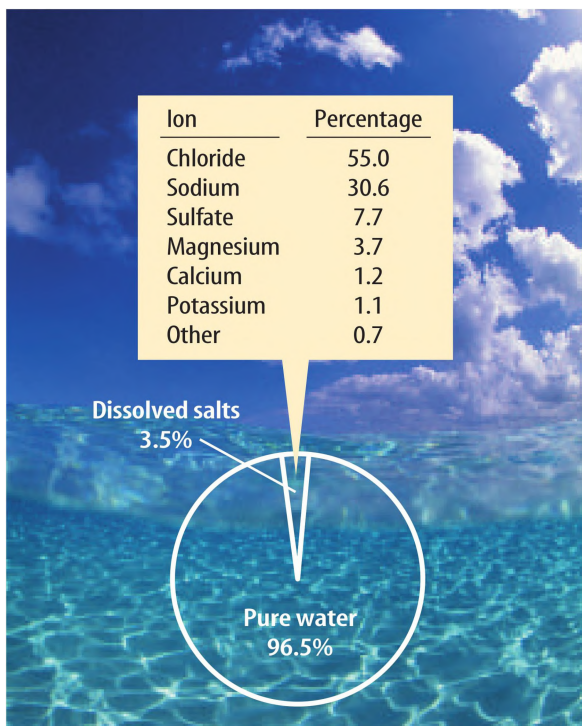


Figure 3 Ocean water contains about 3.5 percent dissolved salts.

Calculate If you evaporated 1,000 g of seawater, how many grams of salt would be left?

Salts The most abundant elements in sea water are the hydrogen and oxygen that make up water. Many other ions are found dissolved in seawater. When seawater is evaporated, these ions combine to form materials called salts. Sodium and chloride make up most of the ions in seawater. If seawater evaporates, the sodium and chloride ions combine to form a salt called halite. Halite is the common table salt you use to season food. It is this dissolved salt and similar ones that give ocean water its salty taste.

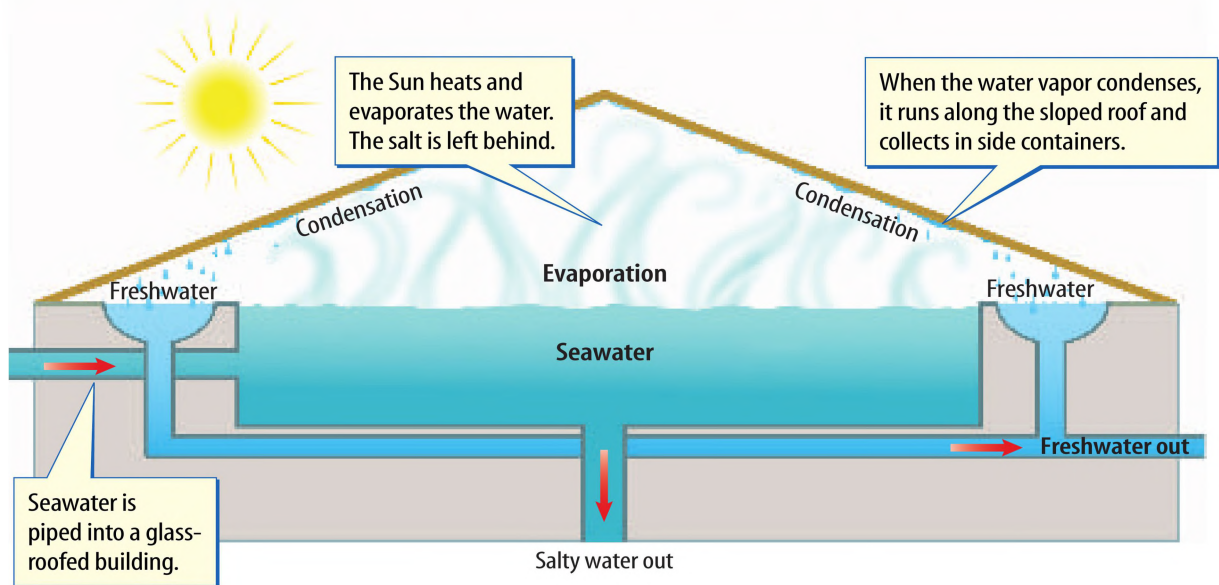
Salinity (say LIH nuh tee) is a measure of the amount of salts dissolved in seawater. It usually is measured in grams of dissolved salt per kilogram of seawater. One kilogram of ocean water contains about 35 g of dissolved salts, or 3.5 percent. The chart in **Figure 3** shows the most abundant ions in ocean water. The proportion and amount of dissolved salts in seawater remain nearly constant and have stayed about the same for hundreds of millions of years. This tells you

that the composition of the oceans is in balance. Evidence that scientists have gathered indicates that Earth's oceans are not growing saltier.



Removal of Elements Although rivers, volcanoes, and the atmosphere constantly add material to the oceans, the oceans are considered to be in a steady state. This means that elements are added to the oceans at about the same rate that they are removed. Dissolved salts are removed when they precipitate out of ocean water and become part of the sediment. Some marine organisms use dissolved salts to make body parts. Some remove calcium ions from the water to form bones. Other animals, such as oysters, use the dissolved calcium to form shells. Some algae, called diatoms, have silica shells. Because many organisms use calcium and silicon, these elements are removed more quickly from seawater than elements such as chlorine or sodium.

Desalination Salt can be removed from ocean water by a process called desalination (dee sa luh NAY shun). If you have ever swum in the ocean, you know what happens when your skin dries. The white, flaky substance on your skin is salt. As seawater evaporates, salt is left behind. As demand for freshwater increases throughout the world, scientists are working on technology to remove salt to make seawater drinkable.



Desalination Plants Some methods of desalination include evaporating seawater and collecting the freshwater as it condenses on a glass roof. **Figure 4** shows how a desalination plant that uses solar energy works. Other plants desalinate water by passing it through a membrane that removes the dissolved salts. Freshwater also can be obtained by melting frozen seawater. As seawater freezes, the ice crystals that form contain much less salt than the remaining water. The salty, unfrozen water then can be separated from the ice. The ice can be washed and melted to produce freshwater.

Figure 4 This desalination plant uses solar energy to produce freshwater.

section 1

review

Summary

Importance of Oceans

- Oceans are a source of food, energy, and minerals.
- Oceans allow for the efficient transportation of goods such as oil, coal, and grains.

Origin of Oceans

- Scientists hypothesize that about 4 billion years ago, water vapor from volcanic eruptions cooled and condensed into storm clouds. Oceans formed as water from torrential rains filled Earth's basins.

Composition of Oceans

- Ocean water contains dissolved gases and salts.
- Oceans are considered to be in a steady state.

Self Check

1. **Describe** five ways Earth's oceans affect your life.
2. **Explain** the relationship between volcanic activity and the origin of Earth's oceans.
3. **Identify** the components of seawater. How do dissolved salts enter oceans? How does oxygen enter oceans?
4. **Think Critically** Organisms in the oceans are important sources of food and medicine. What steps can humans take to ensure that these resources are available for future generations?

Applying Math

5. **Use Proportions** If the average salinity of seawater is 35 parts per thousand, how many grams of dissolved salts will 500 g of seawater contain?

Ocean Currents

as you read

What You'll Learn

- **Explain** how winds and the Coriolis effect influence surface currents.
- **Discuss** the temperatures of coastal waters.
- **Describe** density currents.

Why It's Important

Ocean currents and the atmosphere transfer heat that affects the climate you live in.

Review Vocabulary

circulation: a water current flow occurring in an area in a closed, circular pattern

New Vocabulary

- surface current
- Coriolis effect
- upwelling
- density current

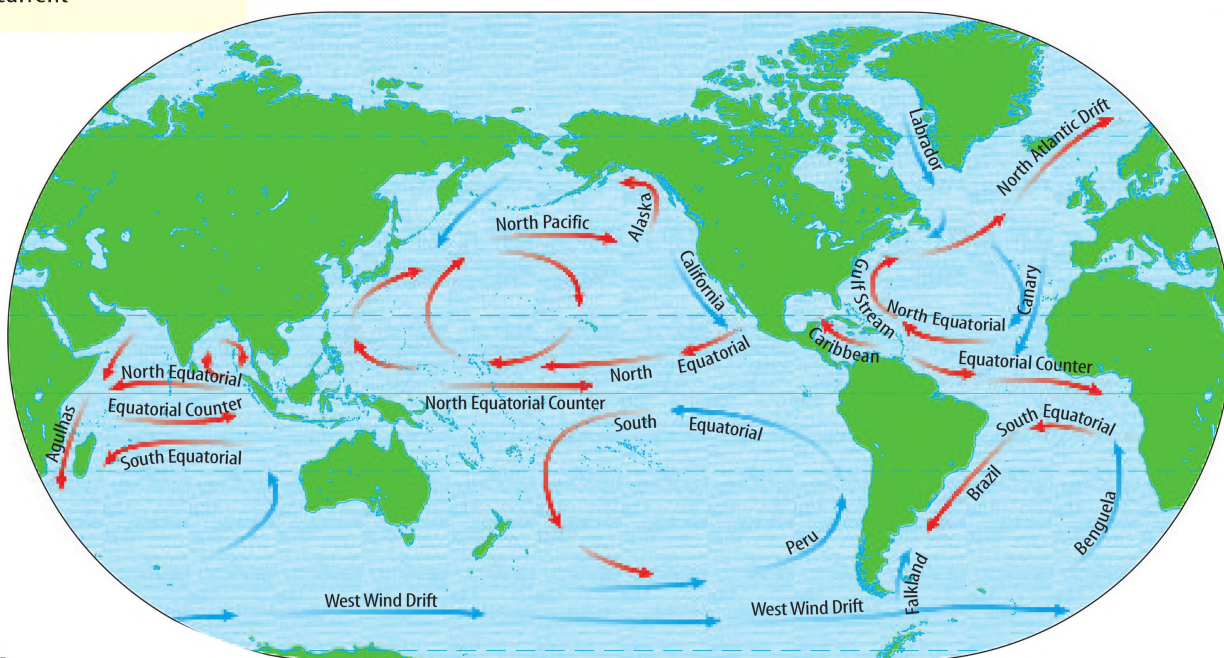
Surface Currents

When you stir chocolate into a glass of milk, do you notice the milk swirling around in the glass in a circle? If so, you've observed something similar to an ocean current. Ocean currents are a mass movement, or flow, of ocean water. An ocean current is like a river within the ocean.

Surface currents move water horizontally—parallel to Earth's surface. These currents are powered by wind. The wind forces the ocean to move in huge, circular patterns. **Figure 5** shows these major surface currents. Notice that some currents are shown with red arrows and some are shown with blue arrows. Red arrows indicate warm currents. Blue arrows indicate cold currents. The currents on the ocean's surface are related to the general circulation of winds on Earth.

Surface currents move only the upper few hundred meters of seawater. Some seeds and plants are carried between continents by surface currents. Sailors take advantage of these currents along with winds to sail more efficiently from place to place.

Figure 5 These are the major surface currents of Earth's oceans.



How Surface Currents Form

Surface ocean currents and surface winds are affected by the Coriolis (kor ee OH lus) effect. The **Coriolis effect** is the shifting of winds and surface currents from their expected paths that is caused by Earth's rotation. Imagine that you try to draw a line straight out from the center of a disk to the edge of the disk. You probably could do that with no problem. But what would happen if the disk were slowly spinning like the one in

Figure 6? As the student tried to draw a straight line, the disk rotated and, as shown in **Figure 6**, the line curved.

A similar thing happens to wind and surface currents. Because Earth rotates toward the east, winds appear to curve to the right in the northern hemisphere and to the left in the southern hemisphere. These surface winds can cause water to pile up in certain parts of the ocean. When gravity pulls water off the pile, the Coriolis effect turns the water. This causes surface water in the oceans to spiral around the piles of water. The Coriolis effect causes currents north of the equator to turn to the right. Currents south of the equator are turned to the left. Look again at the map of surface currents in **Figure 5** to see the results of the Coriolis effect.

The Gulf Stream Although satellites provide new information about ocean movements, much of what is known about surface currents comes from records that were kept by sailors of the nineteenth century. Sailors always have used surface currents to help them travel quickly. Sailing ships depend on some surface currents to carry them to the west and others to carry them east. During the American colonial era, ships floated on the 100-km-wide Gulf Stream current to go quickly from North America to England. Find the Gulf Stream current in the Atlantic Ocean on the map in **Figure 5**.

In the late 1700s, Deputy Postmaster General Benjamin Franklin received complaints about why it took longer to receive a letter from England than it did to send one there. Upon investigation, Franklin found that a Nantucket whaling captain's map furnished the answer. Going against the Gulf Stream delayed ships sailing west from England by up to 110 km per day.

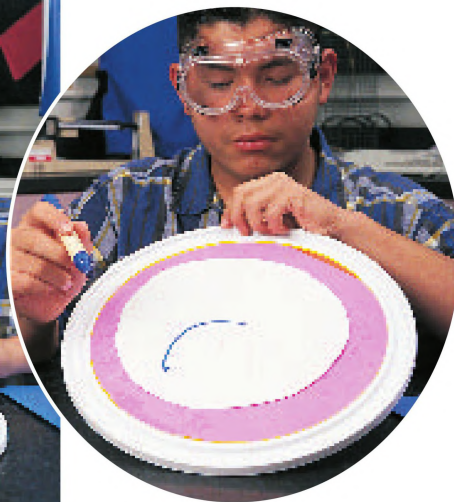


Figure 6 The student draws a line straight out from the center while spinning the disk. Because the disk was spinning, the line is curved.

Describe how the Coriolis effect influences surface currents in the southern hemisphere.



Topic: Ocean Currents

Visit bookh.msscience.com for Web links to information about ocean currents.

Activity Choose an area of the world's oceans and make a map of the currents in that area. In which direction do they travel? What are the currents named?



Figure 7 Bottles and other floating objects that enter the ocean are used to gain information about surface currents.

Tracking Surface Currents Items that wash up on beaches, such as the bottle shown in **Figure 7**, provide information about ocean currents. Drift bottles containing messages and numbered cards are released from a variety of coastal locations. The bottles are carried by surface currents and might end up on a beach. The person who finds a bottle writes down the date and the location where the bottle was found. Then the card is sent back to the institution that launched the bottle. By doing this, valuable information is provided about the current that carried the bottle.

Warm and Cold Surface Currents Notice in **Figure 5** that currents on the west coasts of continents begin near the poles where the water is colder. The California Current that flows along the west coast of the United States is a cold surface current. East-coast currents originate near the equator where the water is warmer. Warm surface currents, such as the Gulf Stream, distribute heat from equatorial regions to other areas of Earth. **Figure 8** shows the warm water of the Gulf Stream in red and orange. Cooler water appears in blue and green.

As warm water flows away from the equator, heat is released to the atmosphere. The atmosphere is warmed. This transfer of heat influences climate.

Figure 8 Data about ocean temperature collected by a satellite were used to make this surface-temperature image of the Atlantic Ocean.

Infer Where does the Gulf Stream originate?

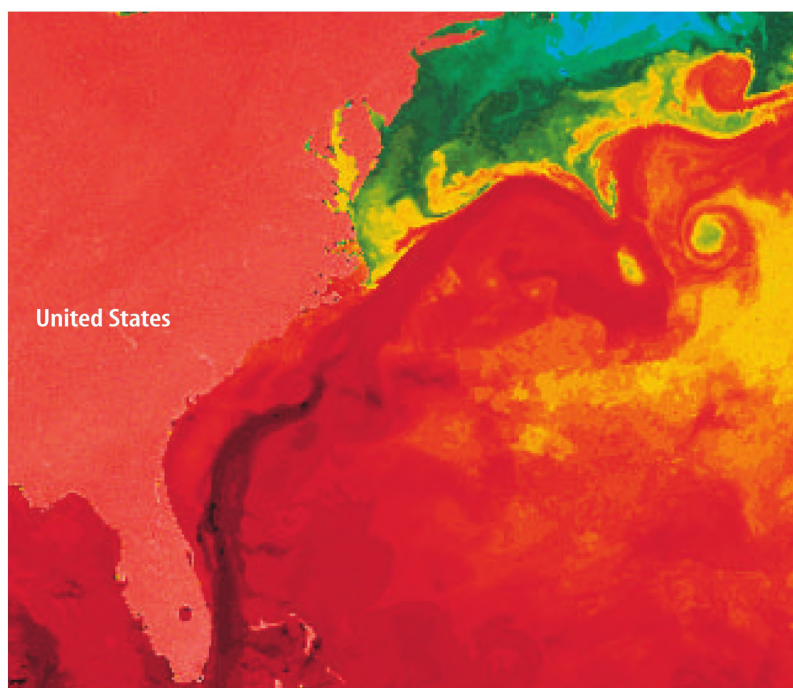
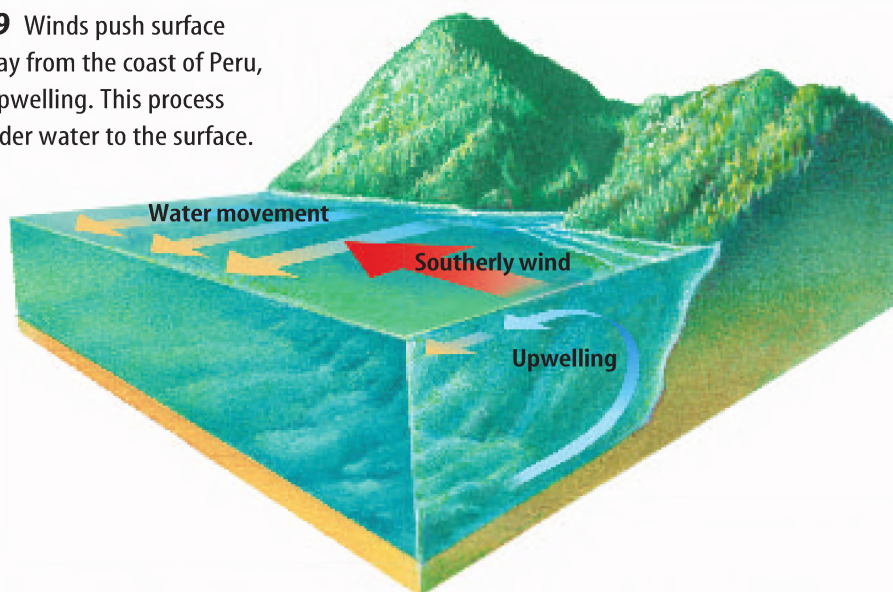


Figure 9 Winds push surface water away from the coast of Peru, causing upwelling. This process brings colder water to the surface.



Upwelling

Upwelling is a vertical circulation in the ocean that brings deep, cold water to the ocean surface. Along some coasts of continents, wind blowing parallel to the coast carries water away from the land because of the Coriolis effect, as shown in **Figure 9**. Cold, deep ocean water rises to the surface and replaces water that has moved away from shore. This water contains high concentrations of nutrients from organisms that died, sank to the bottom, and decayed. Nutrients promote primary production and plankton growth, which attracts fish. Areas of upwelling occur along the coasts of Oregon, Washington, and Peru and create important fishing grounds.

Density Currents

Deep in the ocean, waters circulate not because of wind but because of density differences. A **density current** forms when a mass of seawater becomes more dense than the surrounding water. Gravity causes more dense seawater to sink beneath less dense seawater. This deep, dense water then slowly spreads to the rest of the ocean.

The density of seawater increases if salinity increases, as you can see if you perform the MiniLAB on this page. It also increases when temperature decreases. In the Launch Lab at the beginning of the chapter, the cold water was more dense than the warm water in the beaker. The cold water sank to the bottom. This created a density current that moved the food coloring.

Changes in temperature and salinity work together to create density currents. Density currents circulate ocean water slowly.

Mini LAB

Modeling a Density Current

Procedure

1. Fill a **clear-plastic storage box** (shoe-box size) with room-temperature **water**.
2. Mix several spoonfuls of **table salt** into a **glass of water** at room temperature.
3. Add a few drops of **food coloring** to the saltwater solution. Pour the solution slowly into the freshwater in the large container.

Analysis

1. Describe what happened when you added salt water to freshwater.
2. How does this lab model density currents?





INTEGRATE Career

Oceanographer An oceanographer studies the composition of ocean water; ocean currents, waves, and tides; and marine life. Dr. Robert D. Ballard is an oceanographer who revolutionized deep-sea archaeology. He developed several high-tech vessels that can explore ocean bottoms previously out of reach.

Deep Waters An important density current begins in Antarctica where the most dense ocean water forms during the winter. As ice forms, seawater freezes, but the salt is left behind in the unfrozen water. This extra salt increases the salinity and, therefore, the density of the ocean water until it is very dense. This dense water sinks and slowly spreads along the ocean bottom toward the equator, forming a density current. In the Pacific Ocean, this water could take 1,000 years to reach the equator.

In the North Atlantic Ocean, cold, dense water forms around Norway, Greenland, and Labrador. These waters sink, forming North Atlantic Deep Water. In about the northern one-third to one-half of the Atlantic Ocean, North Atlantic Deep Water forms the bottom layer of ocean water. In the southern part of the Atlantic Ocean, it flows at depths of about 3,000 m, just above the denser water formed near Antarctica. The dense waters circulate more quickly in the Atlantic Ocean than in the Pacific Ocean. In the Atlantic, a density current could circulate in 275 years.

Applying Math

Calculate Density

DENSITY OF SALT WATER You have an aquarium full of freshwater in which you have dissolved salt. If the mass of the salt water is 123,000 g and its volume is 120,000 cm³, what is the density of the salt water?

Solution

- This is what you know:*
 - volume: $v = 120,000 \text{ cm}^3$
 - mass of salt water: $m = 123,000 \text{ g}$
- This is what you need to find:* density of water: d
- This is the equation you need to use:* $d = m/v$
- Substitute the known values:* $d = 123,000\text{g} / 120,000\text{cm}^3 = 1.025 \text{ g/cm}^3$
- Check your answer:* Multiply your answer by the volume. Do you calculate the same mass of salt water that was given?

Practice Problems

- Calculate the density of 78,000 cm³ of salt water with a mass of 79,000 g.
- If a sample of ocean water has a density of 1.03 g/cm³ and a mass of 50,000 g, what is the volume of the water?



For more practice, visit
[bookh.msscience.com/
math_practice](http://bookh.msscience.com/math_practice)

Intermediate Waters

A density current also occurs in the Mediterranean Sea, a nearly enclosed body of water. The warm temperatures and dry air in the region cause large amounts of water to evaporate from the surface of the sea. This evaporation increases the salinity and density of the water. This dense water from the Mediterranean flows through the narrow Straits of Gibraltar into the Atlantic Ocean at a depth of about 320 m. When it reaches the Atlantic, it flows to depths of 1,000 m to 2,000 m because it is more dense than the water in the upper parts of the North Atlantic Ocean. However, the water from the Mediterranean is less dense than the very cold, salty water flowing from the North Atlantic Ocean around Greenland, Norway, and Labrador. Therefore, as shown in **Figure 10**, the Mediterranean water forms a middle layer of water—the Mediterranean Intermediate Water.

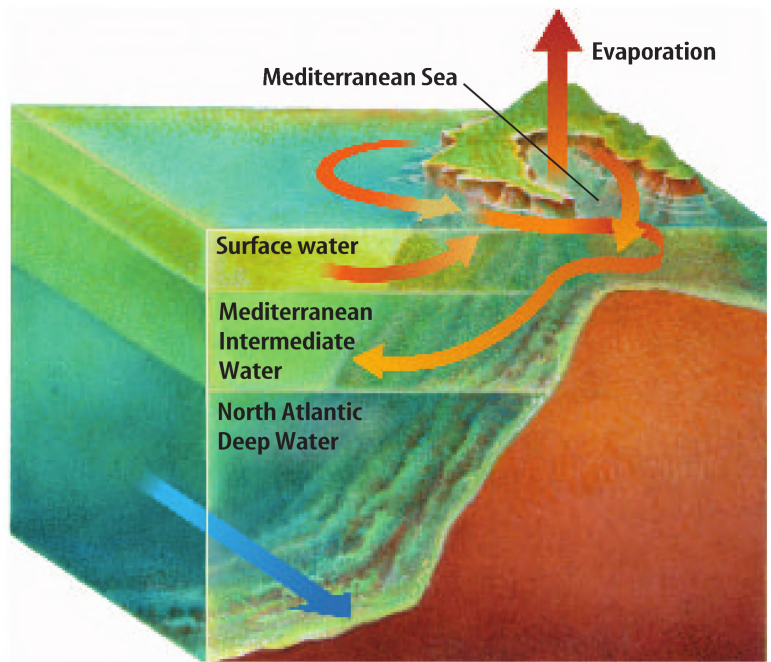


Figure 10 Dense layers of North Atlantic Deep Water form in the Greenland, Labrador, and Norwegian Seas. This water flows southward along the North Atlantic seafloor. Less dense water from the Mediterranean Sea forms Mediterranean Intermediate Water.



Reading Check

What causes the Mediterranean Intermediate Water to form?

SECTION 2 REVIEW

Summary

Surface Currents

- Surface currents are wind-powered ocean currents that move water horizontally.

Upwelling

- Upwelling is vertical circulation that brings deep, cold water to the ocean surface.

Density Currents

- Gravity acts on masses of seawater that are denser than surrounding water, causing the denser water to sink.
- Density currents slowly circulate deep ocean water.

Self Check

1. **Explain** how winds and the Coriolis effect influence surface currents.
2. **Summarize** why upwelling is important.
3. **Describe** how density currents circulate water.
4. **Think Critically** The latitudes of San Diego, California, and Charleston, South Carolina, are exactly the same. However, the average yearly water temperature in the ocean off Charleston is much higher than the water temperature off San Diego. Explain why.

Applying Skills

5. **Predict** what will happen to a layer of freshwater as it flows into the ocean. Explain your prediction.

Ocean Waves and Tides

Jack Fields/Photo Researchers

as you read

What You'll Learn

- **Describe** wave formation.
- **Distinguish** between the movement of water particles in a wave and the movement of the wave.
- **Explain** how ocean tides form.

Why It's Important

Waves and tides affect life and property in coastal areas.

 **Review Vocabulary**
energy: the ability to cause change

New Vocabulary

- | | |
|----------|---------------|
| ● wave | ● breaker |
| ● crest | ● tide |
| ● trough | ● tidal range |

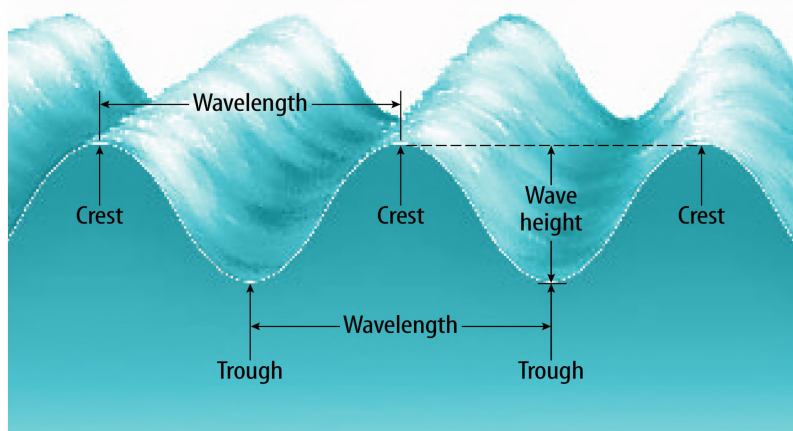
Figure 11 Ocean waves carry energy through seawater.

Waves

If you've been to the seashore or seen a beach on TV, you've watched waves roll in. There is something hypnotic about ocean waves. They keep coming and coming, one after another. But what is an ocean wave? A **wave** is a rhythmic movement that carries energy through matter or space. In the ocean, waves like those in **Figure 11** move through seawater.

Describing Waves Several terms are used to describe waves, as shown in **Figure 11**. Notice that waves look like hills and valleys. The **crest** is the highest point of the wave. The **trough** (TRAUF) is the lowest point of the wave. Wavelength is the horizontal distance between the crests or between the troughs of two adjacent waves. Wave height is the vertical distance between crest and trough.

Half the distance of the wave height is called the amplitude (AM pluh tewd) of the wave. The amplitude squared is proportional to the amount of energy the wave carries. For example, a wave with twice the amplitude of the wave in **Figure 11** carries four times ($2 \times 2 = 4$) the energy. On a calm day, the amplitude of ocean waves is small. But during a storm, wave amplitude increases and the waves carry a lot more energy. Large waves can damage ships and coastal property.



The crest, trough, wavelength, and wave height describe a wave. **Identify** the crests and troughs in the photo on the left.



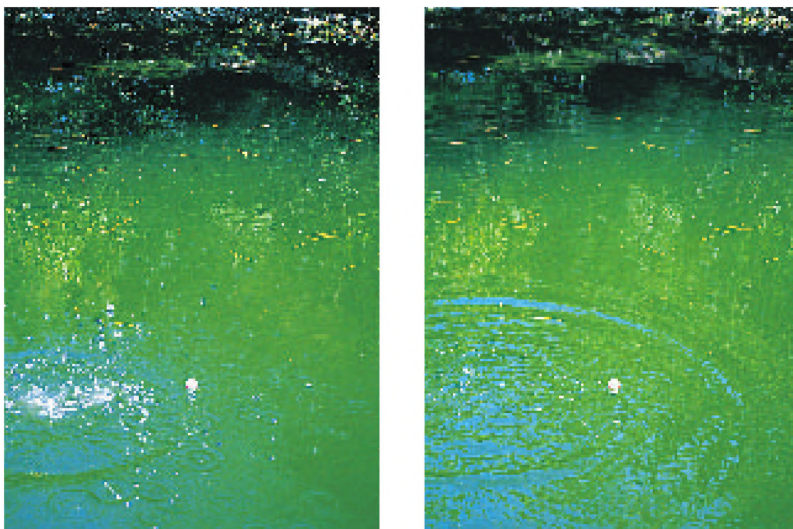


Figure 12 As a wave passes, only energy moves forward. The water particles and the bobber nearly return to their original positions after the wave has passed. **Describe** what happens to water movement below a depth equal to about half the wavelength.

Wave Movement You might have noticed that if you throw a pebble into a pond, a circular wave moves outward from where the pebble entered the water, as shown in **Figure 12**. A bobber on a fishing line floating in the water will bob up and down as the wave passes, but it will not move outward with the wave. Notice that the bobber returns to near its original position.

When you watch an ocean wave, it looks as though the water is moving forward. But unless the wave is breaking onto shore, the water does not move forward. Each molecule of water returns to near its original position after the wave passes. **Figure 13** shows this. Water molecules in a wave move around in circles. Only the energy moves forward while the water molecules remain in about the same place. Below a depth equal to about half the wavelength, water movement stops. Below that depth, water is not affected by waves. Submarines that travel below this level usually are not affected by surface storms.

Breakers A wave changes shape in the shallow area near shore. Near the shoreline, friction with the ocean bottom slows water at the bottom of the wave. As the wave slows, its crest and trough come closer together. The wave height increases. The top of a wave, not slowed by friction, moves faster than the bottom. Eventually, the top of the wave outruns the bottom and it collapses. The wave crest falls as water tumbles over on itself. The wave breaks onto the shore. **Figure 13** also shows this process. This collapsing wave is a **breaker**. It is the collapse of this wave that propels a surfer and surfboard onto shore. After a wave breaks onto shore, gravity pulls the water back into the sea.



Reading Check

What causes an ocean wave to slow down?

Mini LAB

Modeling Water Particle Movement

Procedure

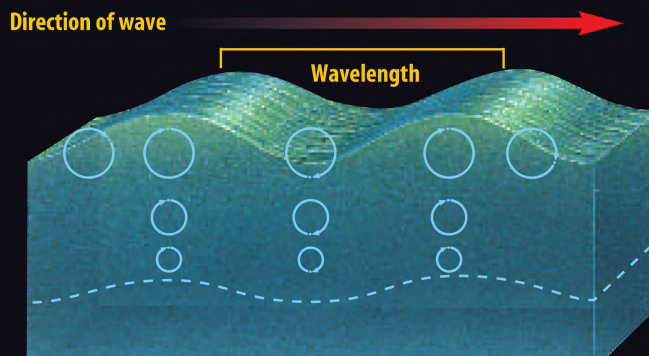
1. Put a piece of **tape** on the outside bottom of a **rectangular, clear-plastic storage box**. Fill the box with **water**.
2. Float a **cork** in the container above the piece of tape.
3. Use a **spoon** to make gentle waves in the container.
4. Observe the movement of the waves and the cork.

Analysis

1. Describe the movement of the waves and the motion of the cork.
2. Compare the movement of the cork in the water with the movement of water molecules in a wave.

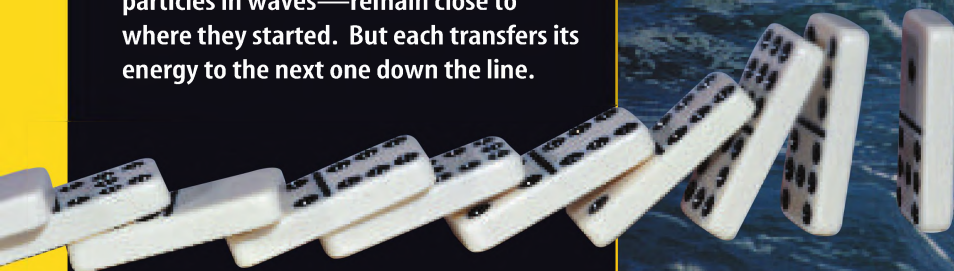
Figure 13

As ocean waves move toward the shore, they seem to be traveling in from a great distance, hurrying toward land. Actually, the water in waves moves relatively little, as shown here. It's the energy in the waves that moves across the ocean surface. Eventually that energy is transferred—in a crash of foam and spray—to the land.



A Particles of water move around in circles rather than forward. Near the water's surface, the circles are relatively large. Below the surface, the circles become progressively smaller. Little water movement occurs below a depth equal to about one-half of a wave's length.

B The energy in waves, however, does move forward. One way to visualize this energy movement is to imagine a line of dominoes. Knock over the first domino, and the others fall in sequence. As they fall, individual dominoes—like water particles in waves—remain close to where they started. But each transfers its energy to the next one down the line.



C As waves approach shore, wavelength decreases and wave height increases. This causes breakers to form. Where ocean floor rises steeply to beach, incoming waves break quickly at a great height, forming huge arching waves.

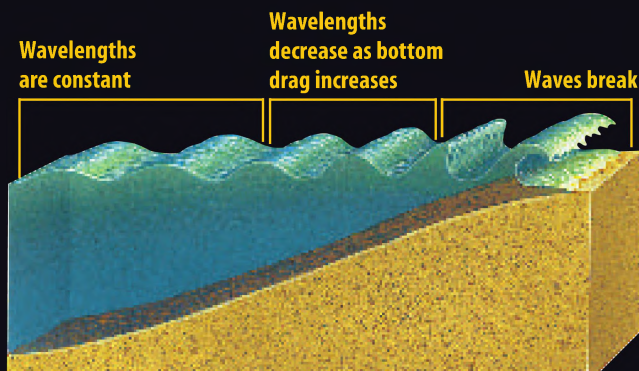




Figure 14 Waves formed by storm winds can reach heights of 20 m to 30 m.

List the three factors that affect wave height.

How Water Waves Form On a windy day, waves form on a lake or ocean. When wind blows across a body of water, wind energy is transferred to the water. If the wind speed is great enough, the water begins to pile up, forming a wave. As the wind continues to blow, the wave increases in height. Some waves reach tremendous heights, as shown in **Figure 14**. Storm winds have been known to produce waves more than 30 m high—taller than a six-story building.

The height of waves depends on the speed of the wind, the distance over which the wind blows, and the length of time the wind blows. When the wind stops blowing, waves stop forming. But once set in motion, waves continue moving for long distances, even if the wind stops. The waves you see lapping at a beach could have formed halfway around the world.

✓ Reading Check What factors affect the height of waves?

Tides

When you go to a beach, you probably notice the level of the sea rise and fall during the day. This rise and fall in sea level is called a **tide**. A tide is caused by a giant wave produced by the gravitational pull of the Sun and the Moon. This wave has a wave height of only 1 m or 2 m, but it has a wavelength that is thousands of kilometers long. As the crest of this wave approaches the shore, sea level appears to rise. This rise in sea level is called high tide. Later, as the trough of the wave approaches, sea level appears to drop. This drop in sea level is referred to as low tide.



Topic: Tides

Visit bookh.msscience.com for Web links to information about tides.

Activity There are three types of tides: diurnal, semidiurnal, and mixed. Define each type and give an example of where each type occurs.

Figure 15 A large difference between high tide and low tide can be seen at Mont-Saint-Michel off the northwestern coast of France.



Mont-Saint-Michel lies about 1.6 km offshore and is connected to the mainland at low tide.



Incoming tides move very quickly, making Mont-Saint-Michel an island at high tide.

Figure 16 The Bay of Fundy has the greatest tidal range in the world.

Infer Was this picture taken at high tide or low tide?



Tidal Range As Earth rotates, different locations on Earth's surface pass through the high and low positions. Many coastal locations, such as the Atlantic and Pacific coasts of the United States, experience two high tides and two low tides each day. One low-tide/high-tide cycle takes 12 h, 25 min. A daily cycle of two high tides and two low tides takes 24 h, 50 min—slightly more than a day. But because ocean basins vary in size and shape, some coastal locations, such as many along the Gulf of Mexico, have only one high and one low tide each day. The **tidal range** is the difference between the level of the ocean at high tide and low tide. Notice the tidal range in the photos in **Figure 15**.

Extreme Tidal Ranges The shape of the seacoast and the shape of the ocean floor affect the ranges of tides. Along a smooth, wide beach, the incoming water can spread over a large area. There the water level might rise only a few centimeters at high tide. In a narrow gulf or bay, however, the water might rise many meters at high tide.

Most shorelines have tidal ranges between 1 m and 2 m. Some places, such as those on the Mediterranean Sea, have tidal ranges of only about 30 cm. Other places have large tidal ranges. Mont-Saint-Michel, shown in **Figure 15**, lies in the Gulf of Saint-Malo off the northwestern coast of France. There the tidal range reaches about 13.5 m.

The dock shown in **Figure 16** is in Digby, Nova Scotia in the Bay of Fundy. This bay is extremely narrow, which contributes to large tidal ranges. The difference between water levels at high tide and low tide can be as much as 15 m.

Tidal Bores In some areas when a rising tide enters a shallow, narrow river from a wide area of the sea, a wave called a tidal bore forms. A tidal bore can have a breaking crest or it can be a smooth wave. Tidal bores tend to be found in places with large tidal ranges. The Amazon River in Brazil, the Tsientang River in China, and rivers that empty into the Bay of Fundy in Nova Scotia have tidal bores.

When a tidal bore enters a river, it causes water to reverse its flow. In the Amazon River, the tidal bore rushes 650 km upstream at speeds of 65 km/h, causing a wave more than 5 m in height. Four rivers that empty into the Bay of Fundy have tidal bores. In those rivers, bore rafting is a popular sport.

The Gravitational Effect of the Moon For the most part, tides are caused by the interaction of gravity in the Earth-Moon system. The Moon's gravity exerts a strong pull on Earth. Earth and the water in Earth's oceans respond to this pull. The water bulges outward as Earth and the Moon revolve around a common center of mass. These events are explained in **Figure 17**.

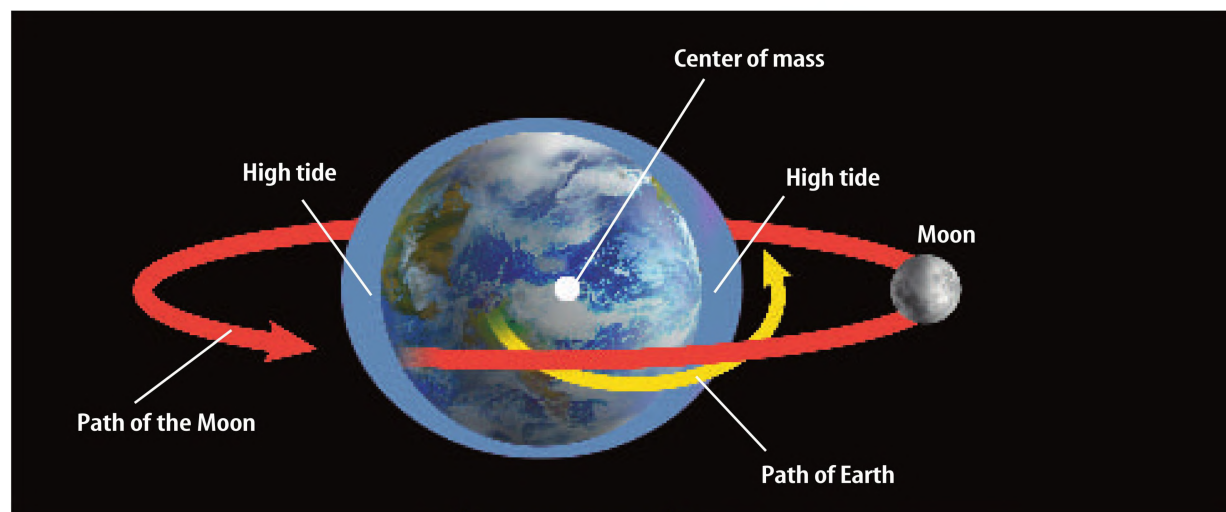
Two bulges of water form, one on the side of Earth closest to the Moon and one on the opposite side of Earth. The bulge on the side of Earth closest to the Moon is caused by the gravitational attraction of the Moon on Earth. The force of gravity here is greater than another, opposing force generated by the motion of Earth and the Moon. As a result, surface water is pulled in the direction of the Moon. The bulge on the opposite side of Earth is caused by the same opposing force that, here, is greater than the force of gravity. The imbalance in forces results in surface water being pulled away from the Moon. The ocean bulges are the high tides, and the areas of Earth's oceans that are not toward or away from the Moon are the low tides. As Earth rotates, different locations on its surface pass through high and low tide.

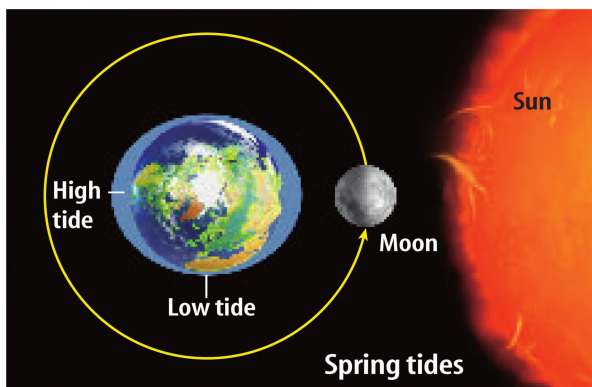


Life in the Tidal Zone

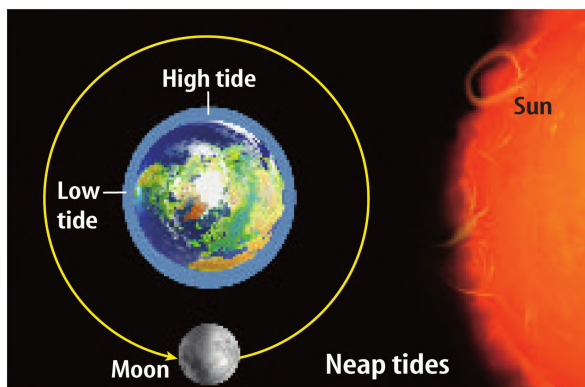
Limpets are sea snails that live on rocky shores. When the tide comes in, they glide over the rocks to graze on seaweed. When the tide goes out, they use strong muscles to pull their shells tight against the rocks. Find out how other organisms survive in the zone between high and low tides.

Figure 17 The Moon and Earth revolve around a common center of mass. Because the Moon's gravity pulls harder on parts of Earth closer to the Moon, a bulge of water forms on the side of Earth facing the Moon and the side of Earth opposite the Moon.





When the Sun, the Moon, and Earth are aligned, spring tides occur.



When the Sun, Earth, and the Moon form a right angle, neap tides occur.

Figure 18 The gravitational attraction of the Sun causes spring tides and neap tides.

The Gravitational Effect of the Sun The Sun also affects tides. The Sun can strengthen or weaken the Moon's effects. When the Moon, Earth, and the Sun are lined up together, the combined pull of the Sun and the Moon causes spring tides, shown in **Figure 18**. During spring tides, high tides are higher and low tides are lower than normal. The name *spring tide* has nothing to do with the season of spring. It comes from the German word *springen*, which means "to jump." When the Sun, Earth, and the Moon form a right angle, also shown in **Figure 18**, high tides are lower and low tides are higher than normal. These are called neap tides.

section 3 review

Summary

Waves

- A wave is a rhythmic movement that carries energy through matter or space.
- Water waves form as wind blows across a body of water.
- The height of a wave depends on the speed of the wind, the distance over which the wind blows, and the length of time the wind blows.

Tides

- Tides result from the gravitational pull of the Moon and the Sun on Earth.
- The shape of the seafloor and coast affect the range of tides in an area.
- Depending on the alignment of the Sun, the Moon, and Earth, spring tides or neap tides occur.

Self Check

1. **Identify** the parts of an ocean wave.
2. **Explain** how wind creates water waves.
3. **Describe** what causes high tides. Describe what causes spring tides.
4. **Summarize** the movement of water molecules in a wave and wave movement.
5. **Think Critically** At the ocean, you spot a wave about 200 m from shore. A few seconds later, the wave breaks on the beach. Explain why the water in the breaker is not the same water that was in the wave 200 m away.

Applying Skills

6. **Compare and contrast** the effects of the Sun and the Moon on Earth's tides.

Wave Properties

Ocean wave energy impacts coastlines around the world. Understanding wave properties helps scientists predict the movement and effects of waves.

Real-World Question

How are wave characteristics related to each other and to the energy source that causes waves?

Goals

- **Test** statements about wave properties.
- **Summarize** the relationship between wave properties and the energy source which causes waves.

Materials

rectangular, clear-plastic box
water
straw
metric ruler
3-cm chalk piece
3-cm ball aluminum foil

Safety Precautions



Procedure

1. Copy the data table above.
2. Fill the clear, plastic box with water to a depth of about 5.5 cm.
3. Test statement 1. Hold the straw just above the water. Blow through the straw. Record your observations in your data table.
4. Test statement 2. Hold the straw just above the water at one end of the box. Blow gently and continuously. Use the metric ruler to compare the wavelengths close to the straw and on the other end of the box. Record your observations.

Statement	Observations
1. Wind causes waves.	
2. Wavelength increases as the distance from the energy sources increases.	
3. The effects of wave motion are felt relatively close to the surface only.	Do not write in this book.
4. Wave energy is transferred through the water: the water itself does not move forward with the wave.	

5. Test statement 3. Sink the chalk piece in the middle of the box. Hold the straw just above the water at one end of the box. Blow gently and continuously. Observe any movement of the chalk and record your observations.
6. Test statement 4. Float the aluminum foil ball in the middle of the box. Hold the straw just above the water at one end of the box. Blow gently and continuously. Observe and record any movement of the aluminum foil ball.

Conclude and Apply

1. **Explain** how wind causes waves to form.
2. **Describe** Did your results support the statement *Wavelength increases as the distance from the energy source increases*? Why or why not?
3. **Explain** how you know the effects of wave motion are not felt below a certain depth.
4. **Infer** How did you prove that the water in a wave does not move forward with the wave? Did your observations surprise you? Why or why not?

Sink or Float?

Goals

■ **Design** an experiment to identify how increasing salinity affects the ability of a potato to float in water.

Possible Materials

small, uncooked potato
teaspoon
salt
large glass bowl
water
balance
large graduated cylinder
metric ruler

Safety Precautions



Real-World Question

As you know, ocean water contains many dissolved salts. How does this affect objects within the oceans? Why do certain objects float on top of the ocean's waves, while others sink directly to the bottom? Density is a measurement of mass per volume. You can use density to determine whether an object will float within a certain volume of water of a specific salinity. Based on what you know so far about salinity, why things float or sink, and the density of a potato, plus what it looks and feels like, formulate a hypothesis. Do you think the salinity of water has any effect on objects that are floating in water? What kind of effect? Will they float or sink? How would a dense object like a potato be different from a less dense object like a cork?



Test Your Hypothesis

Make a Plan

1. As a group, agree upon and write your hypothesis statement.
2. Devise a method to test how salinity affects whether a potato floats in water.
3. List the steps you need to take to test your hypothesis. Be specific, describing exactly what you will do at each step.
4. Read over your plan for testing your hypothesis.
5. How will you determine the densities of the potato and the different water samples? How will you measure the salinity of the water? How will you change the salinity of the water? Will you add teaspoons of salt one at a time?



Using Scientific Methods

6. How will you measure the ability of an object to float? Could you somehow measure the displacement of the water? Perhaps you could draw a line somewhere on your bowl and see how the position of the potato changes.
7. **Design** a data table where you can record your results. Include columns/rows for the salinity and float/sink measurements. What else should you include?

Follow Your Plan

1. Make sure your teacher approves your plan before you start.
2. Carry out the experiment.
3. While conducting the experiment, record your data and any observations that you or other group members make in your Science Journal.

Analyze Your Data

1. **Compare** how the potato floated in water with different salinities.
2. How does the ability of an object to float change with changing salinity?

Conclude and Apply

1. Did your experiment support the hypothesis you made?
2. A heavily loaded ship barely floats in the Gulf of Mexico. Based on what you learned, infer what might happen to the ship if it travels into the freshwater of the Mississippi River.

Communicating Your Data

Prepare a large copy of your data table and share the results of your experiment with members of your class. For more help, refer to the **Science Skill Handbook**.



“The Jungle of Ceylon”

from *Passions and Impressions*

by Pablo Neruda



The following passage is part of a travel chronicle describing the Chilean poet Pablo Neruda’s visit to the island of Ceylon, now called Sri Lanka, which is located southeast of India. The author considered himself so connected to Earth that he wrote in green ink.

Felicitous¹ shore! A coral reef stretches parallel to the beach; there the ocean interposes in its blues the perpetual white of a rippling ruff² of feathers and foam; the triangular red sails of sampans³; the unmarred line of the coast on which the straight trunks of the coconut palms rise like explosions, their brilliant green Spanish combs nearly touching the sky.

... In the deep jungle, there is a silence like that of libraries: abstract and humid.

1 Happy

2 round collar made of layers of lace

3 East Asian boats



Respond to the Reading

1. What were his impressions of the island on arrival?
2. What words does the author choose to describe waves?
3. **Linking Science and Writing** Write a weather report for fishers and others who work at sea.

Linking Science and Writing

Imagery Imagery is a series of words that evoke pictures to the reader. Poets use imagery to connect images to abstract concepts. The poet, here, wants to capture a particular feature of the reef and does so by describing it as a “ruff of feathers and foam,” invoking the image of a gentle place, without the author saying so. Where else in the poem does the poet use imagery to convey a mood or feeling?



Sri Lanka often is plagued by monsoons, which affect ocean conditions and local climate. Monsoons are seasonal reversals of the regional winds. During the wet season, moist winds blow in from the sea, causing storms and producing waves. During the dry season, winds blow from the land and sunny days are common.

Reviewing Main Ideas

Section 1 Ocean Water

1. Earth's ocean water might have originated from water vapor released from volcanoes. Over millions of years, the water condensed and rain fell, filling basins.
2. The oceans are a mixture of water, dissolved salts, and dissolved gases.
3. Ions are added to ocean water by rivers, volcanic eruptions, and the atmosphere. When seawater is evaporated, these ions combine to form salts.

Section 2 Ocean Currents

1. Wind causes surface currents. Surface currents are affected by the Coriolis effect.

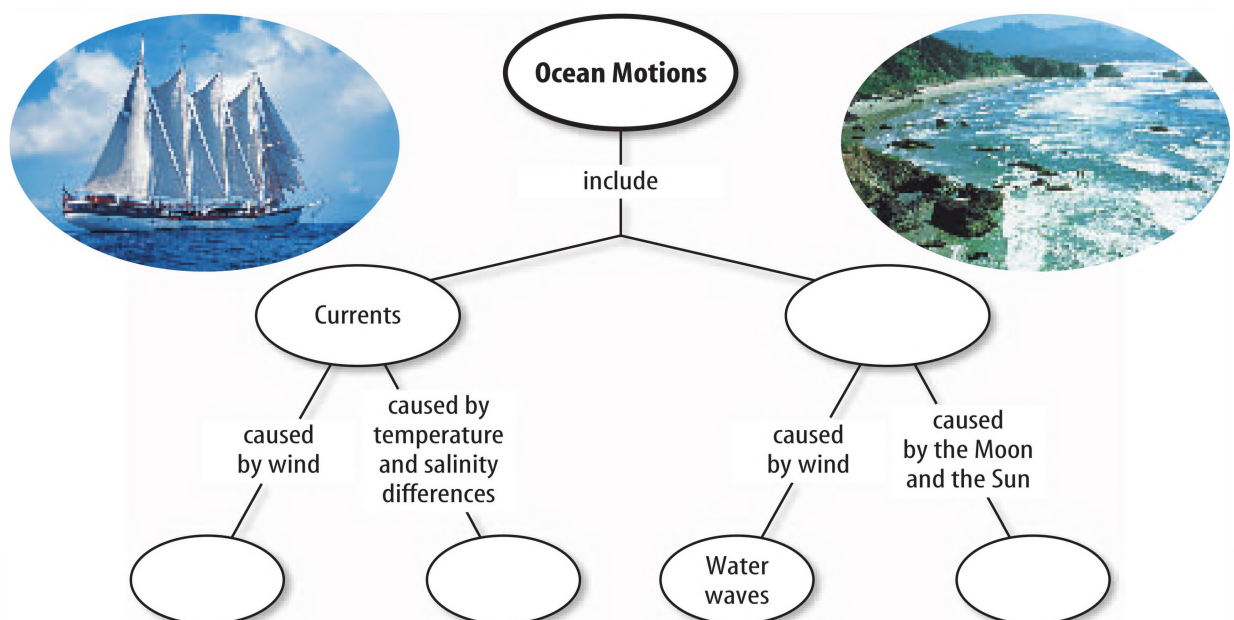
2. Cool currents off western coasts originate far from the equator. Warmer currents along eastern coasts begin near the equator.
3. Differences in temperature and salinity between water masses in the oceans set up circulation patterns called density currents.

Section 3 Ocean Waves and Tides

1. A wave is a rhythmic movement that carries energy.
2. In a wave, energy moves forward while water molecules move around in small circles.
3. Wind causes water to pile up and form waves. Tides are caused by gravitational forces.

Visualizing Main Ideas

Copy and complete the following concept map on ocean motions.



Using Vocabulary

basin p.101	surface current p.104
breaker p.111	tidal range p.114
Coriolis effect p.105	tide p.113
crest p.110	trough p.110
density current p.107	upwelling p.107
salinity p.102	wave p.110

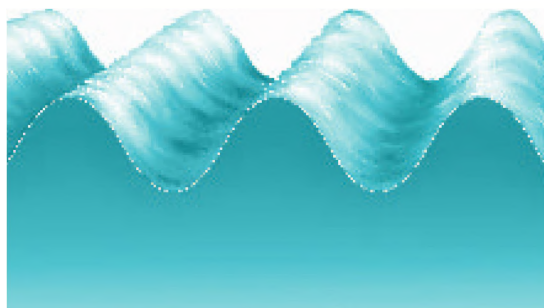
Fill in the blanks with the correct vocabulary word or words.

- The _____ of seawater has stayed about the same for hundreds of millions of years.
- An area of _____ is a good place to catch fish.
- A(n) _____ is created when a mass of more dense water sinks beneath less dense water.
- Along most ocean beaches, a rise and fall of the ocean related to gravitational pull, or a(n) _____, is easy to see.
- The difference between the level of the ocean at high tide and low tide is _____.

Checking Concepts

Choose the word or phrase that best answers the question.

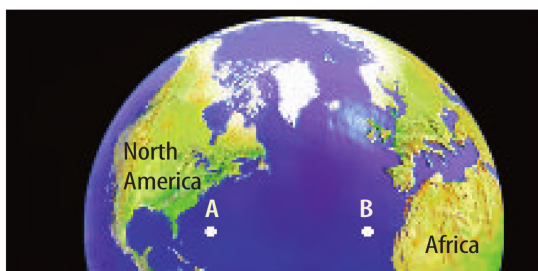
- Where might ocean water have originated?
A) salt marshes C) basins
B) volcanoes D) surface currents
- How does chloride enter the oceans?
A) volcanoes C) density currents
B) rivers D) groundwater
- What is the most common ion found in ocean water?
A) chloride C) boron
B) calcium D) sulfate
- What causes most surface currents?
A) density differences
B) the Gulf Stream
C) salinity
D) wind
- Use the illustration below to answer question 10.
- What is the highest point on a wave called?
A) wave height C) crest
B) trough D) wavelength
- In the ocean, what is the rhythmic movement that carries energy through seawater?
A) current C) crest
B) wave D) upwelling
- Which of the following causes the density of seawater to increase?
A) a decrease in temperature
B) a decrease in salinity
C) an increase in temperature
D) a decrease in pressure
- In which direction does the Coriolis effect cause currents in the northern hemisphere to turn?
A) east C) counterclockwise
B) south D) clockwise
- Tides are affected by the positions of which celestial bodies?
A) Earth and the Moon
B) Earth, the Moon, and the Sun
C) Venus, Earth, and Mars
D) the Sun, Earth, and Mars



Thinking Critically

- 15. Infer** If a sealed bottle is dropped into the ocean off the coast of California, where do you think it might wash up?
- 16. Compare and contrast** the density of seawater at the mouth of the Mississippi River and in the Mediterranean Sea.
- 17. Recognize Cause and Effect** What causes upwelling? What effect does it have? What can happen when upwelling stops?
- 18. Compare and contrast** ocean waves and ocean currents.

Use the figure below to answer question 19.



- 19. Predict** how drift bottles dropped into the ocean at points A and B will move. Explain.
- 20. Recognize Cause and Effect** In the Mediterranean Sea, a density current forms because of the high rate of evaporation of water from the surface. How can evaporation cause a density current?
- 21. Evaluate** One water mass has a temperature of 5°C and a salinity of 37 parts per thousand. Another water mass has a temperature of 10°C and a salinity of 35 parts per thousand. Which water mass will sit on top of the other? Why?
- 22. Infer** In some areas tidal energy is used as an alternative energy source. What are some advantages and disadvantages of doing this?

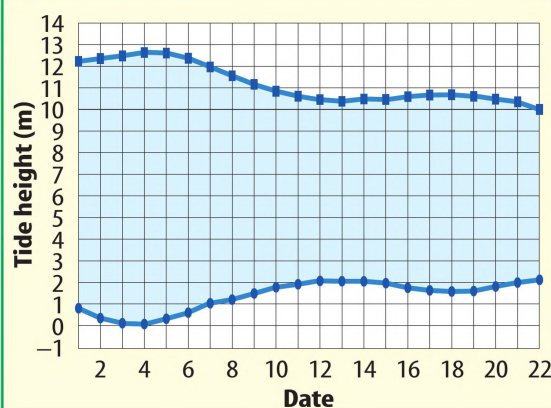
Performance Activities

- 23. Invention** Design a method for desalinating water that does not use solar energy. Draw it, and display it for your class.
- 24. Design and Perform an Experiment** Create an experiment to test the density of water at different temperatures.

Applying Math

- 25. Wave Speed** Wave speed of deep water waves is calculated using the formula $S = L/T$, where S represents wave speed, L represents the wavelength, and T represents the period of the wave. What is the speed of a wave if $L = 100$ m and $T = 11$ s?
- 26. Wave Steepness** The steepness of a wave is represented by the formula $\text{Steepness} = H/L$, where H = wave height and L = wavelength. When the steepness of a wave reaches $1/7$, the wave becomes unstable and breaks. If $L = 50$ m, at what height will the wave break?

Use the graph below to answer question 27.



- 27. Tides** The graph above shows the tidal ranges for each day. The maximum tidal range is called a spring tide. The minimum tidal range is referred to as a neap tide. Calculate the tidal range for the spring tide and the neap tide. On which date does each occur?

Part 1 Multiple Choice

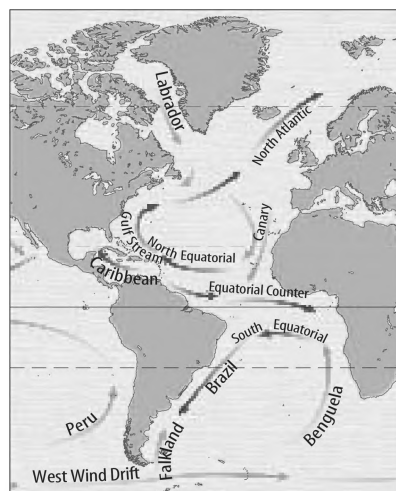
Record your answers on the answer sheet provided by your teacher or on a sheet of paper.

Use the table below to answer question 1.

Ions in Seawater	
Ion	Percentage
Chloride	55.0
Sodium	30.6
Sulfate	7.7
Magnesium	3.7
Calcium	1.2
Potassium	1.1
Other	0.7

- Which ion makes up 7.7 percent of the ions in seawater?
 - calcium
 - sulfate
 - chloride
 - sodium
- Which of the following dissolved gases enters ocean water both from the atmosphere and from organisms that photosynthesize?
 - carbon
 - nitrogen
 - hydrogen
 - oxygen
- Which of the following terms is used to describe the amount of dissolved salts in seawater?
 - density
 - temperature
 - salinity
 - buoyancy
- Which of the following describes upwelling?
 - horizontal ocean circulation that brings deep, cold water to the surface
 - vertical ocean circulation that brings deep, warm water to the surface
 - horizontal ocean circulation that brings deep, warm water to the surface
 - vertical ocean circulation that brings deep, cold water to the surface
- What is the lowest point on a wave called?
 - trough
 - wavelength
 - crest
 - wave height

Use the illustration below to answer questions 6 and 7.



- What is the direction of ocean currents in the southern hemisphere?
 - counterclockwise
 - north to south only
 - clockwise
 - east to west only
- Which of the following is a reasonable conclusion based on the information in the figure?
 - The oceans' currents only flow in one direction.
 - The oceans' waters are constantly in motion.
 - The Gulf Stream flows east to west.
 - The Atlantic Ocean is deep.
- What affects surface currents?
 - crests
 - upwellings
 - the Coriolis effect
 - tides

Part 2 Short Response/Grid In

Record your answers on the answer sheet provided by your teacher or on a sheet of paper.

9. Explain the difference between surface currents and density currents in the ocean.

Use the illustration below to answer questions 10 and 11.



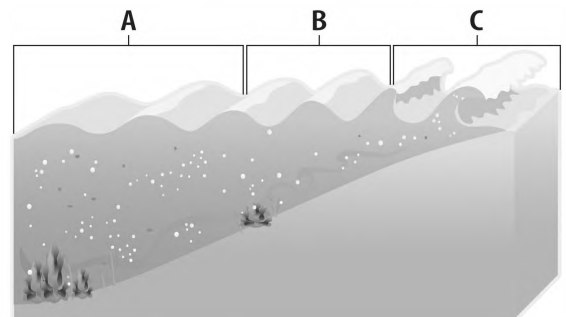
10. Which type of tide occurs when the Sun, the Moon, and Earth are aligned?
11. Describe how the Sun, the Moon, and Earth are positioned relative to each other during a neap tide.
12. What is tidal range?
13. On June 17th 2003, in Santa Barbara, California, the morning low tide was measured at -0.365 m. High tide was measured at 1.12 m. Calculate the tidal range between these tides.
14. Explain what the term *steady state* means in relation to ocean salinity. What processes keep ocean salinity in a steady state?
15. Explain how the ocean can influence the climate of an area.

Part 3 Open Ended

Record your answers on a sheet of paper.

16. Draw a diagram that explains the process of upwelling. An area of upwelling exists off of the western coast of South America. During El Niño events, upwelling does not occur and surface water is warm and nutrient-poor. What effect could this change have on the marine organisms in this area?

Use the illustration below to answer question 17.



17. Describe the changes that occur as a wave approaches shore. Explain how wavelength is affected at each stage—A, B, and C—on the diagram.
18. What is the Coriolis effect? Explain how it affects ocean surface currents.
19. Compare and contrast the formation of North Atlantic Deep Water and Mediterranean Intermediate Water.

Test-Taking Tip

Answer All Parts Make sure each part of the question is answered when listing discussion points. For example, if the question asks you to compare and contrast, make sure you list both similarities and differences.

Question 19 Be sure to list the similarities and differences between the formation of the two masses of water.

Oceanography

chapter preview

sections

1 The Seafloor

Lab Mapping the Ocean Floor

2 Life in the Ocean

3 Ocean Pollution

Lab Resources from the Oceans



Virtual Lab What are some characteristics of the ocean and the ocean floor?

Marine Life

This inch-long jelly drifts with ocean currents and uses stinging tentacles to capture small prey. Through a chemical process called bioluminescence it is able to produce light and glow in the dark.

Science Journal Describe characteristics of three marine organisms you are familiar with.

Start-Up Activities



How deep is the ocean?

Sonar is used to measure ocean depth. You will model sonar in this lab.   

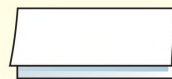


1. With one person holding each end, stretch a spring until it is taut. Measure the distance between the ends.
2. Pinch two coils together. When the spring is steady, release the coils to create a wave.
3. Record the time it takes the wave to travel back and forth five times. Divide this number by five to calculate the time of one round trip.
4. Calculate the speed of the wave by multiplying the distance by two and dividing this number by the time.
5. Move closer to your partner. Take in coils to keep the spring at the same tension. Repeat steps 2 and 3.
6. Calculate the new distance by multiplying the new time by the speed from step 4, and then dividing this number by two.
7. **Think Critically** Write a paragraph in your Science Journal that describes how this lab models sonar.

FOLDABLES™ Study Organizer

The Seafloor Make the following Foldable to help you identify the features of the seafloor.

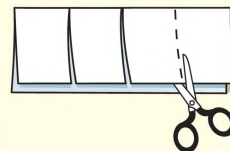
- STEP 1** **Fold** a sheet of paper in half lengthwise. Make the back edge about 1.25 cm longer than the front edge.



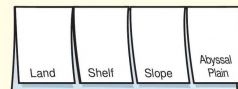
- STEP 2** **Fold** in half, then fold in half again to make three folds.



- STEP 3** **Unfold and cut** only the top layer along the three folds to make four tabs.



- STEP 4** **Label** the tabs as shown.



Find Main Ideas As you read the chapter, draw seafloor features on the front of the tabs and write information about them under the tabs.



Preview this chapter's content
and activities at
bookh.msscience.com

The Seafloor

as you read

What You'll Learn

- **Differentiate** between a continental shelf and a continental slope.
- **Describe** a mid-ocean ridge, an abyssal plain, and an ocean trench.
- **Identify** the mineral resources found on the continental shelf and in the deep ocean.

Why It's Important

Oceans cover nearly three fourths of Earth's surface.

Review Vocabulary

magma: hot, melted rock beneath Earth's surface

New Vocabulary

- continental shelf
- continental slope
- abyssal plain
- mid-ocean ridge
- trench

Figure 1 This map shows features of the ocean basins. Locate a trench and a mid-ocean ridge.

The Ocean Basins

Imagine yourself driving a deep-sea submersible along the ocean floor. Surrounded by cold, black water, the lights of your vessel reflect off of what looks like a mountain range ahead. As you continue, you find a huge opening in the seafloor—so deep you can't even see the bottom. What other ocean floor features can you find in **Figure 1**?

Ocean basins, which are low areas of Earth that are filled with water, have many different features. Beginning at the ocean shoreline is the continental shelf. The **continental shelf** is the gradually sloping end of a continent that extends under the ocean. On some coasts, the continental shelf extends a long distance. For instance, on North America's Atlantic and Gulf coasts, it extends 100 km to 350 km into the sea. On the Pacific Coast, where the coastal range mountains are close to the shore, the shelf is only 10 km to 30 km wide. The ocean covering the continental shelf can be as deep as 350 m.



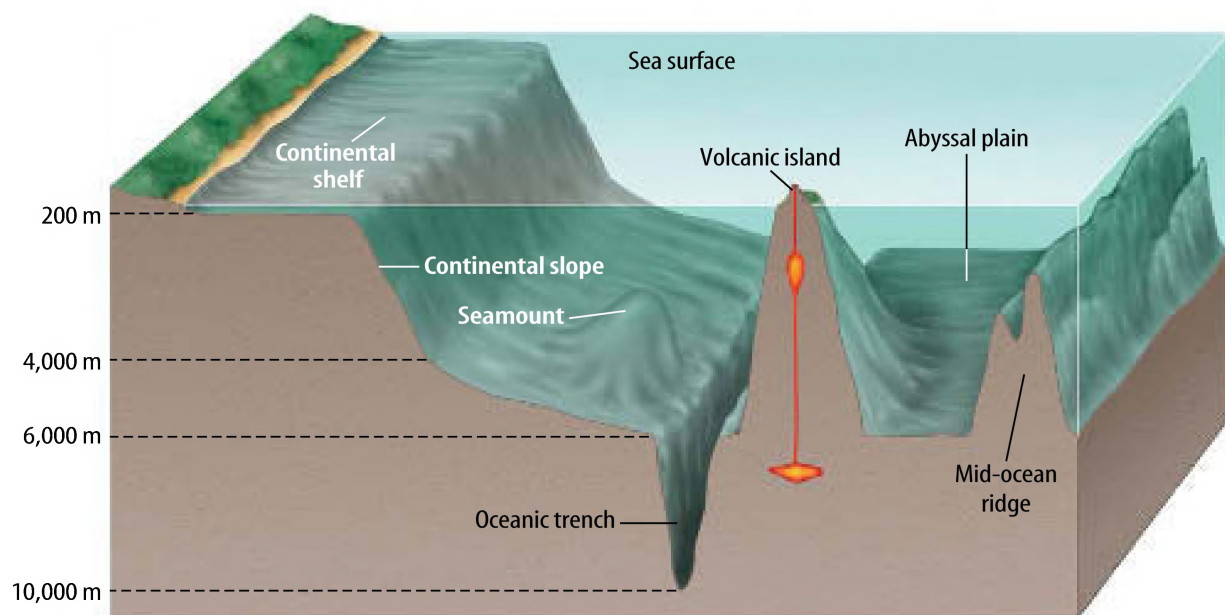


Figure 2 shows that beyond the shelf, the ocean floor drops more steeply, forming the continental slope. The **continental slope** extends from the outer edge of the continental shelf down to the ocean floor. Beyond the continental slope lie the trenches, valleys, plains, mountains, and ridges of the ocean basin.

In the deep ocean, sediment, derived mostly from land, settles constantly on the ocean floor. These deposits fill in valleys and create flat seafloor areas called **abyssal** (uh BIH sul) **plains**.

Abyssal plains are from 4,000 m to 6,000 m below the ocean surface. Can you locate the abyssal plain shown in **Figure 2**?

In the Atlantic Ocean, areas of extremely flat abyssal plains can be large. One example is the Canary Abyssal Plain, which has an area of approximately 900,000 km². Other abyssal plains found in the Atlantic Ocean include the Hatteras and Demerara Abyssal Plains, both shown in **Figure 1**. Some areas of abyssal plains have small hills and seamounts. Seamounts are under-water, inactive volcanic peaks. They most commonly are found in the Pacific Ocean. Can you locate a seamount in **Figure 1**?

Reading Check What are seamounts?

Figure 2 Ocean basin features are continuous from shore to shore. (Features in this diagram are not to scale.)

Describe where the continental shelf ends and the continental slope begins.



Scienceonline

Topic: Ocean Basins

Visit bookh.msscience.com for Web links to information about ocean basins.

Activity Find five fun facts about ocean basins, such as the location of the deepest known point in the ocean. Present your facts to the class.



Figure 3 New seafloor forms at mid-ocean ridges. A type of lava called pillow lava lies newly formed at this ridge on the ocean floor.

Ridges and Trenches

Locate the Mid-Atlantic Ridge in **Figure 1**. Mid-ocean ridges can be found at the bottom of all ocean basins. They form a continuous underwater ridge approximately 70,000 km long. A **mid-ocean ridge** is the area in an ocean basin where new ocean floor is formed. Crustal plates, which are large sections of Earth's uppermost mantle and crust, are moving constantly. As they move, the ocean floor changes. When ocean plates separate, hot magma from Earth's interior forms new ocean crust. This is the process of seafloor spreading. New ocean floor is being formed at a rate of approximately 2.5 cm per year along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge.

New ocean floor forms along mid-ocean ridges as lava erupts through cracks in Earth's crust. **Figure 3** shows newly erupted lava on the seafloor. When the lava hits the water, it cools quickly into solid rock, forming new seafloor. While seafloor is being formed in some parts of the oceans, it is being destroyed in others. Areas where old ocean floor slides beneath another plate and descends into Earth's mantle are called subduction zones.



Reading Check

How does new ocean floor form?

Applying Math

Find the Slope

CALCULATING A FEATURE'S SLOPE If the width of a continental shelf is 320 km and it increases in depth a total of 300 m in that distance, what is its slope?

Solution

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 This is what you know: | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • width = 320 km • increase in depth = 300 m |
| 2 This is what you need to find: | slope: s |
| 3 This is the equation you need to use: | $s = \text{increase in depth} \div \text{width}$ |
| 4 Solve the equation by substituting in known values: | $s = 300 \text{ m} \div 320 \text{ km} = 0.94 \text{ m/km}$ |

Practice Problems

1. The width of a continental slope is 40 km. It increases in depth by 2,000 m. What is the slope of the continental slope?
2. If the depth of a continental slope increases by 3,700 m and the slope is 74 m/km, what is the width of the slope?

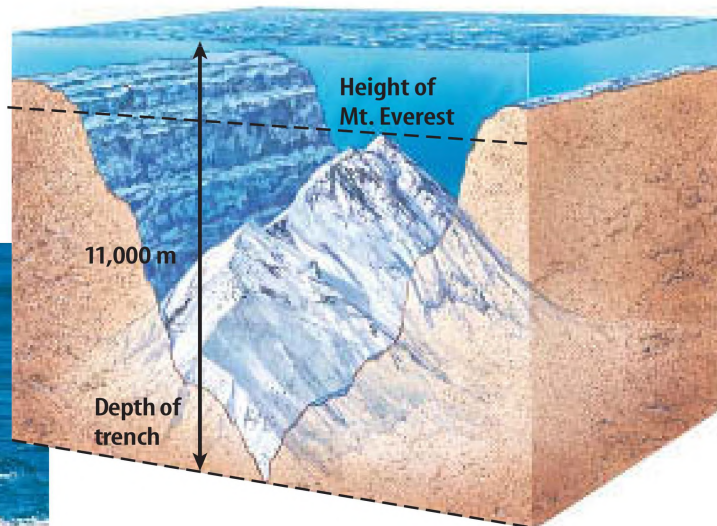


For more practice, visit
[bookh.msscience.com/
 math_practice](http://bookh.msscience.com/math_practice)

Figure 4 Located at subduction zones, trenches are important ocean basin features.



In 1960, the world's deepest dive was made in the Mariana Trench. The *Trieste* carried Jacques Piccard and Donald Walsh to a depth of almost 11 km.



If Earth's tallest mountain, Mount Everest, were set in the bottom of the Mariana Trench of the Pacific Basin, it would be covered with more than 2,000 m of water.

Subduction Zones On the ocean floor, subduction zones are marked by deep ocean trenches. A **trench** is a long, narrow, steep-sided depression where one crustal plate sinks beneath another. Most trenches are found in the Pacific Basin. Ocean trenches are usually longer and deeper than any valley on any continent. One trench, famous for its depth, is the Mariana Trench. It is located to the south and east of Japan in the Pacific Basin. This trench reaches 11 km below the surface of the water, and it is the deepest place in the Pacific. The photo in **Figure 4** shows the deep-sea vessel, the *Trieste*, that descended into the trench in 1960. **Figure 4** also illustrates that the Mariana Trench is so deep that Mount Everest could easily fit into it.

Mineral Resources from the Seafloor

Resources can be found in many places in the ocean. Some deposits on the continental shelf are relatively easy to extract. Others can be found only in the deep abyssal regions on the ocean floor. People still are trying to figure out how to get these valuable resources to the surface. As you read, suggest some methods that could be used to retrieve hard-to-reach resources.

Mini LAB

Modeling the Mid-Atlantic Ridge

Procedure

1. Set two **tray tables** 2 cm apart.
2. Gather ten **paper towels** that are still connected. Lay one end of the paper towels on each table so the towels hang down into the space between the tables.
3. Slowly pull each end of the paper towels away from each other.

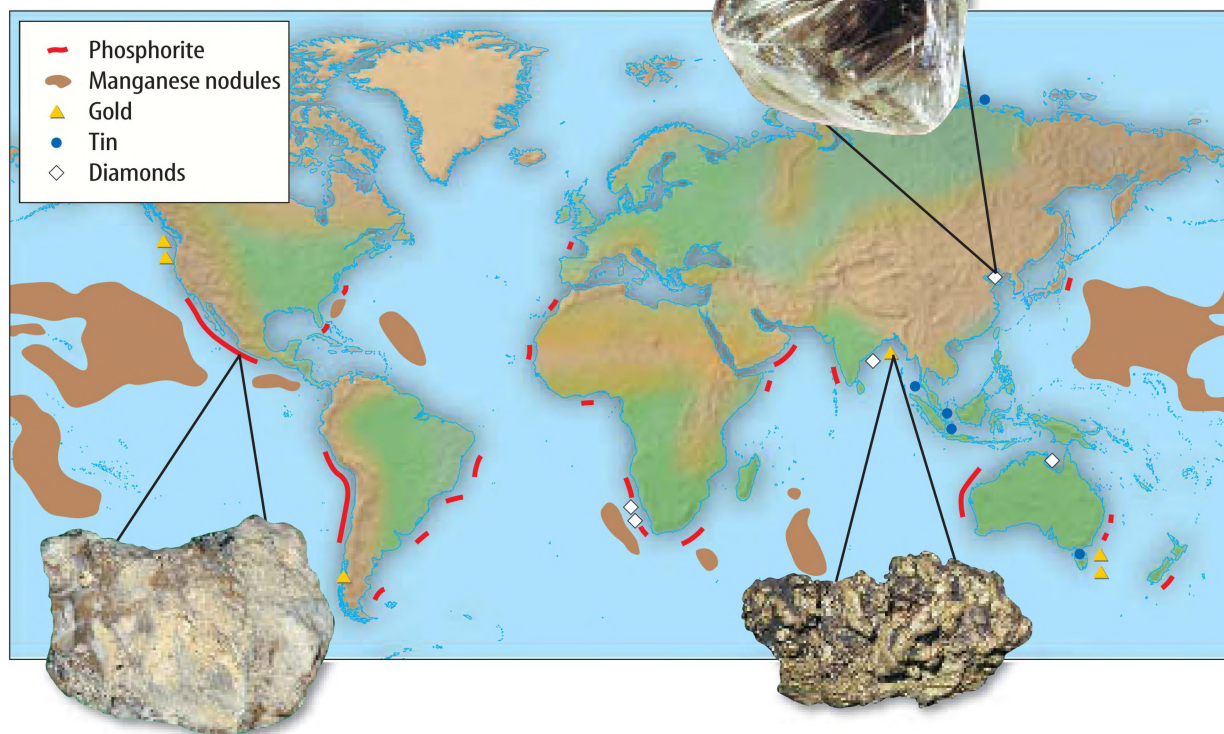
Analysis

1. Explain how this models the Mid-Atlantic Ridge.
2. How long does it take for 2.5 cm of new ocean crust to form at the Mid-Atlantic Ridge? How long does it take 25 cm to form?



Figure 5 The ocean is rich with mineral resources.

Determine In which areas of the world can phosphorite be found? Where can diamonds be found?



Continental Shelf Deposits A high amount of organic activity occurs in the waters above the continental shelf, and sediment accumulates to great thickness on the ocean floor. This is why many different kinds of resources can be found there, such as petroleum and natural gas deposits. Approximately 20 percent of the world's oil comes from under the seabed. To extract these substances, wells are drilled into the seafloor from floating vessels and fixed platforms.

Other deposits on the continental shelf include phosphorite, which is used to make fertilizer, and limestone, which is used to make cement. Sand and gravel, both economically important, also can be dredged from the continental shelf.

Rivers that flow into oceans transport important minerals to the continental shelf from land. Sometimes the energy of ocean waves and currents can cause denser mineral grains that have been brought in by rivers to concentrate in one place. These deposits, called placer (PLAHHS ur) deposits, can occur in coastal regions where rivers entering the ocean suddenly lose energy, slow down, and drop their sediment. Metals such as gold and titanium and gemstones such as diamonds are mined from placer deposits in some coastal regions. **Figure 5** shows where some resources in the ocean can be found.

Deep-Water Deposits Through the holes and cracks along mid-ocean ridges, plumes of hot water billow out into surrounding seawater. As the superheated water cools, mineral deposits sometimes form. As a result, elements such as sulfur and metals like iron, copper, zinc, and silver can be concentrated in these areas. Today, no one is mining these valuable materials from the depths because it would be too expensive to recover them. However, in the future, these deposits could become important.

Other mineral deposits can precipitate from seawater. In this process, minerals that are dissolved in ocean water come out of solution and form solids on the ocean floor. Manganese nodules are small, darkly colored lumps strewn across large areas of the ocean basins. **Figure 6** shows these nodules. Manganese nodules form by a chemical process that is not fully understood. They form around nuclei such as discarded sharks' teeth, growing slowly, perhaps as little as 1 mm to 10 mm per million years. These nodules are rich in manganese, copper, iron, nickel, and cobalt, which are used in the manufacture of steel, paint, and batteries. Most of the nodules lie thousands of meters deep in the ocean and are not currently being mined, although suction devices similar to huge vacuum cleaners have been tested to collect them.



Figure 6 These manganese nodules were found on the floor of the Pacific Ocean.

Think Critically Can you think of an efficient way to gather the nodules from a depth of 4 km?

section

1

review

Summary

The Ocean Basins

- Ocean basins have many different features, including the continental shelf, continental slope, and abyssal plains.

Ridges and Trenches

- New ocean floor forms along mid-ocean ridges.
- Trenches mark areas of ocean floor where one crustal plate is sinking beneath another.

Mineral Resources from the Seafloor

- Many mineral deposits, such as petroleum and natural gas, can be found on the continental shelf.
- Other mineral deposits, such as manganese nodules, can be found in deep water.

Self Check

1. **Compare and contrast** continental shelves and continental slopes.
2. **Contrast** mid-ocean ridges and trenches.
3. **Describe** how an abyssal plain looks and how it forms.
4. **Think Critically** Why is the formation of continental shelf deposits different from that of deep-water deposits? Name two examples of each type of deposit.

Applying Skills

5. **Infer** Depth soundings, taken as a ship moves across an ocean, are consistently between 4,000 m and 4,500 m. Over which area of seafloor is the ship passing?

Mapping the Ocean Floor

In this lab you will use sonar data from the Atlantic Ocean to make a profile of the ocean bottom.

Real-World Question

What does the ocean floor look like?

Goals

- **Make** a profile of the ocean floor.
- **Identify** seafloor structures.

Materials

graph paper

Procedure

1. Copy and complete a graph like the one shown.
2. **Plot** each data point and connect the points with a smooth line.



3. Color water blue and the seafloor brown.

Conclude and Apply

1. What ocean floor structures occur between 160 km and 1,050 km east of New Jersey? Between 2,000 km and 4,500 km? Between 5,300 km and 5,500 km?
2. When a profile of a feature is drawn to scale, the horizontal and vertical scales must be the same. Does your profile give an accurate picture of the ocean floor? Explain.

Ocean Floor Data

Station Number	Distance from New Jersey (km)	Depth to Ocean Floor (m)
1	0	0
2	160	165
3	200	1,800
4	500	3,500
5	1,050	5,450
6	1,450	5,100
7	1,800	5,300
8	2,000	5,600
9	2,300	4,750
10	2,400	3,500
11	2,600	3,100
12	3,000	4,300
13	3,200	3,900
14	3,450	3,400
15	3,550	2,100
16	3,700	1,275
17	3,950	1,000
18	4,000	0
19	4,100	1,800
20	4,350	3,650
21	4,500	5,100
22	5,000	5,000
23	5,300	4,200
24	5,450	1,800
25	5,500	920
26	5,650	0

Life in the Ocean

Fred Bavendam/Minden Pictures

Life Processes

Life processes such as breathing oxygen, digesting food, making new cells, and growing take place in your body every day. It takes energy to do this, plus walk between classrooms or play soccer. Organisms that live in the ocean also carry out life processes every day. The octopus shown in **Figure 7** will get the oxygen it needs from the water. It will have to eat, and it will use energy to capture prey and to escape predators. It will make new cells and eventually reproduce. Like other marine organisms, it is adapted to accomplish these processes in the salty water of the ocean.

One of the most important processes in the ocean, as it is on land, is that organisms obtain food to use for energy. Obtaining the food necessary to survive can be done in several ways.



Photosynthesis Nearly all of the energy used by organisms in the ocean ultimately comes from the Sun. Radiant energy from the Sun penetrates seawater to an average depth of 100 m. Marine organisms such as plants and algae use energy from the Sun to build their tissues and produce their own food. This process of making food is called **photosynthesis**. During photosynthesis, carbon dioxide and water are changed to sugar and oxygen in the presence of sunlight. Organisms that undergo photosynthesis are called producers. Producers also need nutrients, such as nitrogen and phosphorus, in order to produce organic matter. These and other nutrients are obtained from the surrounding water. Marine producers include sea grasses, seaweeds, and microscopic algae. Although they might seem unimportant because they are small, microscopic algae are responsible for approximately 90 percent of all marine production. Organisms that feed on producers are called consumers. Consumers in the marine environment include shrimp, fish, dolphins, whales, and sharks.

Figure 7 Hunting at night, this Pacific octopus feeds on snails and crabs. It uses camouflage, ink, and speed to avoid predators.

as you read

What You'll Learn

- **Describe** photosynthesis and chemosynthesis in the oceans.
- **List** the key characteristics of plankton, nekton, and benthos.
- **Compare and contrast** ocean margin habitats.

Why It's Important

The ocean environment is fragile, and many organisms, including humans, depend on it for their survival.

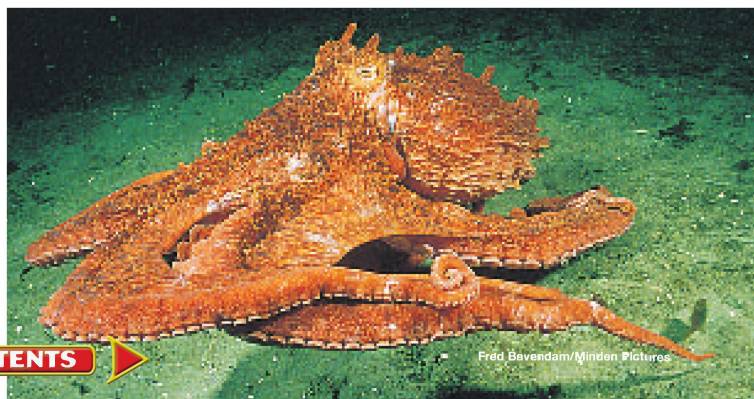


Review Vocabulary

nutrient: a substance needed for the production of organic matter

New Vocabulary

- | | |
|------------------|-----------|
| • photosynthesis | • benthos |
| • chemosynthesis | • estuary |
| • plankton | • reef |
| • nekton | |



Fred Bavendam/Minden Pictures



INTEGRATE Career

Ecologist An ecologist is a scientist who studies the interactions between organisms and their environment. Ecologists may specialize in areas such as marine ecosystems or tropical rain forests. They may also study how energy is transferred from one organism to another, such as through a food web.

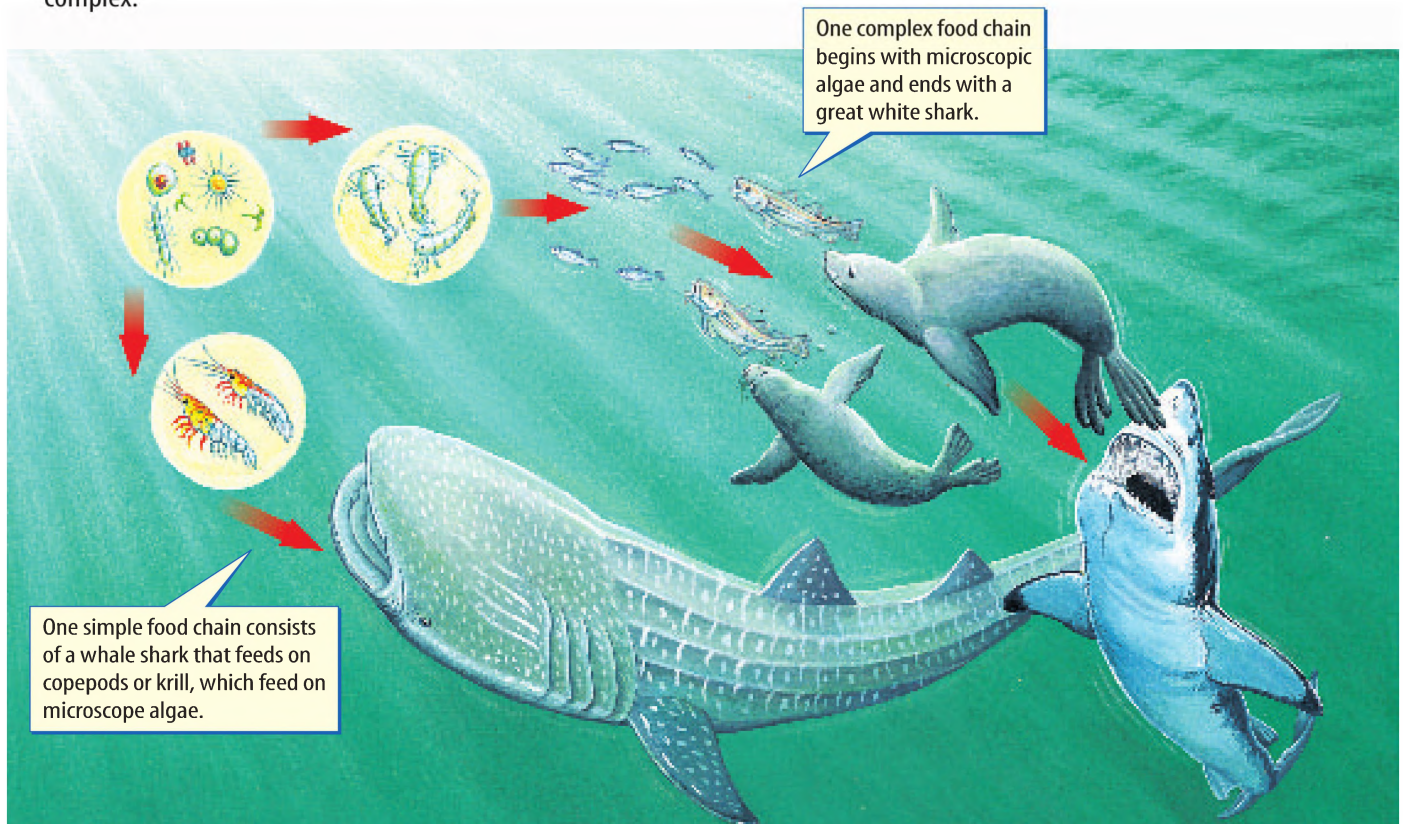
Figure 8 Numerous food chains exist in the ocean. Some food chains are simple and some are complex.

Energy Relationships Energy from the Sun is transferred through food chains. Although the organisms of the ocean capture only a small part of the Sun's energy, this energy is passed from producer to consumer, then to other consumers. In **Figure 8**, notice that in one food chain, a large whale shark consumes small, shrimplike organisms as its basic food. In the other chain, microscopic algae found in water are eaten by microscopic animals called copepods (KOH puh pahdz). The copepods are, in turn, eaten by herring. Cod eat the herring, seals eat the cod, and eventually great white sharks eat the seals. At each stage in the food chain, energy obtained by one organism is used by other organisms to move, grow, repair cells, reproduce, and eliminate waste.



Reading Check What is passed on at each stage in a food chain?

In an ecosystem—a community of organisms and their environment—many complex feeding relationships exist. Most organisms depend on more than one species for food. For example, herring eat more than copepods, cod eat more than herring, seals eat more than cod, and white sharks eat more than seals. In an ecosystem, food chains overlap and are connected much like the threads of a spider's web. These highly complex systems are called food webs.



Chemosynthesis Other types of food webs do not depend on the Sun and photosynthesis. These food webs depend on bacteria that perform chemosynthesis. **Chemosynthesis** (kee moh SIHN tuh sus) involves using sulfur or nitrogen compounds as an energy source, instead of light from the Sun, to produce food. Bacteria that perform chemosynthesis using sulfur compounds live along mid-ocean ridges near hydrothermal vents where no light is available. Recall that superheated water from the crust contains high amounts of sulfur. The bacteria found here form the base of a food chain and support a host of highly specialized organisms such as giant tube worms, clams, crabs, and shrimp.

Other Life Processes Reproduction also is a vital life process. Some organisms, such as corals and sponges, depend on ocean currents for successful reproduction. Shown in **Figure 9**, these organisms release reproductive cells into the water where they unite to form more organisms of the same type. Other organisms, such as salmon and the Atlantic eel, travel long distances across the ocean in order to reproduce in a specific location. One important aspect of successful reproduction is finding a safe place for eggs and newly hatched larvae to develop. You will learn later in this section that some places in the ocean are used by marine organisms for this purpose.

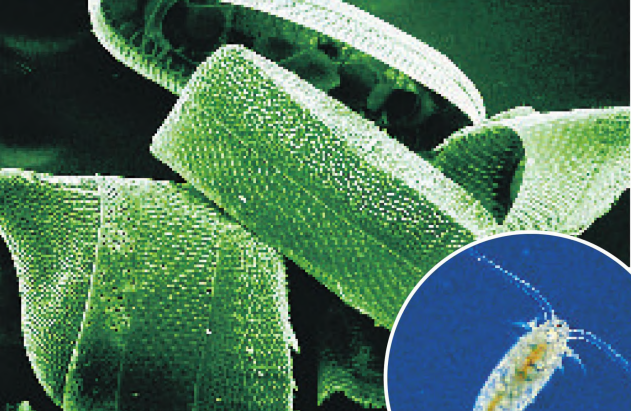
Ocean Life

Many varieties of plants and animals live in the ocean. Although some organisms live in the open ocean or on the deep ocean floor, most marine organisms live in the waters above or on the floor of the continental shelf. In this relatively shallow water, the Sun penetrates to the bottom, allowing for photosynthesis. Because light is available for photosynthesis, large numbers of producers live in the waters above the continental shelf. These waters also contain many nutrients that producers use to carry out life processes. As a result, the greatest source of food is located in the waters of the continental shelf.



Figure 9 Because sponges live attached to the ocean bottom, they depend on currents to carry their reproductive cells to nearby sponges.

Infer what would happen if a sponge settled in an area without strong currents.



Diatoms are phytoplankton that live in freshwater and ocean water.

The zooplankton shown here is a copepod. Although it has reached its adult size, it is still microscopic.

Figure 10 Some plankton are producers, others are consumers.



Bioluminescence Some marine organisms, including types of bacteria, one-celled algae, and fish, can make their own light through a process called bioluminescence. The main molecule involved in producing light is luciferin. In the process of a chemical reaction involving luciferin, a burst of light is produced.

Plankton Marine organisms that drift with the currents are called **plankton**. Plankton range from microscopic algae and animals to organisms as large as jellyfish. Most phytoplankton—plankton that are producers—are one-celled organisms that float in the upper layers of the ocean where light needed for photosynthesis is available. One abundant form of phytoplankton is a one-celled organism called a diatom. Diatoms are shown in **Figure 10**. Diatoms and other phytoplankton are the source of food for zooplankton, animals that drift with ocean currents.

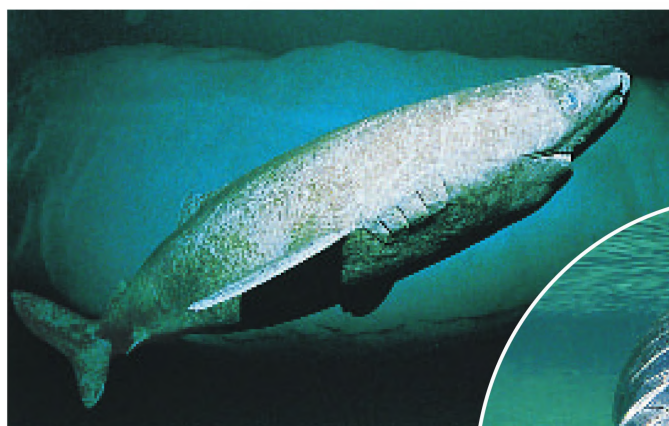
Zooplankton includes newly hatched fish and crabs, jellies, and tiny adults of some organisms like the one shown in **Figure 10**, which feed on phytoplankton and are usually the second step in ocean food chains. Most animal plankton depend on surface currents to move them, but some can swim short distances.

Nekton Animals that actively swim, rather than drift with the currents in the ocean, are called **nekton**. Nekton include all swimming forms of fish and other animals, from tiny herring to huge whales. Nekton can be found from polar regions to the tropics and from shallow water to the deepest parts of the ocean. In **Figure 11**, the Greenland shark, the manatee, and the deep-ocean fish are all nekton. As nekton move throughout the oceans, it is important that they are able to control their buoyancy, or how easily they float or sink. What happens when you hold your breath underwater, then let all of the air out of your lungs at once? The air held in your lungs provides buoyancy and helps you float. As the air is released, you sink. Many fish have a special organ filled with gas that helps them control their buoyancy. By changing their buoyancy, organisms can change their depth in the ocean. The ability to move between different depths allows animals to search more areas for food.

Reading Check What are nekton?

Some deep-dwelling nekton are adapted with special light-generating organs. The light has several uses for these organisms. The deep-sea fish, shown in **Figure 11**, dangles a luminous lure from beneath its jaw. When prey attracted by the lure are close enough, they are swallowed quickly. Some deep-sea organisms use this light to momentarily blind predators so they can escape. Others use it to attract mates.

Figure 11 Nekton are found living in all areas of the ocean, warm or cold, shallow or deep.



This Greenland shark lives in the cold waters of the North Atlantic.



Manatees are found in tropical regions around the world.



This deep-sea fish is adapted to living under pressure at a depth of 4 km.

Bottom Dwellers The plants and animals living on or in the seafloor are the **benthos** (BEN thahs). Benthic animals include crabs, snails, sea urchins, and bottom-dwelling fish such as flounder. These organisms move or swim across the bottom to find food. Other benthic animals that live permanently attached to the bottom, such as sea anemones and sponges, filter out food particles from seawater. Certain types of worms live burrowed in the sediment of the ocean floor. Bottom-dwelling animals can be found living from the shallow water of the continental shelf to the deepest areas of the ocean. Benthic plants and algae, however, are limited to the shallow areas of the ocean where enough sunlight penetrates the water to allow for photosynthesis. One example of a benthic algae is kelp, which is anchored to the bottom and grows toward the surface from depths of up to 30 m.

Ocean Margin Habitats

The area of the environment where a plant or animal normally lives is called a habitat. Along the near-shore areas of the continental shelf, called ocean margins, a variety of habitats exist. Beaches, rocky shores, estuaries, and coral reefs are some examples of the different habitats found along ocean margins.

Mini LAB

Observing Plankton

Procedure

1. Place one or two drops of pond, lake, or ocean water onto a microscope slide.
2. Use a microscope to observe your sample. Look for microscopic life.
3. Find at least three different types of plankton.

Analysis

1. Draw detailed pictures of three types of plankton.
2. Classify the plankton as phytoplankton or zooplankton.

Topic: Beach Erosion

Visit bookh.msscience.com for Web links to information about beach erosion.

Activity Find two examples of beaches that are having problems with erosion. What is being done to help solve the problem?

Beaches At the edge of a sandy beach where the waves splash, you can find some microscopic organisms and worms that spend their entire lives between moist grains of sand. Burrowing animals such as small clams and mole crabs make holes in the sand. When water covers the holes, these animals rise to the surface to filter food from the water. Where sand is covered constantly by water, larger animals like horseshoe crabs, snails, fish, turtles, and sand dollars reside. **Figure 12** shows some of the organisms that are found living on sandy beaches.

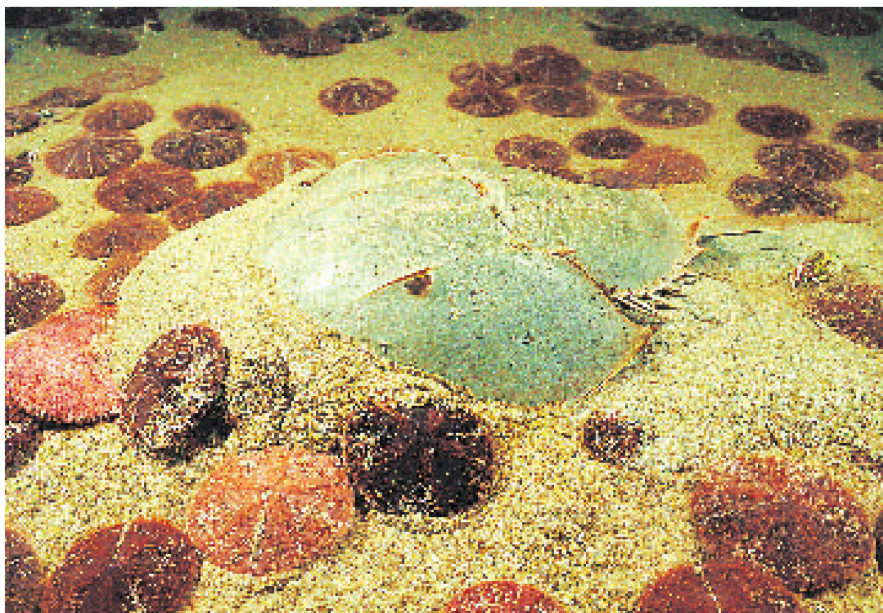
Although the beach is great fun for people, it is a very stressful environment for the plants and animals that live there. They constantly deal with waves, changing tides, and storms, all of which redistribute large amounts of sand. Large waves produced by storms, such as hurricanes, can cause damage to beaches as they crash onto shore. These organisms must adapt to natural changes as well as changes created by humans. Damming rivers, building harbors, and constructing homes and hotels near the shoreline disrupts natural processes on the beach.

Rocky Shore Areas In some regions the shoreline is rocky, as shown in **Figure 13**. Algae, sea anemones, mussels, and barnacles encrust submerged rocks. Sea stars, sea urchins, octopuses, and hermit crabs crawl along the rock surfaces, looking for food.

Tide pools are formed when water remains onshore, trapped by the rocks during low tide. Tide pools are an important habitat for many marine organisms. They serve as protected areas where many animals, such as octopuses and fish, can develop safely from juveniles to adults. Tide pools contain an abundance of food and offer protection from larger predators.

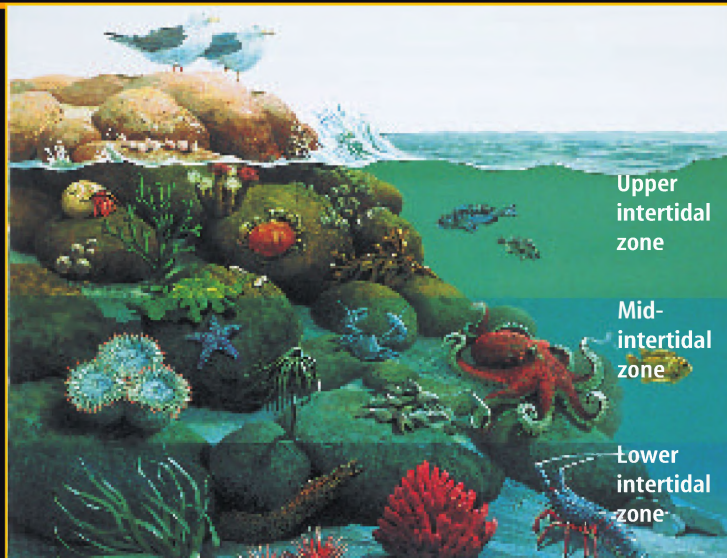
Figure 12 Organisms inhabit many different shore areas.

Describe where you would want to live if you were a marine organism.

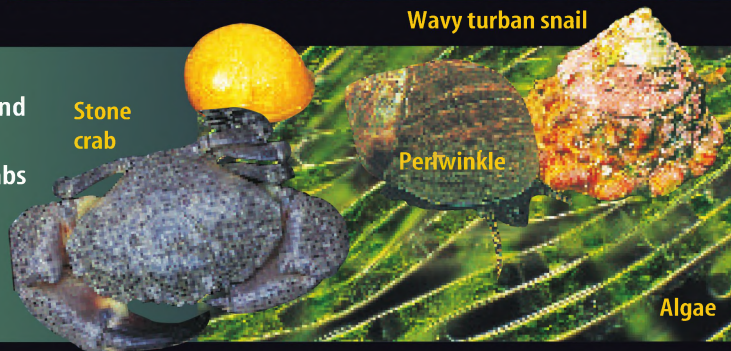


**Figure 13**

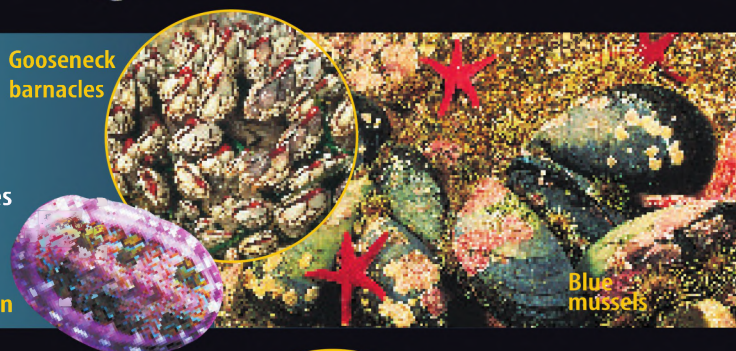
Life is tough in the intertidal zone—the coastal area between the highest high tide and the lowest low tide. Organisms here are pounded by waves and alternately covered and uncovered by water as tides rise and fall. These organisms tend to cluster into three general zones along the shore. Where they live depends on how well they tolerate being washed by waves, submerged at high tide, or exposed to air and sunlight when the tide is low.



UPPER INTERTIDAL ZONE This part of the intertidal zone is splashed by high waves and is usually covered by water only during the highest tides each month. It is home to crabs that scuttle among periwinkle snails, limpets, and a few kinds of algae that can withstand long periods of dryness.



MID-INTERTIDAL ZONE Submerged at most high tides and exposed at most low tides, this zone is populated by brown algae, sponges, barnacles, mussels, chitons, snails, and sea stars. These creatures are resistant to drying out and good at clinging to slippery surfaces.



LOWER INTERTIDAL ZONE This section of the intertidal zone is exposed only during the lowest tides each month. It contains the most diverse collection of living things. Here you find sea urchins, large sea stars, brittle stars, nudibranchs, sea cucumbers, anemones, and many kinds of fish.





Figure 14 Estuaries are called the nurseries of the oceans because many creatures spend their early lives there.

Estuaries An **estuary** is an area where the mouth of a river opens into an ocean. Because estuaries receive freshwater from rivers, they are not as salty as the ocean. Rivers also bring nutrients to estuaries. Areas with many nutrients usually have many phytoplankton, which form the base of the food chain. Shown in **Figure 14**, estuaries are full of life from salt-tolerant grasses to oysters, clams, shrimps, fish, and even manatees.

Estuaries are an important habitat to many marine organisms. Newly hatched fish, shrimps, crabs, and other animals enter estuaries as microscopic organisms and remain there until adulthood. For these vulnerable animals, fewer predators and more food are found in estuaries.

Coral Reefs Corals thrive in clear, warm water that receives a lot of sunlight. This means that they generally live in warm latitudes, between 30°N and 30°S, and in water that is no deeper than 40 m. Each coral animal builds a hard capsule around its body from the calcium it removes from seawater. Each capsule is cemented to others to form a large colony called a reef. A **reef** is a rigid, wave-resistant structure built by corals from skeletal material. As a coral reef forms, other benthos such as sea stars and sponges and nekton such as fish and turtles begin living on it.

In all ocean margin habitats, nutrients, food, and energy are cycled among organisms in complex food webs. Plankton, nekton, and benthos depend on each other for survival.

section 2 review

Summary

Life Processes

- Organisms in the ocean obtain food to use for energy in several ways.
- Photosynthesis and chemosynthesis are processes used by producers to make food. Other organisms are consumers.
- Reproduction is also a vital life process.

Ocean Life

- Organisms in the ocean can be classified as plankton, nekton, or benthos depending on where they live.

Ocean Margin Habitats

- Ocean margin habitats such as beaches, rocky shore areas, estuaries, and coral reefs exist along the near-shore areas of the continental shelf.

Self Check

1. **Describe** the processes of photosynthesis and chemosynthesis.
2. **Identify** the key characteristics of plankton, nekton, and benthos.
3. **Compare and contrast** the characteristics of coral reef and estuary habitats.
4. **Think Critically** The amount of nutrients in the water decreases as the distance from the continental shelf increases. What effect does this have on open-ocean food chains?

Applying Skills

5. **Use Graphics Software** Design a creative poster that shows energy relationships in a food chain. Begin with photosynthesis. Use clip art, scanned photographs, or computer graphics.

Ocean Pollution

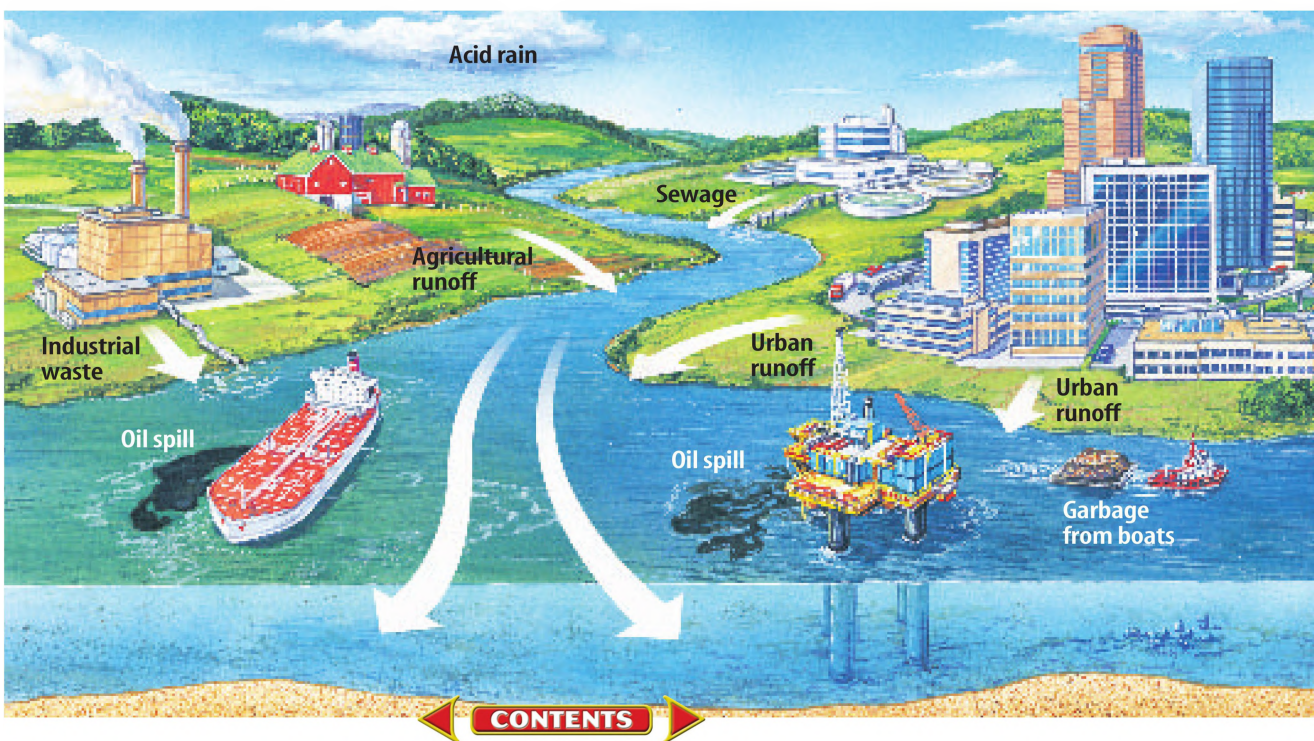
Sources of Pollution

How would you feel if someone came into your bedroom; spilled oil on your carpet; littered your room with plastic bags, cans, bottles, and newspapers; then sprayed insect killer and scattered sand all over? Organisms in the ocean experience these things when people pollute seawater.

Pollution is the introduction of harmful waste products, chemicals, and other substances not native to an environment. A pollutant is a substance that causes damage to organisms by interfering with life processes.

Pollutants from land eventually will reach the ocean in one of four main ways. They can be dumped deliberately and directly into the ocean. Material can be lost overboard accidentally during storms or shipwrecks. Some pollutants begin in the air and enter the ocean through rain. Other pollutants will reach the ocean by being carried in rivers that empty into the ocean. **Figure 15** illustrates how pollutants from land enter the oceans.

Figure 15 Ocean pollution comes from many sources.



as you read

What You'll Learn

- **List** five types of ocean pollution.
- **Explain** how ocean pollution affects the entire world.
- **Describe** how ocean pollution can be controlled.

Why It's Important

Earth's health depends on the oceans being unpolluted.

Review Vocabulary

runoff: water that does not soak into the ground or evaporate but instead flows over Earth's surface, eventually entering streams, lakes, or oceans

New Vocabulary

- pollution

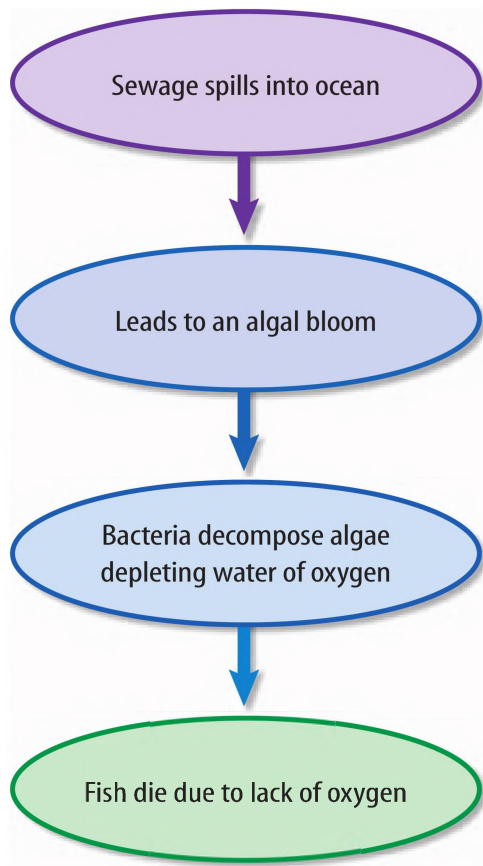


Figure 16 Fish kills occur when the oxygen supply is low.

Infer how fish kills affect the food web.

Sewage In some regions, human sewage leaks from septic tanks or is pumped directly into oceans or into rivers leading to an ocean. The introduction of sewage to an area of the ocean can cause immediate changes in the ecosystem, as shown by the following example. Sewage is a pollutant that acts like fertilizer. It is rich in nutrients that cause some types of algae to reproduce rapidly, creating what is called a bloom. The problem occurs when the algae die. As huge numbers of bacteria reproduce and decompose the algae, much of the oxygen in the water is used up. Other organisms, such as fish, cannot get enough oxygen. As a result, fish die in a phenomenon called a fish kill, as illustrated in **Figure 16**.

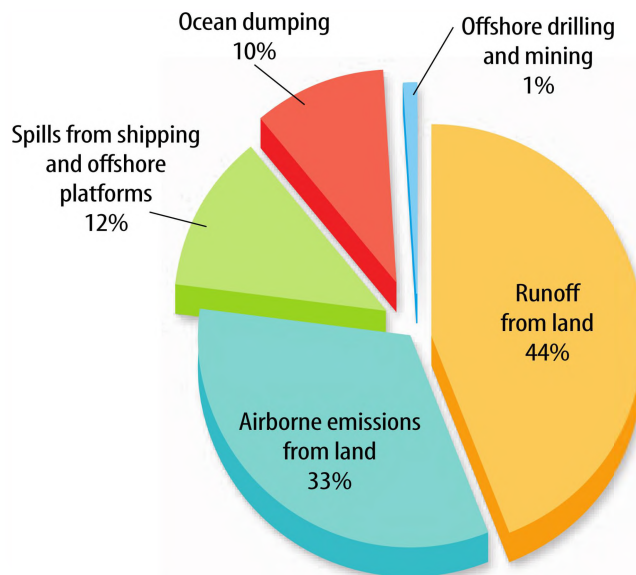
 Reading Check What is an algal bloom?

When sewage is dumped routinely into the same area year after year, changes take place. Entire ecosystems have been altered drastically as a result of long-term, repeated exposure to sewage and fertilizer runoff. In some areas of the world, sewage is dumped directly onto coral reefs. When this happens algae can outgrow the coral because the sewage acts like a fertilizer. Eventually, the coral organisms die. If this occurs,

other organisms that depend on the reef for food and shelter also can be affected.

Chemical Pollution Industrial wastes from land can harm marine organisms. When it rains, the herbicides (weed killers) and insecticides (insect killers) used in farming and on lawns are carried to streams. Eventually, they can reach the ocean and kill other organisms far from where they were applied originally. Sometimes industrial wastes are released directly into streams that eventually empty into oceans. Other chemicals are released into the air, where they later settle into the ocean. Industrial chemicals include metals like mercury and lead and chemicals like polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs). In a process called biological amplification (am plah fah KAY shun), harmful chemicals can build up in the tissues of organisms that are at the top of the food chain. Higher consumers like dolphins and seabirds accumulate greater amounts of a toxin as they continue to feed on smaller organisms. At high concentrations, some chemicals can damage an organism's immune and reproductive systems. Explosives and nuclear wastes also have been dumped, by accident and on purpose, into some regions of the oceans.

Oil Pollution Although oil spills from tankers that have collided or are leaking are usually highly publicized, they are not the biggest source of oil pollution in the ocean. As much as 44 percent of oil that reaches the ocean comes from land. Oil that washes from cars and streets, or that is poured down drains or into soil, flows into streams. Eventually, this oil reaches the ocean. Other sources of oil pollution are leaks at offshore oil wells and oil mixed with wastewater that is pumped out of ships. **Figure 17** shows the percentage of different sources of oil entering the oceans each year.



Solid-Waste Pollution Even in the most remote areas of the world, such as uninhabited islands that are thousands of miles from any major city, large amounts of trash wash up on the beach. **Figure 18** shows the amount of debris collected by a scientist on an island in the Pacific Ocean, 8,000 km east of Australia in just one day. The presence of trash ruins a beautiful beach, and solid wastes, such as plastic bags and fishing line, can entangle animals. Animals such as sea turtles mistakenly eat plastic bags, because they look so much like their normal prey, floating jellyfish. Illegally dumped medical waste such as needles, plastic tubing, and bags also are a threat to humans and other animals.

Figure 17 Although oil spills are highly publicized and tragic, the same harmful oil enters the ocean every day from many other sources.

Think Critically What can be done to reduce the amount of oil entering the oceans?



Figure 18 These items are like the ones found washed ashore on one of the Pitcairn Islands in the South Pacific. The number of each item found is shown below the figure. Also among the rubble were broken toys, two pairs of gloves, and an asthma inhaler.



Sediment Silt also can pollute the ocean. Human activities such as agriculture, deforestation, and construction tear up the soil. Rain washes soil into streams and eventually into an ocean nearby, as shown in **Figure 19**. This causes huge amounts of silt to accumulate in many coastal areas. Coral reefs and saltwater marshes are safe, protected places where young marine organisms grow to adults. When large amounts of silt cover coral reefs and fill marshes, these habitats are destroyed. Without a safe place to grow larger, many organisms will not survive.

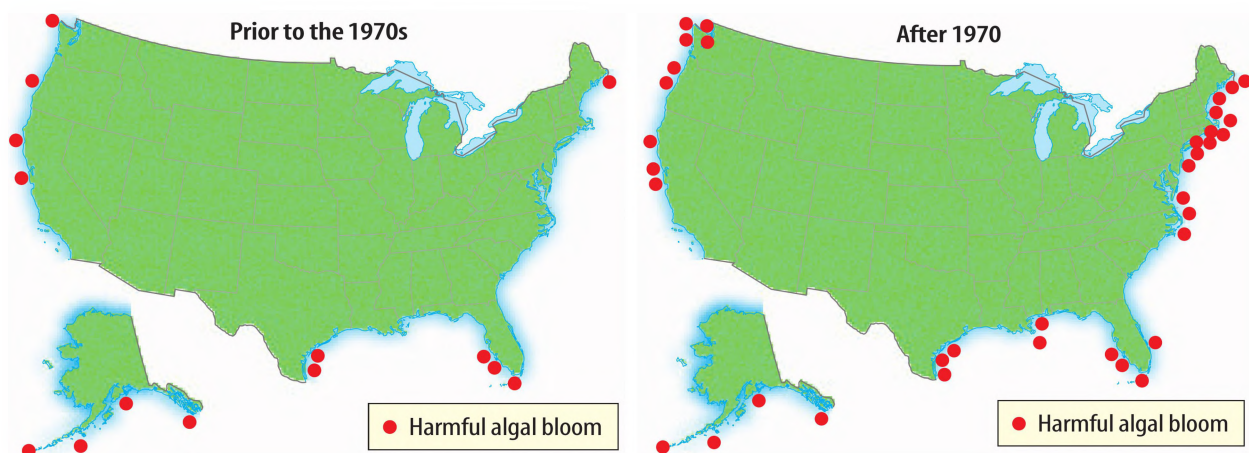
Figure 19 When large amounts of silt enter seawater, the filter-feeding systems of animals such as oysters and clams can be clogged.

Effects of Pollution

You already have learned some examples of how pollution affects the ocean and the organisms that live there. Today, there is not a single area of the ocean that is not polluted in some way. As pollution from land continues to reach the ocean, scientists are recording dramatic changes in this environment.

Estuaries and the rivers that feed into them from Delaware to North Carolina have suffered from toxic blooms of *Pfiesteria* since the late 1980s. These blooms have killed billions of fish. *Pfiesteria*, a type of plankton, also has caused rashes, nausea, memory loss, and the weakening of the immune system in humans. The cause of these blooms is thought to be runoff contaminated by fertilizers and other waste materials. In Florida, toxic red tides kill fish and manatees. Some people also blame these red tides on sewage releases and fertilizer runoff. **Figure 20** shows an increase in the number of harmful algal blooms since the early 1970s.

Figure 20 Some scientists hypothesize that a relationship exists between increased pollution in the ocean and the number of harmful algal blooms in the last 30 years.



Controlling Pollution

Some people believe that oceans take care of themselves because they are large. However, other people view ocean pollution as a serious problem. Many international organizations have met to develop ways of reducing ocean pollution. Treaties prohibit the dumping of some kinds of hazardous wastes from vessels, aircraft, and platforms. One treaty requires that some ships and operators of offshore platforms have oil pollution emergency plans. This includes having the proper equipment to combat oil spills and practicing what to do if a spill takes place. Recall that a large amount of pollution enters the ocean from land. Although the idea of reducing land pollution to better protect the ocean has been discussed, no international agreement exists to prevent and control land-based activities that affect the oceans.



Reading Check

What has been done to help control ocean pollution?

What You Can Do Current international and U.S. laws aren't effective enough. Further cooperation is needed to reduce ocean pollution. You can help by disposing of wastes properly and volunteering for beach or community cleanups, like the one shown in **Figure 21**. You can recycle materials such as newspapers, glass, and plastics and never dump chemicals like oil or paint onto soil or into water. One of the best things you can do is continue to learn about marine pollution and how people affect the oceans. What other things will help reduce ocean pollution?



Figure 21 Under careful supervision, picking up trash is an easy way to help reduce ocean pollution.

Section

3

Review

Summary

Sources of Pollution

- Sewage, industrial wastes, oil, solid waste, and sediment are the main types of pollution entering ocean water.

Effects of Pollution

- As pollution from land continues to reach the ocean, ecosystems and organisms are negatively affected.

Controlling Pollution

- International treaties and U.S. laws have been made to help reduce ocean pollution.
- Everyone can help reduce ocean pollution.

Self Check

1. **Identify** five human activities that pollute the oceans. Suggest a solution to each.
2. **Explain** how pollution of the oceans affects the world.
3. **Describe** the ways international treaties have helped reduce pollution.
4. **Think Critically** To widen beaches, some cities pump offshore sediment onto them. How might this affect organisms that live in coastal waters?

Applying Skills

5. **Concept Map** Make an events-chain concept map that describes how runoff can reach the ocean. Include examples of pollution that could be in the runoff.

Resources from the Oceans

Goals

- **Research and identify** organisms that are used to make products.
- **Explain** why it is important to keep oceans clean.

Data Source



Visit bookh.msscience.com/internet_lab for Web links to more information about resources from the oceans, hints on which products come from the oceans, and data from other students.

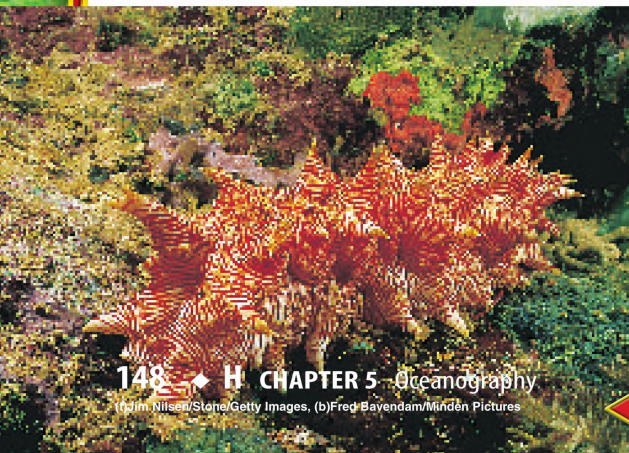
Real-World Question

Oceans cover most of Earth's surface. Humans get many things from oceans, such as seafood, medicines, oil, and diamonds. Humans also use oceans for recreation and to transport materials from place to place. What else comes from oceans? Scientists continue to discover and research new uses for ocean resources. You might not realize that you probably use many products every day that are made from organisms that live in oceans. Think about the plants and animals that live in the oceans. How could these organisms be used to make everyday products? Form a hypothesis about the types of products that could be manufactured from these organisms.



Make a Plan

1. **Identify** Web links shown in the Data Source section above and identify other resources that will help you complete the data table shown on the right.
2. **Observe** that to complete the table you must identify products made from marine organisms, where the organisms are collected or harvested, and alternative products.
3. **Plan** how and when you will locate the information.



Ocean Resources Data

Organism	Location Where Collected or Harvested	Product (name and use)	Alternatives
	Do not write in this book.		

Using Scientific Methods

Follow Your Plan

1. Make sure your teacher approves your plan and your resource list before you begin.
2. **Describe** at least three ocean organisms that are used to make products you use every day.
3. **Identify** the name and any uses of the product.
4. **Research** where each organism lives and the method by which it is collected or harvested.
5. **Identify** alternative products.



Analyze Your Data

1. **Describe** the different ways in which ocean organisms are useful to humans.
2. **Explain** Are there any substitutes or alternatives available for the ocean organisms in the products?

Conclude and Apply

1. **Infer** How might the activities of humans affect any of the ocean organisms you researched?
2. **Determine** Are the substitute or alternative products more or less expensive?
3. **Describe** Can you tell whether the ocean-made product is better than the substitute product?
4. **Explain** why it is important to conserve ocean resources and keep oceans clean.



Communicating Your Data

Find this lab using the link below. Post your data in the table provided. Compare your data to those of other students.

ScienceOnline

bookh.msscience.com/internet_lab

Strange Creatures

from the Ocean Floor



In 1977, the *Alvin*, a small submersible craft specially designed to explore the ocean depths, took three geologists down about 2,200 m below the sea surface. They wanted to be the first to observe and study the formations of the Galápagos Rift deep in the Pacific Ocean. What they saw was totally unexpected. Instead of barren rock, the geologists found life—a lot of life. And they had never even considered having a life scientist as part of the research team!

The crew of the *Alvin* discovered hydrothermal vents—underwater openings

where hot water (400°C) spurts from cracks in the rocks on the ocean floor. Some organisms thrive there because of the hydrogen sulfide that exists at the vents. Many of these organisms are like nothing humans had ever seen before. They are organisms that live in extremely hot temperatures and use hydrogen sulfide as their food supply.

The discovery and study of hydrothermal vents almost has been overshadowed by the amazing variety of life that was found there. But scientists think these openings on the ocean floor (many located along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge) control the temperature and movement of nearby ocean waters, as well as have a significant effect on the ocean's chemical content. These vents also act as outlets for Earth's inner heat.

Scientists also have discovered that the vent communities are temporary. Each vent eventually shuts down and the organisms somehow disperse to other vents. Exactly how this happens is an area of ongoing research.

Blood-red tube worms live deep beneath the sea.



Creative Writing Imagine you were a passenger on the *Alvin*. Write about your adventure as you came upon the hydrothermal communities. Describe and draw in detail some of the unique creatures you saw.

Science online

For more information, visit bookh.msscience.com/oops

Reviewing Main Ideas

Section 1 The Seafloor

1. The continental shelf is a gently sloping part of the continent that extends into the oceans. The continental slope extends from the continental shelf to the ocean floor. The abyssal plain is a flat area of the ocean floor.
2. Along mid-ocean ridges, new seafloor forms. Seafloor slips beneath another crustal plate at a trench.
3. Petroleum, natural gas, and placer deposits are mined from continental shelves. Manganese nodules and other mineral deposits can be found in deep water.

Section 2 Life in the Ocean

1. Marine organisms are specially adapted to live in salt water. They produce or consume food, and reproduce in the oceans.
2. Photosynthesis is the basis of most of the food chains in the ocean. Chemosynthesis

is a process of making food using chemical energy. Energy is transferred through food webs.

3. Organisms that drift in ocean currents are called plankton. Nekton are marine organisms that swim. Benthos are plants and animals that live on or near the ocean floor.
4. Ocean margin habitats, found along the continental shelf, include sandy beaches, rocky shores, estuaries, and coral reefs.

Section 3 Ocean Pollution

1. Sources of pollution include sewage, chemical pollution, oil spills, solid waste pollution, and sediment.
2. Ocean pollution can disrupt food webs and threaten marine organisms.
3. International treaties and U.S. laws have been made to help reduce ocean pollution.

Visualizing Main Ideas

Copy and complete the following chart on ocean-margin organisms.

Ocean-Margin Organisms				
Organism	Ocean-Margin Environments			
	Sandy Beach	Rocky Shore	Estuary	Coral Reef
Plankton	phytoplankton zooplankton		phytoplankton zooplankton	
Nekton		octopuses, fish		fish, turtles
Benthos			grasses, snails, clams	



Using Vocabulary

abyssal plain p. 129	nekton p. 138
benthos p. 139	photosynthesis p. 135
chemosynthesis p. 137	plankton p. 138
continental shelf p. 128	pollution p. 143
continental slope p. 129	reef p. 142
estuary p. 142	trench p. 131
mid-ocean ridge p. 130	

Fill in the blanks with the correct words.

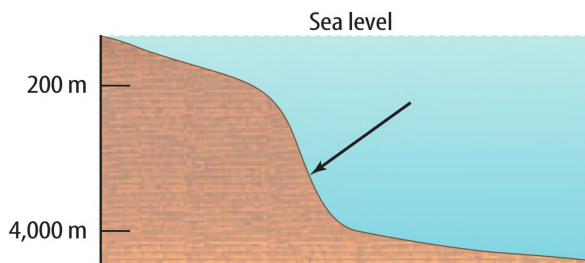
1. Animals such as whales, sea turtles, and fish are examples of _____.
2. _____ occurs in areas where organisms use sulfur as energy to produce their own food.
3. The _____ drops from the edge of a continent out to the deep abyssal plains of the ocean floor.
4. New ocean floor is formed at _____.
5. An area where the mouth of a river opens into an ocean is a(n) _____.

Checking Concepts

Choose the word or phrase that best answers the question.

6. What are formed along subduction zones?
 - A) mid-ocean ridges
 - B) continental shelves
 - C) trenches
 - D) density currents
7. What are ocean organisms that drift in ocean currents called?
 - A) nekton
 - B) pollutants
 - C) benthos
 - D) plankton
8. How do some deep-water bacteria in the ocean make food?
 - A) photosynthesis
 - B) chemosynthesis
 - C) respiration
 - D) rifting

Use the illustration below to answer question 9.

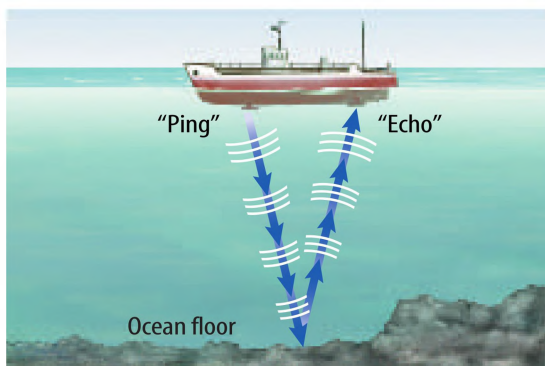


9. Which feature of the ocean floor is the arrow pointing to?
 - A) rift valley
 - B) seamount
 - C) abyssal plain
 - D) continental slope
10. What might be found in areas where rivers enter oceans?
 - A) rift valleys
 - B) manganese nodules
 - C) abyssal plains
 - D) placer deposits
11. Which organisms reproduce rapidly, resulting eventually in a lack of oxygen?
 - A) fish
 - B) corals
 - C) algae
 - D) animal plankton
12. In which area of the ocean is the greatest source of food found?
 - A) on abyssal plains
 - B) in trenches
 - C) along continental shelves
 - D) along the mid-ocean ridge
13. Where does most oil pollution originate?
 - A) tanker collisions
 - B) runoff from land
 - C) leaks at offshore wells
 - D) in wastewater pumped from ships
14. Where does new seafloor form?
 - A) trenches
 - B) mid-ocean ridges
 - C) abyssal plains
 - D) continental shelves

Thinking Critically

15. **Infer** why some industries might be interested in mining manganese nodules.
16. **Explain** why ocean pollution is considered to be a serious international problem.
17. **Summarize** How can agricultural chemicals kill marine organisms?
18. **Draw Conclusions** Would you expect coral reefs to grow around the bases of underwater volcanoes off the coast of Alaska?
19. **Think Critically** Scientists currently are researching the use of chemicals produced by marine organisms to help fight diseases including certain types of cancer. How would ocean pollution affect the ability to discover and research new drugs?
20. **Use Scientific Illustrations** Use **Figure 8** to determine which organisms would starve if phytoplankton became extinct.
21. **Classify** each of these sea creatures as plankton, nekton, or benthos: shrimps, dolphins, sea stars, krill, coral, manatees, and algae.

Use the illustration below to answer question 22.



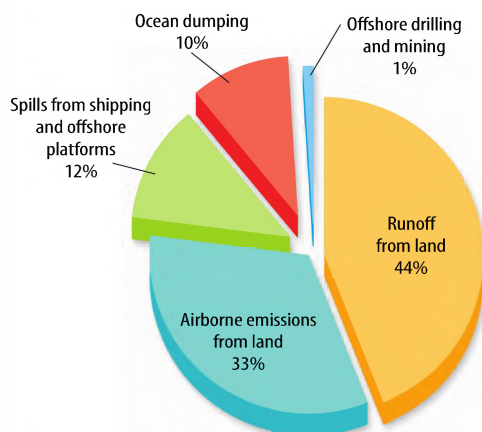
22. **Draw Conclusions** At point A an echo, a sound wave bounced off the ocean floor, took 2 s to reach the ship. It took 2.4 s at point B. Which point is deeper?

Performance Activities

23. **Graph a Profile** Previously, you made a profile of the ocean bottom along the 38° N latitude line, but it was not drawn to scale. Make a scale profile of the area between 3,600 km and 4,100 km from New Jersey. Use the scale 1 mm = 1,000 m.
24. **Poster** Choose a sea animal and research its life processes. Classify it as plankton, nekton, or benthos. Design a poster that includes all of this information.

Applying Math

Use the graph below to answer questions 25 and 26.



25. **Oil Production** If 6,600,000 tons of oil enter the world's oceans in one year, approximately what amount (in tons) is from runoff from land?
26. **Sources of Pollution** How many more times are airborne emissions from land a source of oil pollution than ocean dumping?
27. **Kelp Growth** If kelp grows at a steady rate of 30 cm per day, how long would it take to reach a length of 25 m?
28. **Seafloor Spreading** The distance between two locations across an ocean basin increases by 1.8 cm, 4.1 cm, and 3.2 cm, each year respectively. What is the average rate of separation of these locations during this time?

Part 1 Multiple Choice

Record your answers on the answer sheet provided by your teacher or on a sheet of paper.

Use the table below to answer questions 1 and 2.

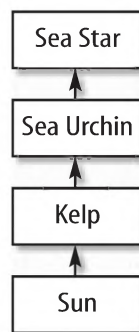
Oil Spills Around the World		
Year	Location	Spill Size (millions of liters)
1967	Land's End, England	144.7
1972	Gulf of Oman, Oman	143.5
1978	Brittany, France	260.2
1979	Bay of Campeche, Mexico	530.3
1983	South Africa	297.3
1988	Newfoundland, Canada	163.2
1991	Persian Gulf	909.0
2001	Galápagos Islands	0.6

- At which location was the largest spill?
 - Brittany, France
 - South Africa
 - Persian Gulf
 - Land's End, England
- Approximately how many more liters were spilled in the Persian Gulf than in the Bay of Campeche, Mexico?
 - 530 million liters
 - 470 million liters
 - 379 million liters
 - 279 million liters
- Why is oil entering the ocean a concern?
 - The presence of oil can reduce water quality.
 - The presence of oil in the water is not harmful to marine life.
 - Large spills can be easy to clean up.
 - The presence of oil can improve water quality.

- A rigid, wave-resistant structure built by corals from skeletal materials is
 - an estuary.
 - a reef.
 - a beach.
 - a rocky shore.

- Some bacteria undergo chemosynthesis. Chemosynthesis is
 - a process that involves using sulfur or nitrogen compounds as an energy source to produce food.
 - a process by which other organisms are consumed as a source of energy.
 - a process by which reproductive cells are released into the water.
 - a process that involves using light from the Sun as an energy source to produce food.

Use the illustration of a simple food chain below to answer questions 6 and 7.



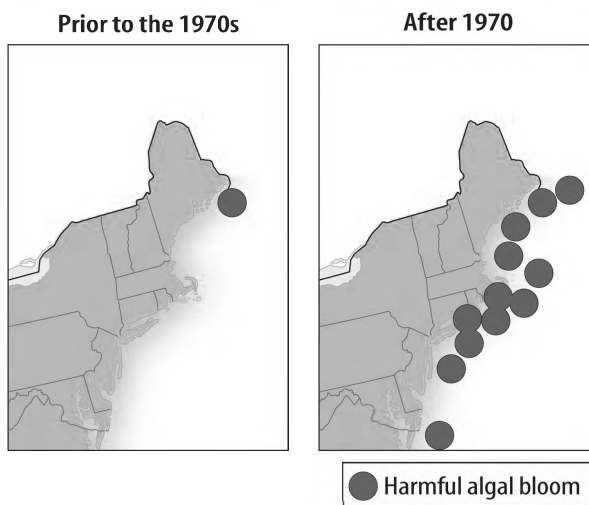
- Which is a producer?
 - the Sun
 - kelp
 - sea urchin
 - sea star
- Producers undergo which process in order to make food?
 - bioluminescence
 - respiration
 - reproduction
 - photosynthesis

Part 2 Short Response/Grid In

Record your answers on the answer sheet provided by your teacher or on a sheet of paper.

8. Define the words *producer* and *consumer*. Give two examples of each that can be found in the ocean.
9. Compare and contrast rocky shore and beach habitats.

Use the illustration below to answer question 10.



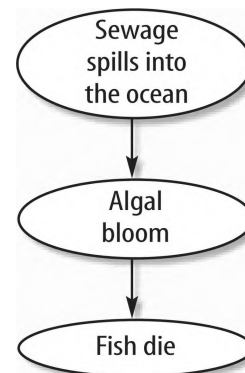
10. What changes have occurred in regard to harmful algal blooms since 1970? What do some scientists hypothesize is the cause of these changes?
11. Explain the process of seafloor spreading.
12. Ten percent of the total available energy is stored by a consumer at each level of the food chain. If 2,533 energy units are passed on to a salmon feeding on zoo-plankton, how many energy units will the salmon store?
13. Why are estuaries referred to as nurseries? What other marine habitat could also be referred to this way? Why?

Part 3 Open Ended

Record your answers on a sheet of paper.

14. Compare and contrast the Atlantic Ocean Basin with the Pacific Ocean Basin. Which basin contains many deep-sea trenches? Which basin is getting larger with time?
15. Describe how you could set up an experiment to test the effects of different amounts of light on marine producers.
16. Write a paragraph that explains why ocean pollution is a problem that people can help prevent. List examples of things people can do to help.

Use the illustration below to answer question 17.

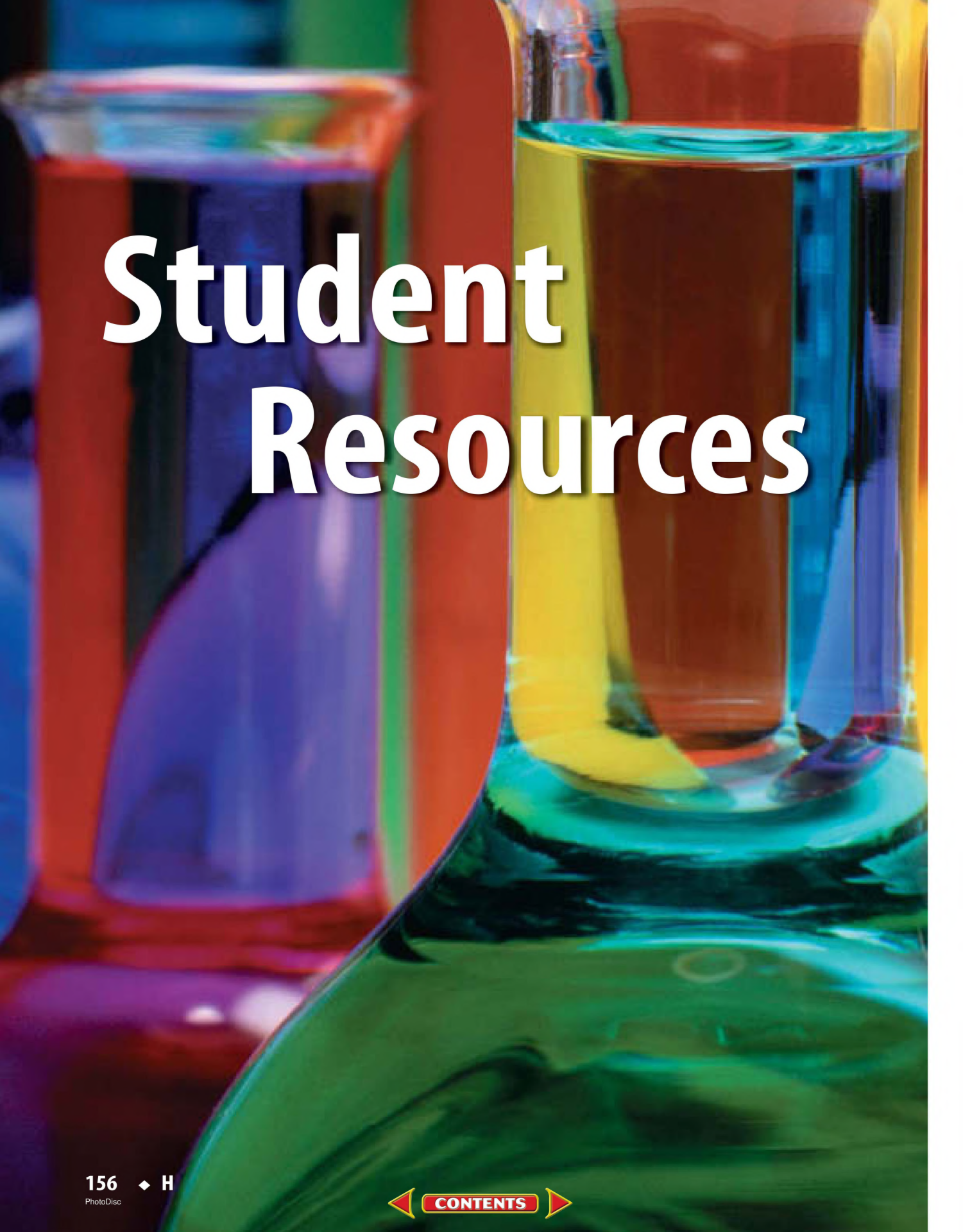


17. Explain in detail how the events are related.
18. Explain the relationship between hydrothermal vents and minerals on the ocean floor. Why are these minerals not being mined?

Test-Taking Tip

Organize Main Ideas For essay questions, spend a few minutes listing and organizing the main ideas on your scratch paper.

Question 14 Make two columns, titled *Atlantic Ocean* and *Pacific Ocean*, on your scratch paper. Fill in information about each topic in the columns.

A close-up photograph of laboratory glassware. In the foreground, a large Erlenmeyer flask is partially filled with a bright yellow liquid. Behind it, a graduated cylinder contains a red liquid. To the left, another flask holds a blue liquid. The background is a soft-focus mix of these colors, creating a vibrant, scientific atmosphere.

Student Resources

CONTENTS

Science Skill Handbook	158	Math Skill Handbook	177
Scientific Methods	158	Math Review	177
Identify a Question	158	Use Fractions	177
Gather and Organize		Use Ratios	180
Information	158	Use Decimals	180
Form the Hypothesis	161	Use Proportions	181
Test the Hypothesis	162	Use Percentages	182
Collect Data	162	Solve One-Step Equations	182
Analyze the Data	165	Use Statistics	183
Draw Conclusions	166	Use Geometry	184
Communicate	166	Science Applications	187
Safety Symbols	167	Measure in SI	187
Safety in the Science Laboratory	168	Dimensional Analysis	187
General Safety Rules	168	Precision and Significant Digits	189
Prevent Accidents	168	Scientific Notation	189
Laboratory Work	168	Make and Use Graphs	190
Laboratory Cleanup	169		
Emergencies	169	Reference Handbooks	192
Extra Try at Home Labs	170	Weather Map Symbols	192
Water World	170	Rocks	193
Compost Your Scraps	170	Minerals	194
Slow Water	171	Periodic Table of the Elements	196
That's Cold!	171	Topographic Map Symbols	198
Water Pressure	172		
Technology Skill Handbook	173	English/Spanish Glossary	199
Computer Skills	173	Index	205
Use a Word Processing Program	173	Credits	210
Use a Database	174		
Use the Internet	174		
Use a Spreadsheet	175		
Use Graphics Software	175		
Presentation Skills	176		
Develop Multimedia			
Presentations	176		
Computer Presentations	176		

Scientific Methods

Scientists use an orderly approach called the scientific method to solve problems. This includes organizing and recording data so others can understand them. Scientists use many variations in this method when they solve problems.

Identify a Question

The first step in a scientific investigation or experiment is to identify a question to be answered or a problem to be solved. For example, you might ask which gasoline is the most efficient.

Gather and Organize Information

After you have identified your question, begin gathering and organizing information. There are many ways to gather information, such as researching in a library, interviewing those knowledgeable about the subject, testing and working in the laboratory and field. Fieldwork is investigations and observations done outside of a laboratory.

Researching Information Before moving in a new direction, it is important to gather the information that already is known about the subject. Start by asking yourself questions to determine exactly what you need to know. Then you will look for the information in various reference sources, like the student is doing in **Figure 1**. Some sources may include textbooks, encyclopedias, government documents, professional journals, science magazines, and the Internet. Always list the sources of your information.

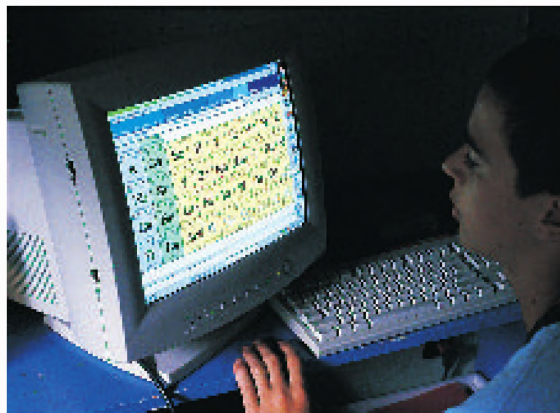


Figure 1 The Internet can be a valuable research tool.

Evaluate Sources of Information Not all sources of information are reliable. You should evaluate all of your sources of information, and use only those you know to be dependable. For example, if you are researching ways to make homes more energy efficient, a site written by the U.S. Department of Energy would be more reliable than a site written by a company that is trying to sell a new type of weatherproofing material. Also, remember that research always is changing. Consult the most current resources available to you. For example, a 1985 resource about saving energy would not reflect the most recent findings.

Sometimes scientists use data that they did not collect themselves, or conclusions drawn by other researchers. This data must be evaluated carefully. Ask questions about how the data were obtained, if the investigation was carried out properly, and if it has been duplicated exactly with the same results. Would you reach the same conclusion from the data? Only when you have confidence in the data can you believe it is true and feel comfortable using it.

Interpret Scientific Illustrations As you research a topic in science, you will see drawings, diagrams, and photographs to help you understand what you read. Some illustrations are included to help you understand an idea that you can't see easily by yourself, like the tiny particles in an atom in **Figure 2**. A drawing helps many people to remember details more easily and provides examples that clarify difficult concepts or give additional information about the topic you are studying. Most illustrations have labels or a caption to identify or to provide more information.

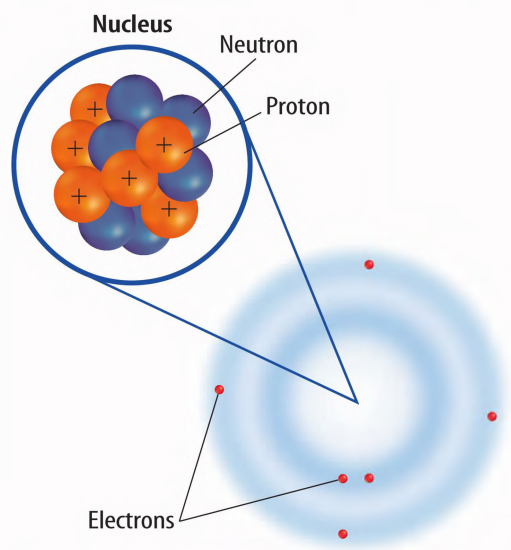


Figure 2 This drawing shows an atom of carbon with its six protons, six neutrons, and six electrons.

Concept Maps One way to organize data is to draw a diagram that shows relationships among ideas (or concepts). A concept map can help make the meanings of ideas and terms more clear, and help you understand and remember what you are studying. Concept maps are useful for breaking large concepts down into smaller parts, making learning easier.

Network Tree A type of concept map that not only shows a relationship, but how the concepts are related is a network tree, shown in **Figure 3**. In a network tree, the words are written in the ovals, while the description of the type of relationship is written across the connecting lines.

When constructing a network tree, write down the topic and all major topics on separate pieces of paper or notecards. Then arrange them in order from general to specific. Branch the related concepts from the major concept and describe the relationship on the connecting line. Continue to more specific concepts until finished.

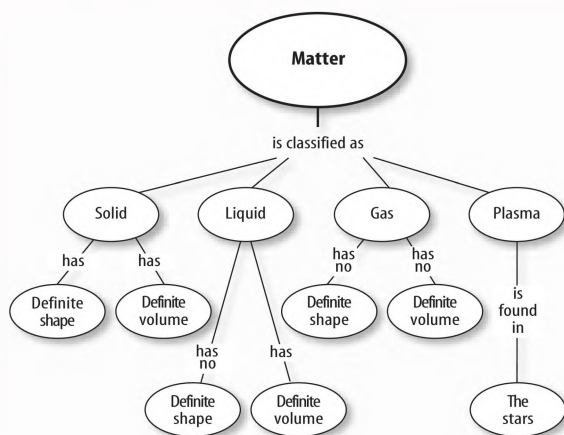


Figure 3 A network tree shows how concepts or objects are related.

Events Chain Another type of concept map is an events chain. Sometimes called a flow chart, it models the order or sequence of items. An events chain can be used to describe a sequence of events, the steps in a procedure, or the stages of a process.

When making an events chain, first find the one event that starts the chain. This event is called the initiating event. Then, find the next event and continue until the outcome is reached, as shown in **Figure 4**.

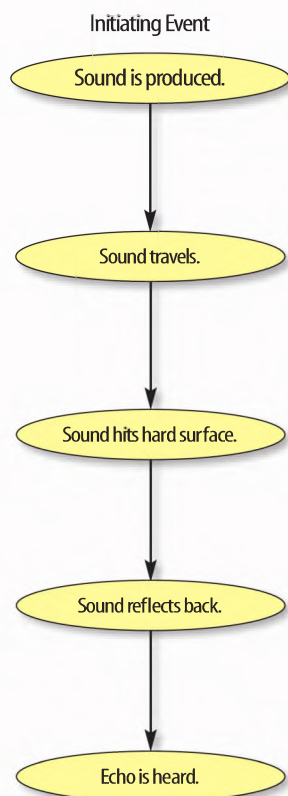


Figure 4 Events-chain concept maps show the order of steps in a process or event. This concept map shows how a sound makes an echo.

Cycle Map A specific type of events chain is a cycle map. It is used when the series of events do not produce a final outcome, but instead relate back to the beginning event, such as in **Figure 5**. Therefore, the cycle repeats itself.

To make a cycle map, first decide what event is the beginning event. This is also called the initiating event. Then list the next events in the order that they occur, with the last event relating back to the initiating event. Words can be written between the events that describe what happens from one event to the next. The number of events in a cycle map can vary, but usually contain three or more events.

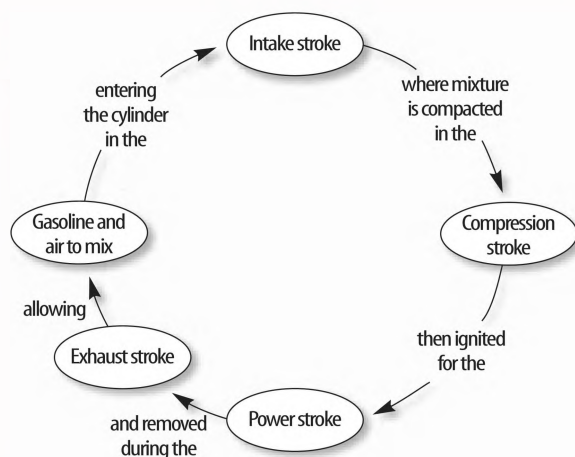


Figure 5 A cycle map shows events that occur in a cycle.

Spider Map A type of concept map that you can use for brainstorming is the spider map. When you have a central idea, you might find that you have a jumble of ideas that relate to it but are not necessarily clearly related to each other. The spider map on sound in **Figure 6** shows that if you write these ideas outside the main concept, then you can begin to separate and group unrelated terms so they become more useful.

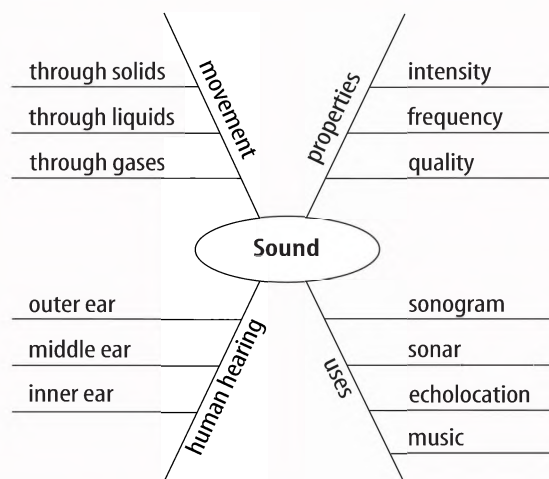


Figure 6 A spider map allows you to list ideas that relate to a central topic but not necessarily to one another.

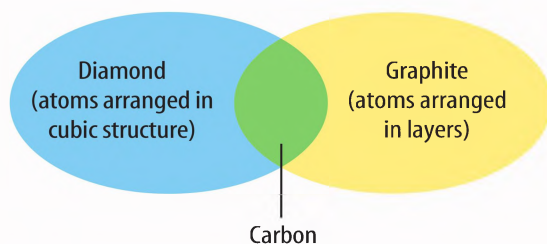


Figure 7 This Venn diagram compares and contrasts two substances made from carbon.

Venn Diagram To illustrate how two subjects compare and contrast you can use a Venn diagram. You can see the characteristics that the subjects have in common and those that they do not, shown in **Figure 7**.

To create a Venn diagram, draw two overlapping ovals that are big enough to write in. List the characteristics unique to one subject in one oval, and the characteristics of the other subject in the other oval. The characteristics in common are listed in the overlapping section.

Make and Use Tables One way to organize information so it is easier to understand is to use a table. Tables can contain numbers, words, or both.

To make a table, list the items to be compared in the first column and the characteristics to be compared in the first row. The title should clearly indicate the content of the table, and the column or row heads should be clear. Notice that in **Table 1** the units are included.

Table 1 Recyclables Collected During Week			
Day of Week	Paper (kg)	Aluminum (kg)	Glass (kg)
Monday	5.0	4.0	12.0
Wednesday	4.0	1.0	10.0
Friday	2.5	2.0	10.0

Make a Model One way to help you better understand the parts of a structure, the way a process works, or to show things too large or small for viewing is to make a model. For example, an atomic model made of a plastic-ball nucleus and pipe-cleaner electron shells can help you visualize how the parts of an atom relate to each other. Other types of models can be devised on a computer or represented by equations.

Form a Hypothesis

A possible explanation based on previous knowledge and observations is called a hypothesis. After researching gasoline types and recalling previous experiences in your family's car you form a hypothesis—our car runs more efficiently because we use premium gasoline. To be valid, a hypothesis has to be something you can test by using an investigation.

Predict When you apply a hypothesis to a specific situation, you predict something about that situation. A prediction makes a statement in advance, based on prior observation, experience, or scientific reasoning. People use predictions to make everyday decisions. Scientists test predictions by performing investigations. Based on previous observations and experiences, you might form a prediction that cars are more efficient with premium gasoline. The prediction can be tested in an investigation.

Design an Experiment A scientist needs to make many decisions before beginning an investigation. Some of these include: how to carry out the investigation, what steps to follow, how to record the data, and how the investigation will answer the question. It also is important to address any safety concerns.

Science Skill Handbook

Test the Hypothesis

Now that you have formed your hypothesis, you need to test it. Using an investigation, you will make observations and collect data, or information. This data might either support or not support your hypothesis. Scientists collect and organize data as numbers and descriptions.

Follow a Procedure In order to know what materials to use, as well as how and in what order to use them, you must follow a procedure. **Figure 8** shows a procedure you might follow to test your hypothesis.

Procedure

1. Use regular gasoline for two weeks.
2. Record the number of kilometers between fill-ups and the amount of gasoline used.
3. Switch to premium gasoline for two weeks.
4. Record the number of kilometers between fill-ups and the amount of gasoline used.

Figure 8 A procedure tells you what to do step by step.

Identify and Manipulate Variables and Controls In any experiment, it is important to keep everything the same except for the item you are testing. The one factor you change is called the independent variable. The change that results is the dependent variable. Make sure you have only one independent variable, to assure yourself of the cause of the changes you observe in the dependent variable. For example, in your gasoline experiment the type of fuel is the independent variable. The dependent variable is the efficiency.

Many experiments also have a control—an individual instance or experimental subject for which the independent variable is not changed. You can then compare the test results to the control results. To design a control you can have two cars of the same type. The control car uses regular gasoline for four weeks. After you are done with the test, you can compare the experimental results to the control results.

Collect Data

Whether you are carrying out an investigation or a short observational experiment, you will collect data, as shown in **Figure 9**. Scientists collect data as numbers and descriptions and organize it in specific ways.

Observe Scientists observe items and events, then record what they see. When they use only words to describe an observation, it is called qualitative data. Scientists' observations also can describe how much there is of something. These observations use numbers, as well as words, in the description and are called quantitative data. For example, if a sample of the element gold is described as being "shiny and very dense" the data are qualitative. Quantitative data on this sample of gold might include "a mass of 30 g and a density of 19.3 g/cm^3 ."



Figure 9 Collecting data is one way to gather information directly.



Figure 10 Record data neatly and clearly so it is easy to understand.

When you make observations you should examine the entire object or situation first, and then look carefully for details. It is important to record observations accurately and completely. Always record your notes immediately as you make them, so you do not miss details or make a mistake when recording results from memory. Never put unidentified observations on scraps of paper. Instead they should be recorded in a notebook, like the one in **Figure 10**. Write your data neatly so you can easily read it later. At each point in the experiment, record your observations and label them. That way, you will not have to determine what the figures mean when you look at your notes later. Set up any tables that you will need to use ahead of time, so you can record any observations right away. Remember to avoid bias when collecting data by not including personal thoughts when you record observations. Record only what you observe.

Estimate Scientific work also involves estimating. To estimate is to make a judgment about the size or the number of something without measuring or counting. This is important when the number or size of an object or population is too large or too difficult to accurately count or measure.

Sample Scientists may use a sample or a portion of the total number as a type of estimation. To sample is to take a small, representative portion of the objects or organisms of a population for research. By making careful observations or manipulating variables within that portion of the group, information is discovered and conclusions are drawn that might apply to the whole population. A poorly chosen sample can be unrepresentative of the whole. If you were trying to determine the rainfall in an area, it would not be best to take a rainfall sample from under a tree.

Measure You use measurements everyday. Scientists also take measurements when collecting data. When taking measurements, it is important to know how to use measuring tools properly. Accuracy also is important.

Length To measure length, the distance between two points, scientists use meters. Smaller measurements might be measured in centimeters or millimeters.

Length is measured using a metric ruler or meter stick. When using a metric ruler, line up the 0-cm mark with the end of the object being measured and read the number of the unit where the object ends. Look at the metric ruler shown in **Figure 11**. The centimeter lines are the long, numbered lines, and the shorter lines are millimeter lines. In this instance, the length would be 4.50 cm.

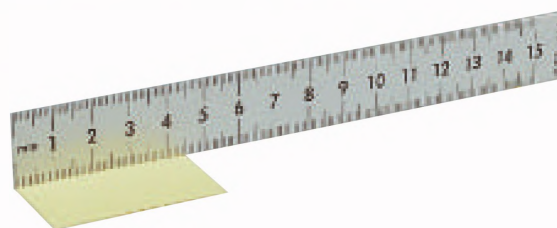


Figure 11 This metric ruler has centimeter and millimeter divisions.

Mass The SI unit for mass is the kilogram (kg). Scientists can measure mass using units formed by adding metric prefixes to the unit gram (g), such as milligram (mg). To measure mass, you might use a triple-beam balance similar to the one shown in **Figure 12**. The balance has a pan on one side and a set of beams on the other side. Each beam has a rider that slides on the beam.

When using a triple-beam balance, place an object on the pan. Slide the largest rider along its beam until the pointer drops below zero. Then move it back one notch. Repeat the process for each rider proceeding from the larger to smaller until the pointer swings an equal distance above and below the zero point. Sum the masses on each beam to find the mass of the object. Move all riders back to zero when finished.

Instead of putting materials directly on the balance, scientists often take a tare of a container. A tare is the mass of a container into which objects or substances are placed for measuring their masses. To mass objects or substances, find the mass of a clean container. Remove the container from the pan, and place the object or substances in the container. Find the mass of the container with the materials in it. Subtract the mass of the empty container from the mass of the filled container to find the mass of the materials you are using.



Figure 12 A triple-beam balance is used to determine the mass of an object.

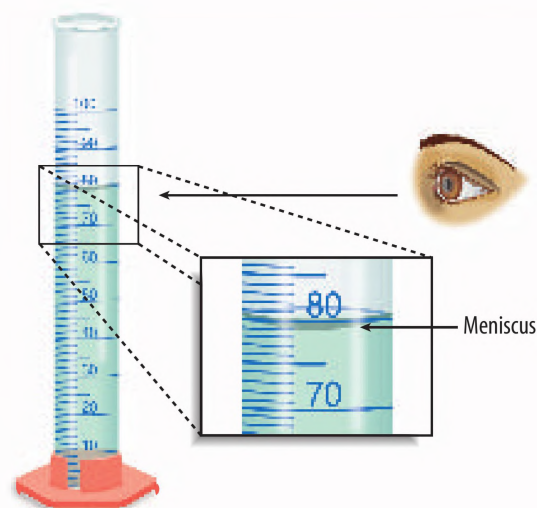


Figure 13 Graduated cylinders measure liquid volume.

Liquid Volume To measure liquids, the unit used is the liter. When a smaller unit is needed, scientists might use a milliliter. Because a milliliter takes up the volume of a cube measuring 1 cm on each side it also can be called a cubic centimeter ($\text{cm}^3 = \text{cm} \times \text{cm} \times \text{cm}$).

You can use beakers and graduated cylinders to measure liquid volume. A graduated cylinder, shown in **Figure 13**, is marked from bottom to top in milliliters. In lab, you might use a 10-mL graduated cylinder or a 100-mL graduated cylinder. When measuring liquids, notice that the liquid has a curved surface. Look at the surface at eye level, and measure the bottom of the curve. This is called the meniscus. The graduated cylinder in **Figure 13** contains 79.0 mL, or 79.0 cm^3 , of a liquid.

Temperature Scientists often measure temperature using the Celsius scale. Pure water has a freezing point of 0°C and boiling point of 100°C . The unit of measurement is degrees Celsius. Two other scales often used are the Fahrenheit and Kelvin scales.



Figure 14 A thermometer measures the temperature of an object.

Scientists use a thermometer to measure temperature. Most thermometers in a laboratory are glass tubes with a bulb at the bottom end containing a liquid such as colored alcohol. The liquid rises or falls with a change in temperature. To read a glass thermometer like the thermometer in **Figure 14**, rotate it slowly until a red line appears. Read the temperature where the red line ends.

Form Operational Definitions An operational definition defines an object by how it functions, works, or behaves. For example, when you are playing hide and seek and a tree is home base, you have created an operational definition for a tree.

Objects can have more than one operational definition. For example, a ruler can be defined as a tool that measures the length of an object (how it is used). It can also be a tool with a series of marks used as a standard when measuring (how it works).

Analyze the Data

To determine the meaning of your observations and investigation results, you will need to look for patterns in the data. Then you must think critically to determine what the data mean. Scientists use several approaches when they analyze the data they have collected and recorded. Each approach is useful for identifying specific patterns.

Interpret Data The word *interpret* means “to explain the meaning of something.” When analyzing data from an experiment, try to find out what the data show. Identify the control group and the test group to see whether or not changes in the independent variable have had an effect. Look for differences in the dependent variable between the control and test groups.

Classify Sorting objects or events into groups based on common features is called classifying. When classifying, first observe the objects or events to be classified. Then select one feature that is shared by some members in the group, but not by all. Place those members that share that feature in a subgroup. You can classify members into smaller and smaller subgroups based on characteristics. Remember that when you classify, you are grouping objects or events for a purpose. Keep your purpose in mind as you select the features to form groups and subgroups.

Compare and Contrast Observations can be analyzed by noting the similarities and differences between two more objects or events that you observe. When you look at objects or events to see how they are similar, you are comparing them. Contrasting is looking for differences in objects or events.

Science Skill Handbook

Recognize Cause and Effect A cause is a reason for an action or condition. The effect is that action or condition. When two events happen together, it is not necessarily true that one event caused the other. Scientists must design a controlled investigation to recognize the exact cause and effect.

Draw Conclusions

When scientists have analyzed the data they collected, they proceed to draw conclusions about the data. These conclusions are sometimes stated in words similar to the hypothesis that you formed earlier. They may confirm a hypothesis, or lead you to a new hypothesis.

Infer Scientists often make inferences based on their observations. An inference is an attempt to explain observations or to indicate a cause. An inference is not a fact, but a logical conclusion that needs further investigation. For example, you may infer that a fire has caused smoke. Until you investigate, however, you do not know for sure.

Apply When you draw a conclusion, you must apply those conclusions to determine whether the data supports the hypothesis. If your data do not support your hypothesis, it does not mean that the hypothesis is wrong. It means only that the result of the investigation did not support the hypothesis. Maybe the experiment needs to be redesigned, or some of the initial observations on which the hypothesis was based were incomplete or biased. Perhaps more observation or research is needed to refine your hypothesis. A successful investigation does not always come out the way you originally predicted.

Avoid Bias Sometimes a scientific investigation involves making judgments. When you make a judgment, you form an opinion. It is important to be honest and not to allow any expectations of results to bias your judgments. This is important throughout the entire investigation, from researching to collecting data to drawing conclusions.

Communicate

The communication of ideas is an important part of the work of scientists. A discovery that is not reported will not advance the scientific community's understanding or knowledge. Communication among scientists also is important as a way of improving their investigations.

Scientists communicate in many ways, from writing articles in journals and magazines that explain their investigations and experiments, to announcing important discoveries on television and radio. Scientists also share ideas with colleagues on the Internet or present them as lectures, like the student is doing in **Figure 15**.



Figure 15 A student communicates to his peers about his investigation.

SAFETY SYMBOLS		HAZARD	EXAMPLES	PRECAUTION	REMEDY
DISPOSAL		Special disposal procedures need to be followed.	certain chemicals, living organisms	Do not dispose of these materials in the sink or trash can.	Dispose of wastes as directed by your teacher.
BIOLOGICAL		Organisms or other biological materials that might be harmful to humans	bacteria, fungi, blood, unpreserved tissues, plant materials	Avoid skin contact with these materials. Wear mask or gloves.	Notify your teacher if you suspect contact with material. Wash hands thoroughly.
EXTREME TEMPERATURE		Objects that can burn skin by being too cold or too hot	boiling liquids, hot plates, dry ice, liquid nitrogen	Use proper protection when handling.	Go to your teacher for first aid.
SHARP OBJECT		Use of tools or glassware that can easily puncture or slice skin	razor blades, pins, scalpels, pointed tools, dissecting probes, broken glass	Practice common-sense behavior and follow guidelines for use of the tool.	Go to your teacher for first aid.
FUME		Possible danger to respiratory tract from fumes	ammonia, acetone, nail polish remover, heated sulfur, moth balls	Make sure there is good ventilation. Never smell fumes directly. Wear a mask.	Leave foul area and notify your teacher immediately.
ELECTRICAL		Possible danger from electrical shock or burn	improper grounding, liquid spills, short circuits, exposed wires	Double-check setup with teacher. Check condition of wires and apparatus.	Do not attempt to fix electrical problems. Notify your teacher immediately.
IRRITANT		Substances that can irritate the skin or mucous membranes of the respiratory tract	pollen, moth balls, steel wool, fiberglass, potassium permanganate	Wear dust mask and gloves. Practice extra care when handling these materials.	Go to your teacher for first aid.
CHEMICAL		Chemicals can react with and destroy tissue and other materials	bleaches such as hydrogen peroxide; acids such as sulfuric acid, hydrochloric acid; bases such as ammonia, sodium hydroxide	Wear goggles, gloves, and an apron.	Immediately flush the affected area with water and notify your teacher.
TOXIC		Substance may be poisonous if touched, inhaled, or swallowed.	mercury, many metal compounds, iodine, poinsettia plant parts	Follow your teacher's instructions.	Always wash hands thoroughly after use. Go to your teacher for first aid.
FLAMMABLE		Flammable chemicals may be ignited by open flame, spark, or exposed heat.	alcohol, kerosene, potassium permanganate	Avoid open flames and heat when using flammable chemicals.	Notify your teacher immediately. Use fire safety equipment if applicable.
OPEN FLAME		Open flame in use, may cause fire.	hair, clothing, paper, synthetic materials	Tie back hair and loose clothing. Follow teacher's instruction on lighting and extinguishing flames.	Notify your teacher immediately. Use fire safety equipment if applicable.
	Eye Safety Proper eye protection should be worn at all times by anyone performing or observing science activities.		Clothing Protection This symbol appears when substances could stain or burn clothing.		Animal Safety This symbol appears when safety of animals and students must be ensured.
					Handwashing After the lab, wash hands with soap and water before removing goggles.

Safety in the Science Laboratory

The science laboratory is a safe place to work if you follow standard safety procedures. Being responsible for your own safety helps to make the entire laboratory a safer place for everyone. When performing any lab, read and apply the caution statements and safety symbol listed at the beginning of the lab.

General Safety Rules

1. Obtain your teacher's permission to begin all investigations and use laboratory equipment.
2. Study the procedure. Ask your teacher any questions. Be sure you understand safety symbols shown on the page.
3. Notify your teacher about allergies or other health conditions which can affect your participation in a lab.
4. Learn and follow use and safety procedures for your equipment. If unsure, ask your teacher.



5. Never eat, drink, chew gum, apply cosmetics, or do any personal grooming in the lab. Never use lab glassware as food or drink containers. Keep your hands away from your face and mouth.
6. Know the location and proper use of the safety shower, eye wash, fire blanket, and fire alarm.

Prevent Accidents

1. Use the safety equipment provided to you. Goggles and a safety apron should be worn during investigations.
2. Do NOT use hair spray, mousse, or other flammable hair products. Tie back long hair and tie down loose clothing.
3. Do NOT wear sandals or other open-toed shoes in the lab.
4. Remove jewelry on hands and wrists. Loose jewelry, such as chains and long necklaces, should be removed to prevent them from getting caught in equipment.
5. Do not taste any substances or draw any material into a tube with your mouth.
6. Proper behavior is expected in the lab. Practical jokes and fooling around can lead to accidents and injury.
7. Keep your work area uncluttered.

Laboratory Work

1. Collect and carry all equipment and materials to your work area before beginning a lab.
2. Remain in your own work area unless given permission by your teacher to leave it.



3. Always slant test tubes away from yourself and others when heating them, adding substances to them, or rinsing them.
4. If instructed to smell a substance in a container, hold the container a short distance away and fan vapors towards your nose.
5. Do NOT substitute other chemicals/substances for those in the materials list unless instructed to do so by your teacher.
6. Do NOT take any materials or chemicals outside of the laboratory.
7. Stay out of storage areas unless instructed to be there and supervised by your teacher.

Laboratory Cleanup

1. Turn off all burners, water, and gas, and disconnect all electrical devices.
2. Clean all pieces of equipment and return all materials to their proper places.

3. Dispose of chemicals and other materials as directed by your teacher. Place broken glass and solid substances in the proper containers. Never discard materials in the sink.
4. Clean your work area.
5. Wash your hands with soap and water thoroughly BEFORE removing your goggles.

Emergencies

1. Report any fire, electrical shock, glassware breakage, spill, or injury, no matter how small, to your teacher immediately. Follow his or her instructions.
2. If your clothing should catch fire, STOP, DROP, and ROLL. If possible, smother it with the fire blanket or get under a safety shower. NEVER RUN.
3. If a fire should occur, turn off all gas and leave the room according to established procedures.
4. In most instances, your teacher will clean up spills. Do NOT attempt to clean up spills unless you are given permission and instructions to do so.
5. If chemicals come into contact with your eyes or skin, notify your teacher immediately. Use the eyewash or flush your skin or eyes with large quantities of water.
6. The fire extinguisher and first-aid kit should only be used by your teacher unless it is an extreme emergency and you have been given permission.
7. If someone is injured or becomes ill, only a professional medical provider or someone certified in first aid should perform first-aid procedures.

EXTRA Labs

From Your Kitchen, Junk Drawer, or Yard

1 Water World

Real-World Question

Where is Earth's water?

Possible Materials

- 5-gallon bucket
- empty milk cartons (2)
- scissors
- 500-mL measuring cup
- drinking glasses (3)
- measuring spoons
- eyedropper or spoon

Procedure

1. Fill a 5-gallon (18.93 L) bucket with water.
2. Cut the milk cartons, to create 1-L open-topped containers.
3. Measure 659 mL of water from the bucket into a milk carton. This represents all the freshwater locked in the ice caps.
4. Pour 288 mL of water from the bucket into the other milk carton. This represents all of Earth's groundwater.

5. Take 0.5 teaspoon of water from the bucket and put it into a glass. This represents all the water in freshwater lakes.
6. Use the eyedropper or spoon to place 10 drops of water into a second glass. This represents all the water in Earth's atmosphere.
7. Place 2 drops of water into the third glass. This represents all Earth's rivers.

Conclude and Apply

1. Infer what the water left in the bucket represents.
2. Calculate the percentage of Earth's water readily available for drinking, farming, and other daily uses.



2 Compost Your Scraps

Real-World Question

How can you make a compost pile to reduce water pollution?

Possible Materials

- garden shovel
- gloves
- garden rake
- wheelbarrow
- garden hoe
- food scraps
- grass clippings
- fallen tree leaves

Procedure

1. Select a 2 m × 2 m plot of land in your garden or near the edge of your property and clear the space of grass and debris.
2. Remove about 10 cm of top soil from your space and pile it on one side.

3. Put grass clippings, scraps of food, and dead leaves into the space and cover them with just enough soil to cover the area.
4. Continue to pile organic materials on the compost pile each day covering each new layer with new soil.
5. Every couple weeks, use a shovel to turn over your pile and mix up the layers.

Conclude and Apply

1. List the organic materials you put in your compost pile.
2. Infer how a compost pile reduces water pollution.
3. Infer another environmental advantage to composting.

3 Slow Water

Real-World Question

How does the water speed of groundwater compare to the water speed of a stream?

Possible Materials

- small stick
- meterstick
- tennis balls (2)
- stopwatch
- watch (with a second hand)
- calculator

Procedure

1. Measure a 10-m distance along the bank of a stream and mark off the distance with two tennis balls.
2. Drop a small stick into the center of the stream next to the first tennis ball.
3. Measure the time it takes the stick to move downstream between the two tennis balls.
4. Divide 10 m by the number of seconds it took the stick to move from the first tennis ball to the second.
5. Multiply this number by 3.6 to calculate the stream's water speed in kilometers per hour.

Conclude and Apply

1. What was the water speed of the stream?
2. The average speed of groundwater is 2 cm per day. Calculate the water speed of groundwater in kilometers per hour.
3. Infer why polluted groundwater takes much longer to clean itself than stream water.

4 That's Cold!

Real-World Question

How does salt affect the freezing temperature of water?

Possible Materials

- drinking glasses (2)
- ice cubes
- salt
- clock

Procedure

1. Place the same number of ice cubes into two different glasses. Make sure that the ice cubes have equal volume.
2. Sprinkle about 10 g of salt into one of the glasses.
3. Observe both glasses every 10 min until the ice is melted. Record the results.

Conclude and Apply

1. In which glass did the ice melt more quickly? Describe what you observed.
2. Infer which glass of water had the lower freezing point. How do you know?
3. Infer why ocean water gets colder than freshwater before freezing.



5 Water Pressure

Real-World Question

How does water pressure change with depth?

Possible Materials

- plastic gallon milk jug
- 40-cm lengths of 1/4-in plastic tubing (2)
- nail
- duct tape
- metric ruler
- water

Procedure

1. Use a nail to make two holes in one side of a plastic jug. One hole should be near the bottom of the jug, and one should be closer to the top.
2. Insert a piece of plastic tubing into each hole and seal with duct tape.
3. Take your materials outside. While holding the ends of the tubing in the air, fill the jug with water.

4. Measure how high the water rises above the hole in each piece of tubing. Also measure the depth of water in the jug at each hole.

Conclude and Apply

1. How high was the water column in each piece of tubing? Was the water column higher for the top hole or the bottom hole? Explain.
2. How do you think pressure changes with depth in the ocean? How might this affect the way submersible vehicles are designed?



Computer Skills

People who study science rely on computers, like the one in **Figure 16**, to record and store data and to analyze results from investigations. Whether you work in a laboratory or just need to write a lab report with tables, good computer skills are a necessity.

Using the computer comes with responsibility. Issues of ownership, security, and privacy can arise. Remember, if you did not author the information you are using, you must provide a source for your information. Also, anything on a computer can be accessed by others. Do not put anything on the computer that you would not want everyone to know. To add more security to your work, use a password.

Use a Word Processing Program

A computer program that allows you to type your information, change it as many times as you need to, and then print it out is called a word processing program. Word processing programs also can be used to make tables.



Figure 16 A computer will make reports neater and more professional looking.

Learn the Skill To start your word processing program, a blank document, sometimes called “Document 1,” appears on the screen. To begin, start typing. To create a new document, click the *New* button on the standard tool bar. These tips will help you format the document.

- The program will automatically move to the next line; press *Enter* if you wish to start a new paragraph.
- Symbols, called non-printing characters, can be hidden by clicking the *Show/Hide* button on your toolbar.
- To insert text, move the cursor to the point where you want the insertion to go, click on the mouse once, and type the text.
- To move several lines of text, select the text and click the *Cut* button on your toolbar. Then position your cursor in the location that you want to move the cut text and click *Paste*. If you move to the wrong place, click *Undo*.
- The spell check feature does not catch words that are misspelled to look like other words, like “cold” instead of “gold.” Always reread your document to catch all spelling mistakes.
- To learn about other word processing methods, read the user’s manual or click on the *Help* button.
- You can integrate databases, graphics, and spreadsheets into documents by copying from another program and pasting it into your document, or by using desktop publishing (DTP). DTP software allows you to put text and graphics together to finish your document with a professional look. This software varies in how it is used and its capabilities.

Use a Database

A collection of facts stored in a computer and sorted into different fields is called a database. A database can be reorganized in any way that suits your needs.

Learn the Skill A computer program that allows you to create your own database is a database management system (DBMS). It allows you to add, delete, or change information. Take time to get to know the features of your database software.

- Determine what facts you would like to include and research to collect your information.
- Determine how you want to organize the information.
- Follow the instructions for your particular DBMS to set up fields. Then enter each item of data in the appropriate field.
- Follow the instructions to sort the information in order of importance.
- Evaluate the information in your database, and add, delete, or change as necessary.

Use the Internet

The Internet is a global network of computers where information is stored and shared. To use the Internet, like the students in **Figure 17**, you need a modem to connect your computer to a phone line and an Internet Service Provider account.

Learn the Skill To access internet sites and information, use a “Web browser,” which lets you view and explore pages on the World Wide Web. Each page is its own site, and each site has its own address, called a URL. Once you have found a Web browser, follow these steps for a search (this also is how you search a database).



Figure 17 The Internet allows you to search a global network for a variety of information.

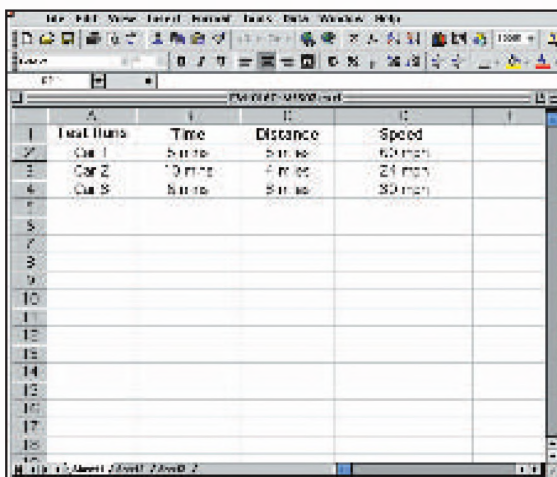
- Be as specific as possible. If you know you want to research “gold,” don’t type in “elements.” Keep narrowing your search until you find what you want.
- Web sites that end in *.com* are commercial Web sites; *.org*, *.edu*, and *.gov* are non-profit, educational, or government Web sites.
- Electronic encyclopedias, almanacs, indexes, and catalogs will help locate and select relevant information.
- Develop a “home page” with relative ease. When developing a Web site, NEVER post pictures or disclose personal information such as location, names, or phone numbers. Your school or community usually can host your Web site. A basic understanding of HTML (hypertext mark-up language), the language of Web sites, is necessary. Software that creates HTML code is called authoring software, and can be downloaded free from many Web sites. This software allows text and pictures to be arranged as the software is writing the HTML code.

Use a Spreadsheet

A spreadsheet, shown in **Figure 18**, can perform mathematical functions with any data arranged in columns and rows. By entering a simple equation into a cell, the program can perform operations in specific cells, rows, or columns.

Learn the Skill Each column (vertical) is assigned a letter, and each row (horizontal) is assigned a number. Each point where a row and column intersect is called a cell, and is labeled according to where it is located—Column A, Row 1 (A1).

- Decide how to organize the data, and enter it in the correct row or column.
- Spreadsheets can use standard formulas or formulas can be customized to calculate cells.
- To make a change, click on a cell to make it activate, and enter the edited data or formula.
- Spreadsheets also can display your results in graphs. Choose the style of graph that best represents the data.



	A	B	C	D
1	Test Runs	Time	Distance	Speed
2	Car 1	5 min	5 miles	60 mph
3	Car 2	10 min	4 miles	24 mph
4	Car 3	5 min	5 miles	60 mph
5				
6				
7				
8				
9				
10				
11				
12				
13				
14				
15				
16				
17				
18				

Figure 18 A spreadsheet allows you to perform mathematical operations on your data.

Use Graphics Software

Adding pictures, called graphics, to your documents is one way to make your documents more meaningful and exciting. This software adds, edits, and even constructs graphics. There is a variety of graphics software programs. The tools used for drawing can be a mouse, keyboard, or other specialized devices. Some graphics programs are simple. Others are complicated, called computer-aided design (CAD) software.

Learn the Skill It is important to have an understanding of the graphics software being used before starting. The better the software is understood, the better the results. The graphics can be placed in a word-processing document.

- Clip art can be found on a variety of internet sites, and on CDs. These images can be copied and pasted into your document.
- When beginning, try editing existing drawings, then work up to creating drawings.
- The images are made of tiny rectangles of color called pixels. Each pixel can be altered.
- Digital photography is another way to add images. The photographs in the memory of a digital camera can be downloaded into a computer, then edited and added to the document.
- Graphics software also can allow animation. The software allows drawings to have the appearance of movement by connecting basic drawings automatically. This is called in-betweening, or tweening.
- Remember to save often.

Presentation Skills

Develop Multimedia Presentations

Most presentations are more dynamic if they include diagrams, photographs, videos, or sound recordings, like the one shown in **Figure 19**. A multimedia presentation involves using stereos, overhead projectors, televisions, computers, and more.

Learn the Skill Decide the main points of your presentation, and what types of media would best illustrate those points.

- Make sure you know how to use the equipment you are working with.
- Practice the presentation using the equipment several times.
- Enlist the help of a classmate to push play or turn lights out for you. Be sure to practice your presentation with him or her.
- If possible, set up all of the equipment ahead of time, and make sure everything is working properly.



Figure 19 These students are engaging the audience using a variety of tools.

Computer Presentations

There are many different interactive computer programs that you can use to enhance your presentation. Most computers have a compact disc (CD) drive that can play both CDs and digital video discs (DVDs). Also, there is hardware to connect a regular CD, DVD, or VCR. These tools will enhance your presentation.

Another method of using the computer to aid in your presentation is to develop a slide show using a computer program. This can allow movement of visuals at the presenter's pace, and can allow for visuals to build on one another.

Learn the Skill In order to create multimedia presentations on a computer, you need to have certain tools. These may include traditional graphic tools and drawing programs, animation programs, and authoring systems that tie everything together. Your computer will tell you which tools it supports. The most important step is to learn about the tools that you will be using.

- Often, color and strong images will convey a point better than words alone. Use the best methods available to convey your point.
- As with other presentations, practice many times.
- Practice your presentation with the tools you and any assistants will be using.
- Maintain eye contact with the audience. The purpose of using the computer is not to prompt the presenter, but to help the audience understand the points of the presentation.

Math Review

Use Fractions

A fraction compares a part to a whole. In the fraction $\frac{2}{3}$, the 2 represents the part and is the numerator. The 3 represents the whole and is the denominator.

Reduce Fractions To reduce a fraction, you must find the largest factor that is common to both the numerator and the denominator, the greatest common factor (GCF). Divide both numbers by the GCF. The fraction has then been reduced, or it is in its simplest form.

Example Twelve of the 20 chemicals in the science lab are in powder form. What fraction of the chemicals used in the lab are in powder form?

Step 1 Write the fraction.

$$\frac{\text{part}}{\text{whole}} = \frac{12}{20}$$

Step 2 To find the GCF of the numerator and denominator, list all of the factors of each number.

Factors of 12: 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 12 (the numbers that divide evenly into 12)

Factors of 20: 1, 2, 4, 5, 10, 20 (the numbers that divide evenly into 20)

Step 3 List the common factors.

1, 2, 4.

Step 4 Choose the greatest factor in the list.

The GCF of 12 and 20 is 4.

Step 5 Divide the numerator and denominator by the GCF.

$$\frac{12 \div 4}{20 \div 4} = \frac{3}{5}$$

In the lab, $\frac{3}{5}$ of the chemicals are in powder form.

Practice Problem At an amusement park, 66 of 90 rides have a height restriction. What fraction of the rides, in its simplest form, has a height restriction?

Add and Subtract Fractions To add or subtract fractions with the same denominator, add or subtract the numerators and write the sum or difference over the denominator. After finding the sum or difference, find the simplest form for your fraction.

Example 1 In the forest outside your house, $\frac{1}{8}$ of the animals are rabbits, $\frac{3}{8}$ are squirrels, and the remainder are birds and insects. How many are mammals?

Step 1 Add the numerators.

$$\frac{1}{8} + \frac{3}{8} = \frac{(1 + 3)}{8} = \frac{4}{8}$$

Step 2 Find the GCF.

$$\frac{4}{8} \text{ (GCF, 4)}$$

Step 3 Divide the numerator and denominator by the GCF.

$$\frac{4}{4} = 1, \frac{8}{4} = 2$$

$\frac{1}{2}$ of the animals are mammals.

Example 2 If $\frac{7}{16}$ of the Earth is covered by freshwater, and $\frac{1}{16}$ of that is in glaciers, how much freshwater is not frozen?

Step 1 Subtract the numerators.

$$\frac{7}{16} - \frac{1}{16} = \frac{(7 - 1)}{16} = \frac{6}{16}$$

Step 2 Find the GCF.

$$\frac{6}{16} \text{ (GCF, 2)}$$

Step 3 Divide the numerator and denominator by the GCF.

$$\frac{6}{2} = 3, \frac{16}{2} = 8$$

$\frac{3}{8}$ of the freshwater is not frozen.

Practice Problem A bicycle rider is going 15 km/h for $\frac{4}{9}$ of his ride, 10 km/h for $\frac{2}{9}$ of his ride, and 8 km/h for the remainder of the ride. How much of his ride is he going over 8 km/h?

Unlike Denominators To add or subtract fractions with unlike denominators, first find the least common denominator (LCD). This is the smallest number that is a common multiple of both denominators. Rename each fraction with the LCD, and then add or subtract. Find the simplest form if necessary.

Example 1 A chemist makes a paste that is $\frac{1}{2}$ table salt (NaCl), $\frac{1}{3}$ sugar ($C_6H_{12}O_6$), and the rest water (H_2O). How much of the paste is a solid?

Step 1 Find the LCD of the fractions.

$$\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} \text{ (LCD, 6)}$$

Step 2 Rename each numerator and each denominator with the LCD.

$$1 \times 3 = 3, \quad 2 \times 3 = 6$$

$$1 \times 2 = 2, \quad 3 \times 2 = 6$$

Step 3 Add the numerators.

$$\frac{3}{6} + \frac{2}{6} = \frac{(3 + 2)}{6} = \frac{5}{6}$$

$\frac{5}{6}$ of the paste is a solid.

Example 2 The average precipitation in Grand Junction, CO, is $\frac{7}{10}$ inch in November, and $\frac{3}{5}$ inch in December. What is the total average precipitation?

Step 1 Find the LCD of the fractions.

$$\frac{7}{10} + \frac{3}{5} \text{ (LCD, 10)}$$

Step 2 Rename each numerator and each denominator with the LCD.

$$7 \times 1 = 7, \quad 10 \times 1 = 10$$

$$3 \times 2 = 6, \quad 5 \times 2 = 10$$

Step 3 Add the numerators.

$$\frac{7}{10} + \frac{6}{10} = \frac{(7 + 6)}{10} = \frac{13}{10}$$

$\frac{13}{10}$ inches total precipitation, or $1\frac{3}{10}$ inches.

Practice Problem On an electric bill, about $\frac{1}{8}$ of the energy is from solar energy and about $\frac{1}{10}$ is from wind power. How much of the total bill is from solar energy and wind power combined?

Example 3 In your body, $\frac{7}{10}$ of your muscle contractions are involuntary (cardiac and smooth muscle tissue). Smooth muscle makes $\frac{3}{15}$ of your muscle contractions. How many of your muscle contractions are made by cardiac muscle?

Step 1 Find the LCD of the fractions.

$$\frac{7}{10} - \frac{3}{15} \text{ (LCD, 30)}$$

Step 2 Rename each numerator and each denominator with the LCD.

$$7 \times 3 = 21, \quad 10 \times 3 = 30$$

$$3 \times 2 = 6, \quad 15 \times 2 = 30$$

Step 3 Subtract the numerators.

$$\frac{21}{30} - \frac{6}{30} = \frac{(21 - 6)}{30} = \frac{15}{30}$$

Step 4 Find the GCF.

$$\frac{15}{30} \text{ (GCF, 15)}$$

$$\frac{1}{2}$$

$\frac{1}{2}$ of all muscle contractions are cardiac muscle.

Example 4 Tony wants to make cookies that call for $\frac{3}{4}$ of a cup of flour, but he only has $\frac{1}{3}$ of a cup. How much more flour does he need?

Step 1 Find the LCD of the fractions.

$$\frac{3}{4} - \frac{1}{3} \text{ (LCD, 12)}$$

Step 2 Rename each numerator and each denominator with the LCD.

$$3 \times 3 = 9, \quad 4 \times 3 = 12$$

$$1 \times 4 = 4, \quad 3 \times 4 = 12$$

Step 3 Subtract the numerators.

$$\frac{9}{12} - \frac{4}{12} = \frac{(9 - 4)}{12} = \frac{5}{12}$$

$\frac{5}{12}$ of a cup of flour.

Practice Problem Using the information provided to you in Example 3 above, determine how many muscle contractions are voluntary (skeletal muscle).

Multiply Fractions To multiply with fractions, multiply the numerators and multiply the denominators. Find the simplest form if necessary.

Example Multiply $\frac{3}{5}$ by $\frac{1}{3}$.

Step 1 Multiply the numerators and denominators.

$$\frac{3}{5} \times \frac{1}{3} = \frac{(3 \times 1)}{(5 \times 3)} = \frac{3}{15}$$

Step 2 Find the GCF.

$$\frac{3}{15} \text{ (GCF, 3)}$$

Step 3 Divide the numerator and denominator by the GCF.

$$\frac{3}{3} = 1, \frac{15}{3} = 5$$

$$\frac{1}{5}$$

$\frac{3}{5}$ multiplied by $\frac{1}{3}$ is $\frac{1}{5}$.

Practice Problem Multiply $\frac{3}{14}$ by $\frac{5}{16}$.

Find a Reciprocal Two numbers whose product is 1 are called multiplicative inverses, or reciprocals.

Example Find the reciprocal of $\frac{3}{8}$.

Step 1 Inverse the fraction by putting the denominator on top and the numerator on the bottom.

$$\frac{8}{3}$$

The reciprocal of $\frac{3}{8}$ is $\frac{8}{3}$.

Practice Problem Find the reciprocal of $\frac{4}{9}$.

Divide Fractions To divide one fraction by another fraction, multiply the dividend by the reciprocal of the divisor. Find the simplest form if necessary.

Example 1 Divide $\frac{1}{9}$ by $\frac{1}{3}$.

Step 1 Find the reciprocal of the divisor.

The reciprocal of $\frac{1}{3}$ is $\frac{3}{1}$.

Step 2 Multiply the dividend by the reciprocal of the divisor.

$$\frac{1}{9} \div \frac{1}{3} = \frac{1}{9} \times \frac{3}{1} = \frac{(1 \times 3)}{(9 \times 1)} = \frac{3}{9}$$

Step 3 Find the GCF.

$$\frac{3}{9} \text{ (GCF, 3)}$$

Step 4 Divide the numerator and denominator by the GCF.

$$\frac{3}{3} = 1, \frac{9}{3} = 3$$

$$\frac{1}{3}$$

$\frac{1}{9}$ divided by $\frac{1}{3}$ is $\frac{1}{3}$.

Example 2 Divide $\frac{3}{5}$ by $\frac{1}{4}$.

Step 1 Find the reciprocal of the divisor.

The reciprocal of $\frac{1}{4}$ is $\frac{4}{1}$.

Step 2 Multiply the dividend by the reciprocal of the divisor.

$$\frac{3}{5} \div \frac{1}{4} = \frac{3}{5} \times \frac{4}{1} = \frac{(3 \times 4)}{(5 \times 1)} = \frac{12}{5}$$

$\frac{3}{5}$ divided by $\frac{1}{4}$ is $\frac{12}{5}$ or $2\frac{2}{5}$.

Practice Problem Divide $\frac{3}{11}$ by $\frac{7}{10}$.

Use Ratios

When you compare two numbers by division, you are using a ratio. Ratios can be written 3 to 5, 3:5, or $\frac{3}{5}$. Ratios, like fractions, also can be written in simplest form.

Ratios can represent probabilities, also called odds. This is a ratio that compares the number of ways a certain outcome occurs to the number of outcomes. For example, if you flip a coin 100 times, what are the odds that it will come up heads? There are two possible outcomes, heads or tails, so the odds of coming up heads are 50:100. Another way to say this is that 50 out of 100 times the coin will come up heads. In its simplest form, the ratio is 1:2.

Example 1 A chemical solution contains 40 g of salt and 64 g of baking soda. What is the ratio of salt to baking soda as a fraction in simplest form?

Step 1 Write the ratio as a fraction.

$$\frac{\text{salt}}{\text{baking soda}} = \frac{40}{64}$$

Step 2 Express the fraction in simplest form.

The GCF of 40 and 64 is 8.

$$\frac{40}{64} = \frac{40 \div 8}{64 \div 8} = \frac{5}{8}$$

The ratio of salt to baking soda in the sample is 5:8.

Example 2 Sean rolls a 6-sided die 6 times. What are the odds that the side with a 3 will show?

Step 1 Write the ratio as a fraction.

$$\frac{\text{number of sides with a 3}}{\text{number of sides}} = \frac{1}{6}$$

Step 2 Multiply by the number of attempts.

$$\frac{1}{6} \times 6 \text{ attempts} = \frac{6}{6} \text{ attempts} = 1 \text{ attempt}$$

1 attempt out of 6 will show a 3.

Practice Problem Two metal rods measure 100 cm and 144 cm in length. What is the ratio of their lengths in simplest form?

Use Decimals

A fraction with a denominator that is a power of ten can be written as a decimal. For example, 0.27 means $\frac{27}{100}$. The decimal point separates the ones place from the tenths place.

Any fraction can be written as a decimal using division. For example, the fraction $\frac{5}{8}$ can be written as a decimal by dividing 5 by 8. Written as a decimal, it is 0.625.

Add or Subtract Decimals When adding and subtracting decimals, line up the decimal points before carrying out the operation.

Example 1 Find the sum of 47.68 and 7.80.

Step 1 Line up the decimal places when you write the numbers.

$$\begin{array}{r} 47.68 \\ + 7.80 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Step 2 Add the decimals.

$$\begin{array}{r} 47.68 \\ + 7.80 \\ \hline 55.48 \end{array}$$

The sum of 47.68 and 7.80 is 55.48.

Example 2 Find the difference of 42.17 and 15.85.

Step 1 Line up the decimal places when you write the number.

$$\begin{array}{r} 42.17 \\ - 15.85 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Step 2 Subtract the decimals.

$$\begin{array}{r} 42.17 \\ - 15.85 \\ \hline 26.32 \end{array}$$

The difference of 42.17 and 15.85 is 26.32.

Practice Problem Find the sum of 1.245 and 3.842.

Multiply Decimals To multiply decimals, multiply the numbers like any other number, ignoring the decimal point. Count the decimal places in each factor. The product will have the same number of decimal places as the sum of the decimal places in the factors.

Example Multiply 2.4 by 5.9.

Step 1 Multiply the factors like two whole numbers.

$$24 \times 59 = 1416$$

Step 2 Find the sum of the number of decimal places in the factors. Each factor has one decimal place, for a sum of two decimal places.

Step 3 The product will have two decimal places.

$$14.16$$

The product of 2.4 and 5.9 is 14.16.

Practice Problem Multiply 4.6 by 2.2.

Divide Decimals When dividing decimals, change the divisor to a whole number. To do this, multiply both the divisor and the dividend by the same power of ten. Then place the decimal point in the quotient directly above the decimal point in the dividend. Then divide as you do with whole numbers.

Example Divide 8.84 by 3.4.

Step 1 Multiply both factors by 10.

$$3.4 \times 10 = 34, 8.84 \times 10 = 88.4$$

Step 2 Divide 88.4 by 34.

$$\begin{array}{r} 2.6 \\ 34 \overline{)88.4} \\ \underline{-68} \\ 204 \\ \underline{-204} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

8.84 divided by 3.4 is 2.6.

Practice Problem Divide 75.6 by 3.6.

Use Proportions

An equation that shows that two ratios are equivalent is a proportion. The ratios $\frac{2}{4}$ and $\frac{5}{10}$ are equivalent, so they can be written as $\frac{2}{4} = \frac{5}{10}$. This equation is a proportion.

When two ratios form a proportion, the cross products are equal. To find the cross products in the proportion $\frac{2}{4} = \frac{5}{10}$, multiply the 2 and the 10, and the 4 and the 5. Therefore $2 \times 10 = 4 \times 5$, or $20 = 20$.

Because you know that both proportions are equal, you can use cross products to find a missing term in a proportion. This is known as solving the proportion.

Example The heights of a tree and a pole are proportional to the lengths of their shadows. The tree casts a shadow of 24 m when a 6-m pole casts a shadow of 4 m. What is the height of the tree?

Step 1 Write a proportion.

$$\frac{\text{height of tree}}{\text{height of pole}} = \frac{\text{length of tree's shadow}}{\text{length of pole's shadow}}$$

Step 2 Substitute the known values into the proportion. Let h represent the unknown value, the height of the tree.

$$\frac{h}{6} = \frac{24}{4}$$

Step 3 Find the cross products.

$$h \times 4 = 6 \times 24$$

Step 4 Simplify the equation.

$$4h = 144$$

Step 5 Divide each side by 4.

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{4h}{4} &= \frac{144}{4} \\ h &= 36 \end{aligned}$$

The height of the tree is 36 m.

Practice Problem The ratios of the weights of two objects on the Moon and on Earth are in proportion. A rock weighing 3 N on the Moon weighs 18 N on Earth. How much would a rock that weighs 5 N on the Moon weigh on Earth?

Use Percentages

The word *percent* means “out of one hundred.” It is a ratio that compares a number to 100. Suppose you read that 77 percent of the Earth’s surface is covered by water. That is the same as reading that the fraction of the Earth’s surface covered by water is $\frac{77}{100}$. To express a fraction as a percent, first find the equivalent decimal for the fraction. Then, multiply the decimal by 100 and add the percent symbol.

Example Express $\frac{13}{20}$ as a percent.

Step 1 Find the equivalent decimal for the fraction.

$$\begin{array}{r} 0.65 \\ 20 \overline{)13.00} \\ \underline{12\ 0} \\ 1\ 00 \\ \underline{1\ 00} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

Step 2 Rewrite the fraction $\frac{13}{20}$ as 0.65.

Step 3 Multiply 0.65 by 100 and add the % sign.

$$0.65 \times 100 = 65 = 65\%$$

$$\text{So, } \frac{13}{20} = 65\%.$$

This also can be solved as a proportion.

Example Express $\frac{13}{20}$ as a percent.

Step 1 Write a proportion.

$$\frac{13}{20} = \frac{x}{100}$$

Step 2 Find the cross products.

$$1300 = 20x$$

Step 3 Divide each side by 20.

$$\begin{array}{r} 1300 = 20x \\ \underline{20} = \underline{20} \\ 65\% = x \end{array}$$

Practice Problem In one year, 73 of 365 days were rainy in one city. What percent of the days in that city were rainy?

Solve One-Step Equations

A statement that two things are equal is an equation. For example, $A = B$ is an equation that states that A is equal to B .

An equation is solved when a variable is replaced with a value that makes both sides of the equation equal. To make both sides equal the inverse operation is used. Addition and subtraction are inverses, and multiplication and division are inverses.

Example 1 Solve the equation $x - 10 = 35$.

Step 1 Find the solution by adding 10 to each side of the equation.

$$x - 10 = 35$$

$$x - 10 + 10 = 35 + 10$$

$$x = 45$$

Step 2 Check the solution.

$$x - 10 = 35$$

$$45 - 10 = 35$$

$$35 = 35$$

Both sides of the equation are equal, so $x = 45$.

Example 2 In the formula $a = bc$, find the value of c if $a = 20$ and $b = 2$.

Step 1 Rearrange the formula so the unknown value is by itself on one side of the equation by dividing both sides by b .

$$a = bc$$

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{bc}{b}$$

$$\frac{a}{b} = c$$

Step 2 Replace the variables a and b with the values that are given.

$$\frac{a}{b} = c$$

$$\frac{20}{2} = c$$

$$10 = c$$

Step 3 Check the solution.

$$a = bc$$

$$20 = 2 \times 10$$

$$20 = 20$$

Both sides of the equation are equal, so $c = 10$ is the solution when $a = 20$ and $b = 2$.

Practice Problem In the formula $h = gd$, find the value of d if $g = 12.3$ and $h = 17.4$.

Use Statistics

The branch of mathematics that deals with collecting, analyzing, and presenting data is statistics. In statistics, there are three common ways to summarize data with a single number—the mean, the median, and the mode.

The **mean** of a set of data is the arithmetic average. It is found by adding the numbers in the data set and dividing by the number of items in the set.

The **median** is the middle number in a set of data when the data are arranged in numerical order. If there were an even number of data points, the median would be the mean of the two middle numbers.

The **mode** of a set of data is the number or item that appears most often.

Another number that often is used to describe a set of data is the range. The **range** is the difference between the largest number and the smallest number in a set of data.

A **frequency table** shows how many times each piece of data occurs, usually in a survey. **Table 2** below shows the results of a student survey on favorite color.

Table 2 Student Color Choice		
Color	Tally	Frequency
red		4
blue		5
black		2
green		3
purple		7
yellow		6

Based on the frequency table data, which color is the favorite?

Example The speeds (in m/s) for a race car during five different time trials are 39, 37, 44, 36, and 44.

To find the mean:

Step 1 Find the sum of the numbers.

$$39 + 37 + 44 + 36 + 44 = 200$$

Step 2 Divide the sum by the number of items, which is 5.

$$200 \div 5 = 40$$

The mean is 40 m/s.

To find the median:

Step 1 Arrange the measures from least to greatest.

$$36, 37, 39, 44, 44$$

Step 2 Determine the middle measure.

$$36, 37, \underline{39}, 44, 44$$

The median is 39 m/s.

To find the mode:

Step 1 Group the numbers that are the same together.

$$44, 44, 36, 37, 39$$

Step 2 Determine the number that occurs most in the set.

$$\underline{44}, 44, 36, 37, 39$$

The mode is 44 m/s.

To find the range:

Step 1 Arrange the measures from largest to smallest.

$$44, 44, 39, 37, 36$$

Step 2 Determine the largest and smallest measures in the set.

$$\underline{44}, 44, 39, 37, \underline{36}$$

Step 3 Find the difference between the largest and smallest measures.

$$44 - 36 = 8$$

The range is 8 m/s.

Practice Problem Find the mean, median, mode, and range for the data set 8, 4, 12, 8, 11, 14, 16.

Use Geometry

The branch of mathematics that deals with the measurement, properties, and relationships of points, lines, angles, surfaces, and solids is called geometry.

Perimeter The **perimeter** (P) is the distance around a geometric figure. To find the perimeter of a rectangle, add the length and width and multiply that sum by two, or $2(l + w)$. To find perimeters of irregular figures, add the length of the sides.

Example 1 Find the perimeter of a rectangle that is 3 m long and 5 m wide.

Step 1 You know that the perimeter is 2 times the sum of the width and length.

$$P = 2(3 \text{ m} + 5 \text{ m})$$

Step 2 Find the sum of the width and length.

$$P = 2(8 \text{ m})$$

Step 3 Multiply by 2.

$$P = 16 \text{ m}$$

The perimeter is 16 m.

Example 2 Find the perimeter of a shape with sides measuring 2 cm, 5 cm, 6 cm, 3 cm.

Step 1 You know that the perimeter is the sum of all the sides.

$$P = 2 + 5 + 6 + 3$$

Step 2 Find the sum of the sides.

$$P = 2 + 5 + 6 + 3$$

$$P = 16$$

The perimeter is 16 cm.

Practice Problem Find the perimeter of a rectangle with a length of 18 m and a width of 7 m.

Practice Problem Find the perimeter of a triangle measuring 1.6 cm by 2.4 cm by 2.4 cm.

Area of a Rectangle The **area** (A) is the number of square units needed to cover a surface. To find the area of a rectangle, multiply the length times the width, or $l \times w$. When finding area, the units also are multiplied. Area is given in square units.

Example Find the area of a rectangle with a length of 1 cm and a width of 10 cm.

Step 1 You know that the area is the length multiplied by the width.

$$A = (1 \text{ cm} \times 10 \text{ cm})$$

Step 2 Multiply the length by the width. Also multiply the units.

$$A = 10 \text{ cm}^2$$

The area is 10 cm^2 .

Practice Problem Find the area of a square whose sides measure 4 m.

Area of a Triangle To find the area of a triangle, use the formula:

$$A = \frac{1}{2}(\text{base} \times \text{height})$$

The base of a triangle can be any of its sides. The height is the perpendicular distance from a base to the opposite endpoint, or vertex.

Example Find the area of a triangle with a base of 18 m and a height of 7 m.

Step 1 You know that the area is $\frac{1}{2}$ the base times the height.

$$A = \frac{1}{2}(18 \text{ m} \times 7 \text{ m})$$

Step 2 Multiply $\frac{1}{2}$ by the product of 18×7 . Multiply the units.

$$A = \frac{1}{2}(126 \text{ m}^2)$$

$$A = 63 \text{ m}^2$$

The area is 63 m^2 .

Practice Problem Find the area of a triangle with a base of 27 cm and a height of 17 cm.

Circumference of a Circle The **diameter** (d) of a circle is the distance across the circle through its center, and the **radius** (r) is the distance from the center to any point on the circle. The radius is half of the diameter. The distance around the circle is called the **circumference** (C). The formula for finding the circumference is:

$$C = 2\pi r \text{ or } C = \pi d$$

The circumference divided by the diameter is always equal to 3.1415926... This nonterminating and nonrepeating number is represented by the Greek letter π (pi). An approximation often used for π is 3.14.

Example 1 Find the circumference of a circle with a radius of 3 m.

Step 1 You know the formula for the circumference is 2 times the radius times π .

$$C = 2\pi(3)$$

Step 2 Multiply 2 times the radius.

$$C = 6\pi$$

Step 3 Multiply by π .

$$C = 19 \text{ m}$$

The circumference is 19 m.

Example 2 Find the circumference of a circle with a diameter of 24.0 cm.

Step 1 You know the formula for the circumference is the diameter times π .

$$C = \pi(24.0)$$

Step 2 Multiply the diameter by π .

$$C = 75.4 \text{ cm}$$

The circumference is 75.4 cm.

Practice Problem Find the circumference of a circle with a radius of 19 cm.

Area of a Circle The formula for the area of a circle is:

$$A = \pi r^2$$

Example 1 Find the area of a circle with a radius of 4.0 cm.

Step 1 $A = \pi(4.0)^2$

Step 2 Find the square of the radius.

$$A = 16\pi$$

Step 3 Multiply the square of the radius by π .

$$A = 50 \text{ cm}^2$$

The area of the circle is 50 cm^2 .

Example 2 Find the area of a circle with a radius of 225 m.

Step 1 $A = \pi(225)^2$

Step 2 Find the square of the radius.

$$A = 50625\pi$$

Step 3 Multiply the square of the radius by π .

$$A = 158962.5$$

The area of the circle is 158,962 m^2 .

Example 3 Find the area of a circle whose diameter is 20.0 mm.

Step 1 You know the formula for the area of a circle is the square of the radius times π , and that the radius is half of the diameter.

$$A = \pi\left(\frac{20.0}{2}\right)^2$$

Step 2 Find the radius.

$$A = \pi(10.0)^2$$

Step 3 Find the square of the radius.

$$A = 100\pi$$

Step 4 Multiply the square of the radius by π .

$$A = 314 \text{ mm}^2$$

The area is 314 mm^2 .

Practice Problem Find the area of a circle with a radius of 16 m.

Volume The measure of space occupied by a solid is the **volume** (V). To find the volume of a rectangular solid multiply the length times width times height, or $V = l \times w \times h$. It is measured in cubic units, such as cubic centimeters (cm^3).

Example Find the volume of a rectangular solid with a length of 2.0 m, a width of 4.0 m, and a height of 3.0 m.

Step 1 You know the formula for volume is the length times the width times the height.
 $V = 2.0 \text{ m} \times 4.0 \text{ m} \times 3.0 \text{ m}$

Step 2 Multiply the length times the width times the height.
 $V = 24 \text{ m}^3$

The volume is 24 m^3 .

Practice Problem Find the volume of a rectangular solid that is 8 m long, 4 m wide, and 4 m high.

To find the volume of other solids, multiply the area of the base times the height.

Example 1 Find the volume of a solid that has a triangular base with a length of 8.0 m and a height of 7.0 m. The height of the entire solid is 15.0 m.

Step 1 You know that the base is a triangle, and the area of a triangle is $\frac{1}{2}$ the base times the height, and the volume is the area of the base times the height.
 $V = \left[\frac{1}{2} (b \times h) \right] \times 15$

Step 2 Find the area of the base.
 $V = \left[\frac{1}{2} (8 \times 7) \right] \times 15$
 $V = \left(\frac{1}{2} \times 56 \right) \times 15$

Step 3 Multiply the area of the base by the height of the solid.
 $V = 28 \times 15$
 $V = 420 \text{ m}^3$

The volume is 420 m^3 .

Example 2 Find the volume of a cylinder that has a base with a radius of 12.0 cm, and a height of 21.0 cm.

Step 1 You know that the base is a circle, and the area of a circle is the square of the radius times π , and the volume is the area of the base times the height.
 $V = (\pi r^2) \times 21$
 $V = (\pi 12^2) \times 21$

Step 2 Find the area of the base.
 $V = 144\pi \times 21$
 $V = 452 \times 21$

Step 3 Multiply the area of the base by the height of the solid.
 $V = 9490 \text{ cm}^3$

The volume is 9490 cm^3 .

Example 3 Find the volume of a cylinder that has a diameter of 15 mm and a height of 4.8 mm.

Step 1 You know that the base is a circle with an area equal to the square of the radius times π . The radius is one-half the diameter. The volume is the area of the base times the height.
 $V = (\pi r^2) \times 4.8$
 $V = \left[\pi \left(\frac{1}{2} \times 15 \right)^2 \right] \times 4.8$
 $V = (\pi 7.5^2) \times 4.8$

Step 2 Find the area of the base.
 $V = 56.25\pi \times 4.8$
 $V = 176.63 \times 4.8$

Step 3 Multiply the area of the base by the height of the solid.
 $V = 847.8$

The volume is 847.8 mm^3 .

Practice Problem Find the volume of a cylinder with a diameter of 7 cm in the base and a height of 16 cm.

Science Applications

Measure in SI

The metric system of measurement was developed in 1795. A modern form of the metric system, called the International System (SI), was adopted in 1960 and provides the standard measurements that all scientists around the world can understand.

The SI system is convenient because unit sizes vary by powers of 10. Prefixes are used to name units. Look at **Table 3** for some common SI prefixes and their meanings.

Table 3 Common SI Prefixes

Prefix	Symbol	Meaning	
kilo-	k	1,000	thousand
hecto-	h	100	hundred
deka-	da	10	ten
deci-	d	0.1	tenth
centi-	c	0.01	hundredth
milli-	m	0.001	thousandth

Example How many grams equal one kilogram?

Step 1 Find the prefix *kilo* in **Table 3**.

Step 2 Using **Table 3**, determine the meaning of *kilo*. According to the table, it means 1,000. When the prefix *kilo* is added to a unit, it means that there are 1,000 of the units in a “kilounit.”

Step 3 Apply the prefix to the units in the question. The units in the question are grams. There are 1,000 grams in a kilogram.

Practice Problem Is a milligram larger or smaller than a gram? How many of the smaller units equal one larger unit? What fraction of the larger unit does one smaller unit represent?

Dimensional Analysis

Convert SI Units In science, quantities such as length, mass, and time sometimes are measured using different units. A process called dimensional analysis can be used to change one unit of measure to another. This process involves multiplying your starting quantity and units by one or more conversion factors. A conversion factor is a ratio equal to one and can be made from any two equal quantities with different units. If 1,000 mL equal 1 L then two ratios can be made.

$$\frac{1,000 \text{ mL}}{1 \text{ L}} = \frac{1 \text{ L}}{1,000 \text{ mL}} = 1$$

One can convert between units in the SI system by using the equivalents in **Table 3** to make conversion factors.

Example 1 How many cm are in 4 m?

Step 1 Write conversion factors for the units given. From **Table 3**, you know that 100 cm = 1 m. The conversion factors are

$$\frac{100 \text{ cm}}{1 \text{ m}} \text{ and } \frac{1 \text{ m}}{100 \text{ cm}}$$

Step 2 Decide which conversion factor to use. Select the factor that has the units you are converting from (m) in the denominator and the units you are converting to (cm) in the numerator.

$$\frac{100 \text{ cm}}{1 \text{ m}}$$

Step 3 Multiply the starting quantity and units by the conversion factor. Cancel the starting units with the units in the denominator. There are 400 cm in 4 m.

$$4 \text{ m} \times \frac{100 \text{ cm}}{1 \text{ m}} = 400 \text{ cm}$$

Practice Problem How many milligrams are in one kilogram? (Hint: You will need to use two conversion factors from **Table 3**.)

Table 4 Unit System Equivalents

Type of Measurement	Equivalent
Length	1 in = 2.54 cm 1 yd = 0.91 m 1 mi = 1.61 km
Mass and Weight*	1 oz = 28.35 g 1 lb = 0.45 kg 1 ton (short) = 0.91 tonnes (metric tons) 1 lb = 4.45 N
Volume	1 in ³ = 16.39 cm ³ 1 qt = 0.95 L 1 gal = 3.78 L
Area	1 in ² = 6.45 cm ² 1 yd ² = 0.83 m ² 1 mi ² = 2.59 km ² 1 acre = 0.40 hectares
Temperature	$^{\circ}\text{C} = \frac{(^{\circ}\text{F} - 32)}{1.8}$ $\text{K} = ^{\circ}\text{C} + 273$

*Weight is measured in standard Earth gravity.

Convert Between Unit Systems **Table 4** gives a list of equivalents that can be used to convert between English and SI units.

Example If a meterstick has a length of 100 cm, how long is the meterstick in inches?

Step 1 Write the conversion factors for the units given. From **Table 4**, 1 in = 2.54 cm.

$$\frac{1 \text{ in}}{2.54 \text{ cm}} \text{ and } \frac{2.54 \text{ cm}}{1 \text{ in}}$$

Step 2 Determine which conversion factor to use. You are converting from cm to in. Use the conversion factor with cm on the bottom.

$$\frac{1 \text{ in}}{2.54 \text{ cm}}$$

Step 3 Multiply the starting quantity and units by the conversion factor. Cancel the starting units with the units in the denominator. Round your answer based on the number of significant figures in the conversion factor.

$$100 \text{ cm} \times \frac{1 \text{ in}}{2.54 \text{ cm}} = 39.37 \text{ in}$$

The meterstick is 39.4 in long.

Practice Problem A book has a mass of 5 lbs. What is the mass of the book in kg?

Practice Problem Use the equivalent for in and cm (1 in = 2.54 cm) to show how 1 in³ = 16.39 cm³.

Precision and Significant Digits

When you make a measurement, the value you record depends on the precision of the measuring instrument. This precision is represented by the number of significant digits recorded in the measurement. When counting the number of significant digits, all digits are counted except zeros at the end of a number with no decimal point such as 2,050, and zeros at the beginning of a decimal such as 0.03020. When adding or subtracting numbers with different precision, round the answer to the smallest number of decimal places of any number in the sum or difference. When multiplying or dividing, the answer is rounded to the smallest number of significant digits of any number being multiplied or divided.

Example The lengths 5.28 and 5.2 are measured in meters. Find the sum of these lengths and record your answer using the correct number of significant digits.

Step 1 Find the sum.

5.28 m	2 digits after the decimal
+ 5.2 m	1 digit after the decimal
10.48 m	

Step 2 Round to one digit after the decimal because the least number of digits after the decimal of the numbers being added is 1.

The sum is 10.5 m.

Practice Problem How many significant digits are in the measurement 7,071,301 m? How many significant digits are in the measurement 0.003010 g?

Practice Problem Multiply 5.28 and 5.2 using the rule for multiplying and dividing. Record the answer using the correct number of significant digits.

Scientific Notation

Many times numbers used in science are very small or very large. Because these numbers are difficult to work with scientists use scientific notation. To write numbers in scientific notation, move the decimal point until only one non-zero digit remains on the left. Then count the number of places you moved the decimal point and use that number as a power of ten. For example, the average distance from the Sun to Mars is 227,800,000,000 m. In scientific notation, this distance is 2.278×10^{11} m. Because you moved the decimal point to the left, the number is a positive power of ten.

The mass of an electron is about 0.000 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 911 kg. Expressed in scientific notation, this mass is 9.11×10^{-31} kg. Because the decimal point was moved to the right, the number is a negative power of ten.

Example Earth is 149,600,000 km from the Sun. Express this in scientific notation.

Step 1 Move the decimal point until one non-zero digit remains on the left.

$$1.496\ 000\ 00$$

Step 2 Count the number of decimal places you have moved. In this case, eight.

Step 3 Show that number as a power of ten, 10^8 .

The Earth is 1.496×10^8 km from the Sun.

Practice Problem How many significant digits are in 149,600,000 km? How many significant digits are in 1.496×10^8 km?

Practice Problem Parts used in a high performance car must be measured to 7×10^{-6} m. Express this number as a decimal.

Practice Problem A CD is spinning at 539 revolutions per minute. Express this number in scientific notation.

Make and Use Graphs

Data in tables can be displayed in a graph—a visual representation of data. Common graph types include line graphs, bar graphs, and circle graphs.

Line Graph A line graph shows a relationship between two variables that change continuously. The independent variable is changed and is plotted on the x -axis. The dependent variable is observed, and is plotted on the y -axis.

Example Draw a line graph of the data below from a cyclist in a long-distance race.

Table 5 Bicycle Race Data	
Time (h)	Distance (km)
0	0
1	8
2	16
3	24
4	32
5	40

- Step 1** Determine the x -axis and y -axis variables. Time varies independently of distance and is plotted on the x -axis. Distance is dependent on time and is plotted on the y -axis.
- Step 2** Determine the scale of each axis. The x -axis data ranges from 0 to 5. The y -axis data ranges from 0 to 40.
- Step 3** Using graph paper, draw and label the axes. Include units in the labels.
- Step 4** Draw a point at the intersection of the time value on the x -axis and corresponding distance value on the y -axis. Connect the points and label the graph with a title, as shown in **Figure 20**.

Distance v. Time

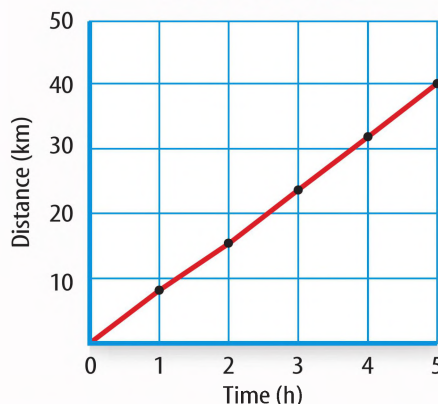


Figure 20 This line graph shows the relationship between distance and time during a bicycle ride.

Practice Problem A puppy's shoulder height is measured during the first year of her life. The following measurements were collected: (3 mo, 52 cm), (6 mo, 72 cm), (9 mo, 83 cm), (12 mo, 86 cm). Graph this data.

Find a Slope The slope of a straight line is the ratio of the vertical change, rise, to the horizontal change, run.

$$\text{Slope} = \frac{\text{vertical change (rise)}}{\text{horizontal change (run)}} = \frac{\text{change in } y}{\text{change in } x}$$

Example Find the slope of the graph in **Figure 20**.

- Step 1** You know that the slope is the change in y divided by the change in x .
- $$\text{Slope} = \frac{\text{change in } y}{\text{change in } x}$$
- Step 2** Determine the data points you will be using. For a straight line, choose the two sets of points that are the farthest apart.
- $$\text{Slope} = \frac{(40-0) \text{ km}}{(5-0) \text{ hr}}$$
- Step 3** Find the change in y and x .
- $$\text{Slope} = \frac{40 \text{ km}}{5 \text{ h}}$$
- Step 4** Divide the change in y by the change in x .
- $$\text{Slope} = \frac{8 \text{ km}}{\text{h}}$$

The slope of the graph is 8 km/h.

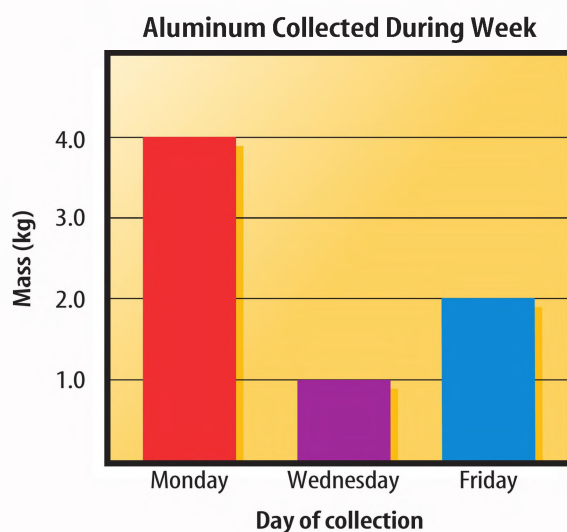
Bar Graph To compare data that does not change continuously you might choose a bar graph. A bar graph uses bars to show the relationships between variables. The x -axis variable is divided into parts. The parts can be numbers such as years, or a category such as a type of animal. The y -axis is a number and increases continuously along the axis.

Example A recycling center collects 4.0 kg of aluminum on Monday, 1.0 kg on Wednesday, and 2.0 kg on Friday. Create a bar graph of this data.

Step 1 Select the x -axis and y -axis variables. The measured numbers (the masses of aluminum) should be placed on the y -axis. The variable divided into parts (collection days) is placed on the x -axis.

Step 2 Create a graph grid like you would for a line graph. Include labels and units.

Step 3 For each measured number, draw a vertical bar above the x -axis value up to the y -axis value. For the first data point, draw a vertical bar above Monday up to 4.0 kg.



Practice Problem Draw a bar graph of the gases in air: 78% nitrogen, 21% oxygen, 1% other gases.

Circle Graph To display data as parts of a whole, you might use a circle graph. A circle graph is a circle divided into sections that represent the relative size of each piece of data. The entire circle represents 100%, half represents 50%, and so on.

Example Air is made up of 78% nitrogen, 21% oxygen, and 1% other gases. Display the composition of air in a circle graph.

Step 1 Multiply each percent by 360° and divide by 100 to find the angle of each section in the circle.

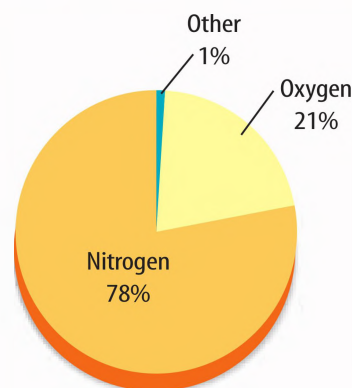
$$78\% \times \frac{360^\circ}{100} = 280.8^\circ$$

$$21\% \times \frac{360^\circ}{100} = 75.6^\circ$$

$$1\% \times \frac{360^\circ}{100} = 3.6^\circ$$

Step 2 Use a compass to draw a circle and to mark the center of the circle. Draw a straight line from the center to the edge of the circle.

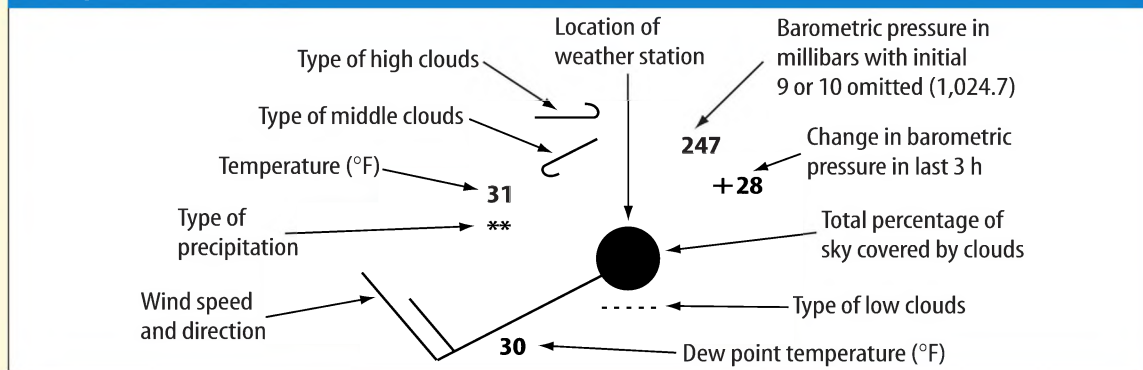
Step 3 Use a protractor and the angles you calculated to divide the circle into parts. Place the center of the protractor over the center of the circle and line the base of the protractor over the straight line.



Practice Problem Draw a circle graph to represent the amount of aluminum collected during the week shown in the bar graph to the left.

Weather Map Symbols

Sample Station Model



Sample Plotted Report at Each Station

Precipitation	Wind Speed and Direction	Sky Coverage	Some Types of High Clouds	
≡ Fog	○ 0 calm	○ No cover	— Scattered cirrus	
★ Snow	↙ 1–2 knots	① 1/10 or less	— Dense cirrus in patches	
● Rain	✓ 3–7 knots	☉ 2/10 to 3/10	— Veil of cirrus covering entire sky	
⚡ Thunderstorm	✓ 8–12 knots	☉ 4/10	— Cirrus not covering entire sky	
⋄ Drizzle	✓ 13–17 knots	☉ —		
▽ Showers	✓ 18–22 knots	☉ 6/10		
	✓ 23–27 knots	☉ 7/10		
	✓ 48–52 knots	☉ Overcast with openings		
	1 knot = 1.852 km/h	● Completely overcast		
Some Types of Middle Clouds		Some Types of Low Clouds		Fronts and Pressure Systems
∠ Thin altostratus layer	☉ Cumulus of fair weather	(H) or High (L) or Low	Center of high- or low-pressure system	
∠ Thick altostratus layer	☉ Stratocumulus	▲▲▲▲ Cold front		
✓ Thin altostratus in patches	----- Fractocumulus of bad weather	▲▲▲▲ Warm front		
✓ Thin altostratus in bands	— Stratus of fair weather	▲▲▲▲ Occluded front		
		▲▲▲▲ Stationary front		

Rocks

Rocks		
Rock Type	Rock Name	Characteristics
Igneous (intrusive)	Granite	Large mineral grains of quartz, feldspar, hornblende, and mica. Usually light in color.
	Diorite	Large mineral grains of feldspar, hornblende, and mica. Less quartz than granite. Intermediate in color.
	Gabbro	Large mineral grains of feldspar, augite, and olivine. No quartz. Dark in color.
Igneous (extrusive)	Rhyolite	Small mineral grains of quartz, feldspar, hornblende, and mica, or no visible grains. Light in color.
	Andesite	Small mineral grains of feldspar, hornblende, and mica or no visible grains. Intermediate in color.
	Basalt	Small mineral grains of feldspar, augite, and possibly olivine or no visible grains. No quartz. Dark in color.
	Obsidian	Glassy texture. No visible grains. Volcanic glass. Fracture looks like broken glass.
	Pumice	Frothy texture. Floats in water. Usually light in color.
Sedimentary (detrital)	Conglomerate	Coarse grained. Gravel or pebble-size grains.
	Sandstone	Sand-sized grains 1/16 to 2 mm.
	Siltstone	Grains are smaller than sand but larger than clay.
	Shale	Smallest grains. Often dark in color. Usually platy.
Sedimentary (chemical or organic)	Limestone	Major mineral is calcite. Usually forms in oceans and lakes. Often contains fossils.
	Coal	Forms in swampy areas. Compacted layers of organic material, mainly plant remains.
Sedimentary (chemical)	Rock Salt	Commonly forms by the evaporation of seawater.
Metamorphic (foliated)	Gneiss	Banding due to alternate layers of different minerals, of different colors. Parent rock often is granite.
	Schist	Parallel arrangement of sheetlike minerals, mainly micas. Forms from different parent rocks.
	Phyllite	Shiny or silky appearance. May look wrinkled. Common parent rocks are shale and slate.
	Slate	Harder, denser, and shinier than shale. Common parent rock is shale.
Metamorphic (nonfoliated)	Marble	Calcite or dolomite. Common parent rock is limestone.
	Soapstone	Mainly of talc. Soft with greasy feel.
	Quartzite	Hard with interlocking quartz crystals. Common parent rock is sandstone.

Minerals

Minerals					
Mineral (formula)	Color	Streak	Hardness	Breakage Pattern	Uses and Other Properties
Graphite (C)	black to gray	black to gray	1–1.5	basal cleavage (scales)	pencil lead, lubricants for locks, rods to control some small nuclear reactions, battery poles
Galena (PbS)	gray	gray to black	2.5	cubic cleavage perfect	source of lead, used for pipes, shields for X rays, fishing equipment sinkers
Hematite (Fe ₂ O ₃)	black or reddish-brown	reddish-brown	5.5–6.5	irregular fracture	source of iron; converted to pig iron, made into steel
Magnetite (Fe ₃ O ₄)	black	black	6	conchoidal fracture	source of iron, attracts a magnet
Pyrite (FeS ₂)	light, brassy, yellow	greenish-black	6–6.5	uneven fracture	fool's gold
Talc (Mg ₃ Si ₄ O ₁₀ (OH) ₂)	white, greenish	white	1	cleavage in one direction	used for talcum powder, sculptures, paper, and tabletops
Gypsum (CaSO ₄ •2H ₂ O)	colorless, gray, white, brown	white	2	basal cleavage	used in plaster of paris and dry wall for building construction
Sphalerite (ZnS)	brown, reddish-brown, greenish	light to dark brown	3.5–4	cleavage in six directions	main ore of zinc; used in paints, dyes, and medicine
Muscovite (KAl ₃ Si ₃ O ₁₀ (OH) ₂)	white, light gray, yellow, rose, green	colorless	2–2.5	basal cleavage	occurs in large, flexible plates; used as an insulator in electrical equipment, lubricant
Biotite (K(Mg,Fe) ₃ (AlSi ₃ O ₁₀)(OH) ₂)	black to dark brown	colorless	2.5–3	basal cleavage	occurs in large, flexible plates
Halite (NaCl)	colorless, red, white, blue	colorless	2.5	cubic cleavage	salt; soluble in water; a preservative

Minerals

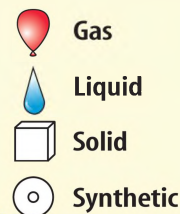
Minerals					
Mineral (formula)	Color	Streak	Hardness	Breakage Pattern	Uses and Other Properties
Calcite (CaCO ₃)	colorless, white, pale blue	colorless, white	3	cleavage in three directions	fizzes when HCl is added; used in cements and other building materials
Dolomite (CaMg (CO ₃) ₂)	colorless, white, pink, green, gray, black	white	3.5–4	cleavage in three directions	concrete and cement; used as an ornamental building stone
Fluorite (CaF ₂)	colorless, white, blue, green, red, yellow, purple	colorless	4	cleavage in four directions	used in the manufacture of optical equipment; glows under ultraviolet light
Hornblende (CaNa) ₂₋₃ (Mg,Al, Fe) ₅ -(Al,Si) ₂ Si ₆ O ₂₂ (OH) ₂)	green to black	gray to white	5–6	cleavage in two directions	will transmit light on thin edges; 6-sided cross section
Feldspar (KAlSi ₃ O ₈) (NaAl Si ₃ O ₈), (CaAl ₂ Si ₂ O ₈)	colorless, white to gray, green	colorless	6	two cleavage planes meet at 90° angle	used in the manufacture of ceramics
Augite ((Ca,Na) (Mg,Fe,Al) (Al,Si) ₂ O ₆)	black	colorless	6	cleavage in two directions	square or 8-sided cross section
Olivine ((Mg,Fe) ₂ SiO ₄)	olive, green	none	6.5–7	conchoidal fracture	gemstones, refractory sand
Quartz (SiO ₂)	colorless, various colors	none	7	conchoidal fracture	used in glass manufacture, electronic equipment, radios, computers, watches, gemstones

PERIODIC TABLE OF THE ELEMENTS

Columns of elements are called groups. Elements in the same group have similar chemical properties.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Hydrogen 1 H 1.008								
Lithium 3 Li 6.941	Beryllium 4 Be 9.012							
Sodium 11 Na 22.990	Magnesium 12 Mg 24.305							
Potassium 19 K 39.098	Calcium 20 Ca 40.078	Scandium 21 Sc 44.956	Titanium 22 Ti 47.867	Vanadium 23 V 50.942	Chromium 24 Cr 51.996	Manganese 25 Mn 54.938	Iron 26 Fe 55.845	Cobalt 27 Co 58.933
Rubidium 37 Rb 85.468	Strontium 38 Sr 87.62	Yttrium 39 Y 88.906	Zirconium 40 Zr 91.224	Niobium 41 Nb 92.906	Molybdenum 42 Mo 95.94	Technetium 43 Tc (98)	Ruthenium 44 Ru 101.07	Rhodium 45 Rh 102.906
Cesium 55 Cs 132.905	Barium 56 Ba 137.327	Lanthanum 57 La 138.906	Hafnium 72 Hf 178.49	Tantalum 73 Ta 180.948	Tungsten 74 W 183.84	Rhenium 75 Re 186.207	Osmium 76 Os 190.23	Iridium 77 Ir 192.217
Francium 87 Fr (223)	Radium 88 Ra (226)	Actinium 89 Ac (227)	Rutherfordium 104 Rf (261)	Dubnium 105 Db (262)	Seaborgium 106 Sg (266)	Bohrium 107 Bh (264)	Hassium 108 Hs (277)	Meitnerium 109 Mt (268)

Element — Hydrogen
Atomic number — 1
Symbol — H
Atomic mass — 1.008
State of matter — Gas



The first three symbols tell you the state of matter of the element at room temperature. The fourth symbol identifies elements that are not present in significant amounts on Earth. Useful amounts are made synthetically.

Rows of elements are called periods. Atomic number increases across a period.

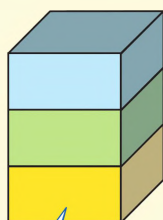
The arrow shows where these elements would fit into the periodic table. They are moved to the bottom of the table to save space.

Lanthanide series

Actinide series

Cerium 58 Ce 140.116	Praseodymium 59 Pr 140.908	Neodymium 60 Nd 144.24	Promethium 61 Pm (145)	Samarium 62 Sm 150.36
Thorium 90 Th 232.038	Protactinium 91 Pa 231.036	Uranium 92 U 238.029	Neptunium 93 Np (237)	Plutonium 94 Pu (244)

The number in parentheses is the mass number of the longest-lived isotope for that element.



Metal
Metalloid
Nonmetal

The color of an element's block tells you if the element is a metal, nonmetal, or metalloid.



Visit bookh.msscience.com for updates to the periodic table.

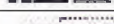
10			11			12			13	14	15	16	17	18
Nickel 28 Ni 58.693			Copper 29 Cu 63.546			Zinc 30 Zn 65.409			Aluminum 13 Al 26.982	Silicon 14 Si 28.086	Phosphorus 15 P 30.974	Sulfur 16 S 32.065	Chlorine 17 Cl 35.453	Argon 18 Ar 39.948
Palladium 46 Pd 106.42	Silver 47 Ag 107.868	Cadmium 48 Cd 112.411	Indium 49 In 114.818	Tin 50 Sn 118.710	Antimony 51 Sb 121.760	Tellurium 52 Te 127.60	Iodine 53 I 126.904	Xenon 54 Xe 131.293	Boron 5 B 10.811	Carbon 6 C 12.011	Nitrogen 7 N 14.007	Oxygen 8 O 15.999	Fluorine 9 F 18.998	Neon 10 Ne 20.180
Platinum 78 Pt 195.078	Gold 79 Au 196.967	Mercury 80 Hg 200.59	Thallium 81 Tl 204.383	Lead 82 Pb 207.2	Bismuth 83 Bi 208.980	Polonium 84 Po (209)	Astatine 85 At (210)	Radon 86 Rn (222)	Gallium 31 Ga 69.723	Germanium 32 Ge 72.64	Arsenic 33 As 74.922	Selenium 34 Se 78.96	Bromine 35 Br 79.904	Krypton 36 Kr 83.798
Darmstadtium 110 Ds (281)	Unununium * 111 Uuu (272)	Ununbium * 112 Uub (285)			Ununquadium * 114 Uuq (289)			** 116						

* The names and symbols for elements 111–114 are temporary. Final names will be selected when the elements' discoveries are verified.

** Elements 116 and 118 were thought to have been created. The claim was retracted because the experimental results could not be repeated.

Europium 63 Eu 151.964	Gadolinium 64 Gd 157.25	Terbium 65 Tb 158.925	Dysprosium 66 Dy 162.500	Holmium 67 Ho 164.930	Erbium 68 Er 167.259	Thulium 69 Tm 168.934	Ytterbium 70 Yb 173.04	Lutetium 71 Lu 174.967
Americium 95 Am (243)	Curium 96 Cm (247)	Berkelium 97 Bk (247)	Californium 98 Cf (251)	Einsteinium 99 Es (252)	Fermium 100 Fm (257)	Mendelevium 101 Md (258)	Nobelium 102 No (259)	Lawrencium 103 Lr (262)

Topographic Map Symbols

Topographic Map Symbols	
 Primary highway, hard surface	 Index contour
 Secondary highway, hard surface	 Supplementary contour
 Light-duty road, hard or improved surface	 Intermediate contour
 Unimproved road	 Depression contours
 Railroad: single track	
 Railroad: multiple track	 Boundaries: national
 Railroads in juxtaposition	 State
	 County, parish, municipal
 Buildings	 Civil township, precinct, town, barrio
 Schools, church, and cemetery	 Incorporated city, village, town, hamlet
 Buildings (barn, warehouse, etc.)	 Reservation, national or state
 Wells other than water (labeled as to type)	 Small park, cemetery, airport, etc.
 Tanks: oil, water, etc. (labeled only if water)	 Land grant
 Located or landmark object; windmill	 Township or range line, U.S. land survey
 Open pit, mine, or quarry; prospect	 Township or range line, approximate location
 Marsh (swamp)	
 Wooded marsh	 Perennial streams
 Woods or brushwood	 Elevated aqueduct
 Vineyard	 Water well and spring
 Land subject to controlled inundation	 Small rapids
 Submerged marsh	 Large rapids
 Mangrove	 Intermittent lake
 Orchard	 Intermittent stream
 Scrub	 Aqueduct tunnel
 Urban area	 Glacier
	 Small falls
x7369 Spot elevation	 Large falls
670 Water elevation	 Dry lake bed

Cómo usar el glosario en español:

1. Busca el término en inglés que desees encontrar.
2. El término en español, junto con la definición, se encuentran en la columna de la derecha.

Pronunciation Key

Use the following key to help you sound out words in the glossary.

a.....back (BAK)
 ay.....day (DAY)
 ah.....father (FAH thur)
 ow.....flower (FLOW ur)
 ar.....car (CAR)
 e.....less (LES)
 ee.....leaf (LEEF)
 ih.....trip (TRIHP)
 i (i + con + e) ..idea (i DEE uh)
 oh.....go (GOH)
 aw.....soft (SAWFT)
 or.....orbit (OR buht)
 oy.....coin (COYN)
 oo.....foot (FOOT)

ew.....food (FEWD)
 yoo.....pure (PYOOR)
 yew.....few (FYEW)
 uh.....comma (CAH muh)
 u (+ con).....rub (RUB)
 sh.....shelf (SHELF)
 ch.....nature (NAY chur)
 g.....gift (GIHFT)
 j.....gem (JEM)
 ing.....sing (SING)
 zh.....vision (VIH zhun)
 k.....cake (KAYK)
 s.....seed, cent (SEED, SENT)
 z.....zone, raise (ZOHN, RAYZ)

English

A

Español

abyssal (uh BIH sul) plain: flat seafloor area from 4,000 m to 6,000 m below the ocean surface, formed by the deposition of sediments. (p. 129)

aquifer: layer of rock or sediment that allows ground-water to flow easily through its connecting openings. (pp. 23, 70)

artesian well: well drilled into a pressurized aquifer that supplies fresh water, usually without pumping. (p. 73)

planicie abisal: área plana del suelo marino entre 4000 y 6000 metros por debajo de la superficie del océano, formada por deposición de sedimentos. (p. 129)

acuífero: capa de rocas o sedimentos que permite al agua subterránea fluir con facilidad a través de sus aperturas de conexión. (pp. 23, 70)

pozo artesano: pozo perforado en un acuífero a presión, el cual suministra agua dulce usualmente sin necesidad de bombeo. (p. 73)

B

basin: low area on Earth in which an ocean formed when the area filled with water from torrential rains. (p. 101)

benthos: marine plants and animals that live on or in the ocean floor. (p. 139)

bioremediation: process that uses living organisms to remove pollutants. (p. 83)

braided stream: stream with many interlacing channels that are separated by bars and islands. (p. 38)

breaker: collapsing ocean wave that forms in shallow water and breaks onto the shore. (p. 111)

depresión: área baja de la Tierra en la que se forma un océano cuando el área es llenada con agua proveniente de lluvias torrenciales. (p. 101)

bentos: plantas y animales marinos que subsisten o viven en el suelo del océano. (p. 139)

bioremediación: proceso que utiliza organismos vivos para eliminar contaminantes. (p. 83)

río de cauces interconectados: corriente con numerosos canales entrecruzados separados por barras e islas. (p. 38)

rompiente: ola oceánica colapsante que se forma en aguas poco profundas y rompe en la orilla. (p. 111)

C

cave: underground chamber that opens to the surface and is formed when slightly acidic groundwater dissolves compounds in rock. (p. 85)

chemosynthesis (kee moh SIHN thuh sihs): food-making process using sulfur or nitrogen compounds, rather than light energy from the Sun, that is used by bacteria living near hydrothermal vents. (p. 137)

cohesion: attraction between water molecules that allows water to form drops and keeps it liquid at room temperature. (p. 12)

continental shelf: gradually sloping end of a continent that extends beneath the ocean. (p. 128)

continental slope: ocean basin feature that dips steeply down from the continental shelf. (p. 129)

Coriolis effect: causes moving air and water to turn left in the southern hemisphere and turn right in the northern hemisphere due to Earth's rotation. (p. 105)

crest: highest point of a wave. (p. 110)

cueva: cámara subterránea que se abre en la superficie y se forma cuando aguas subterráneas ligeramente ácidas disuelven compuestos de las rocas. (p. 85)

quimiosíntesis: proceso de producción de alimentos que utiliza compuestos de azufre o nitrógeno en lugar de energía solar; este proceso es utilizado por las bacterias que viven cerca de los conductos hidrotérmicos. (p. 137)

cohesión: atracción entre moléculas de agua que permite al agua formar gotas y mantenerse en estado líquido a temperatura ambiente. (p. 12)

plataforma continental: extremo gradualmente inclinado de un continente que se extiende por debajo del océano. (p. 128)

talud continental: depresión oceánica característica que se sumerge abruptamente desde la plataforma continental. (p. 129)

efecto de Coriolis: causa el movimiento del aire y el agua hacia la izquierda en el hemisferio sur y hacia la derecha en el hemisferio norte, debido a la rotación de la Tierra. (p. 105)

cresta: el punto más alto de una ola. (p. 110)

D

density: amount of mass in a unit of volume. (p. 11)

density current: circulation pattern in the ocean that forms when a mass of more dense seawater sinks beneath less dense seawater. (p. 107)

drainage basin: specific area that is drained by a stream. (p. 38)

dripstone: deposits of calcium carbonate, such as stalagmites and stalactites, that are left behind when groundwater drips and evaporates inside caves. (p. 87)

densidad: cantidad de masa en una unidad de volumen. (p. 11)

corriente de densidad: patrón de circulación en el océano que se forma cuando una masa de agua marina más densa se hunde por debajo del agua marina menos densa. (p. 107)

cuenca fluvial: área específica drenada por una corriente. (p. 38)

concreciones calcáreas: depósitos de carbonato de calcio, tales como las estalagmitas y estalactitas, producto del goteo y evaporación de las aguas subterráneas dentro de las cuevas. (p. 87)

E

estuary: area where a river meets the ocean that contains a mixture of freshwater and ocean water and provides an important habitat to many marine organisms. (p. 142)

estuario: área donde un río desemboca en el océano, contiene una mezcla de agua dulce y agua salada y proporciona un hábitat importante para muchos organismos marinos. (p. 142)

eutrophication/mid-ocean ridge

eutrophication (yew troh fuh KAY shun): natural process that ultimately turns a lake into dry land over time through an increase in sediment, nutrients, and organisms. (p. 47)

eutrofización/surco en mitad del océano

eutrofización: proceso natural que con el tiempo conduce a que un lago se convierta en terreno seco mediante el incremento de sedimentos, nutrientes y organismos. (p. 47)

F

floodplain: flat, level area of a stream valley covered by water during a flood. (p. 42)

planicie aluvial/de inundaciones: área plana y llana del valle de una corriente cubierta por agua durante una inundación. (p. 42)

G

geyser: hot spring that erupts periodically and shoots water and steam into the air. (p. 74)

groundwater: water that soaks into the ground and collects in pores and empty spaces and is an important source of drinking water. (pp. 23, 68)

géiser: manantial caliente que hace erupción periódicamente y dispara agua y vapor al aire. (p. 74)

agua subterránea: agua que se difunde en el suelo y se acumula en poros y espacios vacíos siendo una fuente importante de agua potable. (pp. 23, 68)

I

irrigation: process of piping water from somewhere else to grow crops. (p. 17)

irrigación: proceso de conducir agua mediante tuberías de un punto a otro para cultivar. (p. 17)

L

load: Earth material that is carried by a stream, either suspended in the water, dissolved in the water, or rolling, bouncing, or sliding along the stream bed. (p. 39)

carga: material terrestre arrastrado por una corriente, ya sea suspendido o disuelto en el agua, rodando, rebotando o deslizándose junto con la corriente. (p. 39)

M

meandering stream: twisting stream with many curves that erodes on the outside of meanders and deposits sediment on the inside of meanders. (p. 37)

mid-ocean ridge: area where new ocean floor is formed when lava erupts through cracks in Earth's crust. (p. 130)

corriente meandriforme: corriente que sinuosa con numerosas curvas que erosiona la parte exterior de los meandros y deposita sedimentos en su interior. (p. 37)

surco en mitad del océano: área donde se forma el nuevo suelo oceánico cuando la lava brota a través de grietas en la corteza terrestre. (p. 130)

Glossary/Glosario

nekton/reef

necton/arrecife

N

nekton: marine organisms that actively swim in the ocean. (p. 138)

nonpoint source pollution: pollution that enters water from a large area and cannot be traced to a single location. (p. 55)

nutrients: compounds, such as nitrates, that are released into lake water and used by plants, algae, and some plankton for growth. (p. 47)

necton: organismos marinos que nadan activamente en el océano. (p. 138)

contaminación sin fuente puntual: contaminación del agua proveniente de un área extensa y cuyo origen no se puede señalar en un solo lugar. (p. 55)

nutrientes: compuestos, como los nitratos, depositados en aguas lacustres y utilizados por plantas, algas y parte del plankton para su crecimiento. (p. 47)

P

permeable: describes rock that allows groundwater to flow through it because it contains many well-connected pores or cracks. (p. 69)

photosynthesis: food-making process using light energy from the Sun, carbon dioxide, and water. (p. 135)

plankton: marine organisms that drift in ocean currents. (p. 138)

point bar: pile of sand and gravel deposited by a meandering stream on the inside of a meander. (p. 37)

point source pollution: pollution that enters water from a specific location and can be controlled or treated before it enters a body of water. (p. 54)

polar molecule: molecule with a slightly positive end and a slightly negative end as a result of electrons being shared unequally. (p. 12)

pollution: introduction of wastes to an environment, such as sewage and chemicals, that can damage organisms. (pp. 76, 143)

porosity: volume of pore space divided by the volume of a rock or soil sample. (p. 69)

permeable: describe aquellas rocas que permiten el flujo de las aguas subterráneas debido a que contienen numerosos poros o grietas comunicados entre sí. (p. 69)

fotosíntesis: proceso de producción de alimentos usando la energía luminosa del sol, dióxido de carbono y agua. (p. 135)

plankton: organismos marinos que se desplazan a la deriva en las corrientes oceánicas. (p. 138)

punto de barra: acumulación de arena y gravilla depositada por una corriente meandriforme en la parte interna de un meandro. (p. 37)

contaminación de fuente puntual: contaminación del agua proveniente de un lugar específico y que puede ser controlada o tratada antes de que entre a una masa de agua. (p. 54)

molécula polar: molécula con un extremo ligeramente positivo y otro ligeramente negativo como resultado de compartir electrones de manera desigual. (p. 12)

contaminación: introducción de desechos al medio ambiente, como aguas residuales y químicos, que pueden causar daño a los organismos. (pp. 76, 143)

porosidad: volumen del espacio que ocupan los poros dividido entre el volumen total de una muestra de rocas o suelo. (p. 69)

R

reef: rigid, wave-resistant, ocean margin habitat built by corals from skeletal materials and calcium. (p. 142)

arrecife: hábitat de los márgenes oceánicos, rígido y resistente a las olas; es generado por los corales a partir de materiales esqueléticos y calcio. (p. 142)

runoff/trench

escorrentia/fosa

runoff: rainwater that does not sink into the ground, but instead runs across Earth's surface until it flows into a stream. (p. 36)

escorrentia: agua de lluvia que no es absorbida por el suelo sino que recorre la superficie terrestre hasta incorporarse a una corriente. (p. 36)

S

salinity (say LIHN ut ee): a measure of the amount of salts dissolved in seawater. (p. 102)

sanitary landfill: landfill lined with plastic or concrete, or located in clay-rich soil; reduces the chance of hazardous wastes leaking into the surrounding soil and groundwater. (p. 78)

sinkhole: depression formed when a cave's roof is no longer able to support the land above it and the land collapses into the cave. (p. 88)

soil water: groundwater that is trapped within openings in the soil and keeps plants and crops alive. (p. 23)

specific heat: amount of energy needed to raise the temperature of 1 kg of a substance by 1°C. (p. 14)

stream discharge: volume of water that flows through a stream in a certain amount of time. (p. 41)

subsidence: occurs when water no longer fills the pores in an aquifer and the land above the aquifer sinks. (p. 84)

surface current: wind-powered ocean current that moves water horizontally, parallel to Earth's surface, and moves only the upper few hundred meters of seawater. (p. 104)

surface water: all the freshwater at Earth's surface, including streams, rivers, lakes, and reservoirs. (p. 24)

salinidad: medida de la cantidad de sales disueltas en el agua marina. (p. 102)

relleno sanitario: relleno limitado con plástico o concreto o ubicado en suelos ricos en arcillas; reduce la posibilidad de que los residuos peligrosos se filtren hacia los suelos vecinos o aguas subterráneas. (p. 78)

hundimiento: depresión formada cuando el techo de una cueva ya no es capaz de sostener la tierra de la parte superior y ésta se colapsa hacia el interior de la cueva. (p. 88)

agua del suelo: agua subterránea atrapadas en las aberturas del suelo y que mantiene vivas a las plantas y cultivos. (p. 23)

calor específico: cantidad de energía necesaria para subir un grado centígrado la temperatura de un kilogramo de una sustancia. (p. 14)

descarga fluvial: volumen de agua que fluye a través de una corriente durante cierto periodo de tiempo. (p. 41)

subsistencia: ocurre cuando el agua deja de llenar los poros de un acuífero y la tierra encima del acuífero se hunde. (p. 84)

corriente de superficie: corriente oceánica empujada por el viento que mueve el agua horizontalmente, paralela a la superficie de la Tierra, y mueve sólo unos cientos de metros de la parte superior del agua marina. (p. 104)

agua de la superficie: toda el agua dulce de la superficie terrestre, incluyendo arroyos, ríos, lagunas y embalses. (p. 24)

T

tidal range: the difference between the level of the ocean at high tide and the level at low tide. (p. 114)

tide: daily rise and fall in sea level caused, for the most part, by the interaction of gravity in the Earth-Moon system. (p. 113)

trench: long, narrow, steep-sided depression in the seafloor formed where one crustal plate sinks beneath another. (p. 131)

rango de la marea: la diferencia entre el nivel del océano en marea alta y marea baja. (p. 114)

marea: elevación y disminución diaria del nivel del mar causada, en su mayor parte, por la interacción de la gravedad en el sistema Tierra-Luna. (p. 113)

fosa: depresión estrecha, alargada y de bordes pronunciados en el suelo marino; se forma cuando una placa de la corteza se hunde por debajo de otra. (p. 131)

Glossary/Glosario

trough/zone of saturation

trough (TRAWF): lowest point of a wave. (p. 110)

turnover: the mixing of surface water with bottom water, circulating oxygen and nutrients throughout a lake. (p. 49)

seno/zona de saturación

seno: el punto más bajo de una ola. (p. 110)

volcamiento: mezcla del agua de la superficie con el agua del fondo, haciendo circular oxígeno y nutrientes en un lago. (p. 49)

U

upwelling: vertical circulation in the ocean that brings deep, cold water to the ocean surface. (p. 107)

solevantamiento: circulación vertical en el océano que trae el agua fría de las profundidades a la superficie del océano. (p. 107)

W

water conservation: the careful use and protection of water. (p. 20)

water table: top surface of the zone of saturation; also the surface of lakes and rivers. (p. 70)

wave: rhythmic movement that carries energy through matter or space; can be described by its crest, trough, wavelength, and wave height. (p. 110)

wetland: area of land covered by water during part of the year and recognizable by the types of soils and plants that grow there. (p. 51)

conservación del agua: uso y protección cuidadosa del agua. (p. 20)

nivel freático/agua de superficie: superficie superior de la zona de saturación; también define la superficie de los lagos y ríos. (p. 70)

ola: movimiento rítmico que lleva energía a través de la materia o del espacio; puede describirse por su cresta, valle, longitud de la ola y altura de la ola. (p. 110)

humedal: área de terreno cubierta por agua durante una parte del año y reconocible por los tipos de suelos y las plantas que allí crecen. (p. 51)

Z

zone of saturation: in an aquifer, the zone where the pores are full of water. (p. 70)

zona de saturación: en un acuífero, la zona donde los poros están llenos de agua. (p. 70)

Italic numbers = illustration/photo Bold numbers = vocabulary term
lab = indicates a page on which the entry is used in a lab
act = indicates a page on which the entry is used in an activity

A

Abyssal plain, 129, 129
Acid(s), and cave formation, 86, 86
Activities, Applying Math, 47, 108, 130; Applying Science, 13, 81; Integrate Careers, 79; Integrate Chemistry, 9, 56, 71, 86, 108, 138; Integrate Life Science, 10, 14, 102, 115, 135, 136; Integrate Physics, 39; Science Online, 9, 42, 45, 70, 73, 81, 87, 105, 113, 129, 140; Standardized Test Practice, 32–33, 64–65, 96–97, 124–125, 154–155
Agriculture, and floods, 43; and groundwater pollution, 81; protecting crops in, 10; water for, 17, 17, 20, 20, 28
Aircraft carriers, 19, 19
Algae, 102; blooms of, 144, 146, 146; in food chain, 136, 136; in lakes, 47
Alluvial fan, 41, 41
Amphibians, in freshwater, 46
Amplitude, 110
Animal(s), bottom-dwelling, 139; camouflage of, 135; feedlots for, 81; habitats of, 139–142, 140, 141, 142; in wetlands, 52
Applying Math, Bay Depth, 47; Calculating a Feature's Slope, 130; Density of Salt Water, 108; Chapter Review, 31, 63, 95, 123, 153; Section Reviews, 25, 43, 57, 103, 133
Applying Science, Can stormwater be cleaned and reused for irrigation?, 81; How does water behave in space?, 13
Applying Skills, 14, 21, 49, 53, 68, 109, 116, 142, 147
Aquifer(s), 23, 23, 28, 70, 70, 83, 83, 84, 90–91 *lab*

Aquitards, 70
Artesian springs, 73
Artesian wells, 73, 73, 75 *lab*
Atmosphere, water in, 24

B

Bacteria, in lakes, 46
Baikal, Lake, 44
Barges, 19, 19
Basin(s), 101, 101; drainage, 38, 38; ocean, 128–129, 128–129, 129 *act*, 131
Bay of Fundy, 114, 115
Beaches, 140, 140, 140 *act*
Benthos, 139
Biological amplification, 144
Bioluminescence, 138
Bioremediation, 83, 83
Bloom, algal, 144, 146, 146
Bog, 52, 52
Boiling point, of water, 9 *act*, 15 *lab*
Bond(s), in water, 13, 13
Bottom-dwelling animals, 139
Braided streams, 38, 38
Breakers, 111

C

Caddo Lake State Park, Texas, 51
Calcium, 102
Caldera, 45
Camouflage, 135
Canary Abyssal Plain, 129
Canyon(s), formation of, 40, 40
Carbon dioxide, in oceans, 101
Carbonic acid, 86
Cave(s), 85, 92, 92; formation of, 85, 85–87, 86, 87, 87 *act*; karst areas, 89, 89
Cave bacon, 87
Cave pearls, 87
Ceylon, jungle of, 120, 120

Channelization, 43, 43
Chemical pollution, 144
Chemosynthesis, 137
Clean Water Act, 56
Cobalt, 133
Cohesion, 7 *lab*, 12, 12
Colorado River, 45, 45
Communicating Your Data, 27, 50, 59, 75, 91, 119, 134, 149
Composting, 57, 57
Computers, in agriculture, 20
Conservation, of water, 20, 20–21, 21, 26–27 *lab*
Consumers, 135, 136, 144
Container ships, 19, 19
Continental divide, 38, 38
Continental shelf, 128, 129, 132, 137
Continental slope, 129, 129, 130 *act*
Cooling, by evaporation, 10
Copepods, 136, 136
Copper, 133
Coral reef, 142, 144
Coriolis effect, 105, 105
Crest, 110, 110
Crops, protecting, 10
Current(s), density, 107 *lab*, 107–109, 109; surface, 99 *lab*, 104, 104–106, 105, 105 *act*, 106
Cycles, water, 24–25, 25
Cypress swamps, 51, 51

D

Dam, 43, 45, 45, 45 *act*
Data Source, 148
Delta, 41, 41
Density, 11, 11, 11 *lab*; calculating, 108 *act*
Density currents, 107 *lab*, 107–109, 109
Deposition, by streams, 40, 40–41, 41

Desalination

Desalination, 102–103, 103
Design Your Own, Conserving Water, 26–27; Sink or Float?, 118–119
Diamond, 132, 132
Diatoms, 102, 138, 138
Dilution, evaluating, 55 *lab*
Diseases, and contaminated water, 79
Divide, 38, 38
Drainage basins, 38, 38
Drilling, 72, 72
Dripstone, 87, 87
Dungeness River, 41

E

Ecosystems, in oceans, 136, 136, 142, 142, 144
Element(s), removal from oceans, 102
Energy, in food chain, 136, 136; and waves, 110, 110, 111, 111, 112
Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), 56, 82
Equation(s), one-step, 47 *act*
Erosion, of beaches, 140 *act*; by streams, 37, 37, 39, 39–40, 40
Estuaries, 142, 142
Eutrophication, 47, 48
Evaporation, 10, 10; latent heat of, 10, 10
Everest, Mt., 131

F

Farming. *See* Agriculture
Feedlots, 81
Fertilizers, 77
Finger Lakes, 44
Fish, deep-sea, 138, 139; in lakes, 46, 47; in wetlands, 52
Fish kill, 144, 144
Flooding, 41–43, 42 *act*
Floodplain, 42, 42, 43
Foldables, 7, 35, 67, 99, 127
Food chains, 136, 136
Food webs, 136, 137
Franklin, Benjamin, 105
Freezing point, 108; of water, 9, 10, 15 *lab*

Freshwater, 34–59; density of, 11; importance of, 28; in lakes, 35 *lab*, 44–50; as percentage of water on Earth, 36, 36; pollution of, 54, 54–57, 55, 56; in reservoirs, 22–24, 23, 45, 45, 56; in streams, 36–43; temperature of, 35 *lab*

Freshwater ecosystems, wetlands, 51, 51–53, 52, 53

Fusion, heat of, 9–10

G

Gas, natural, 100, 132
Geyser, 72, 74
Gold, 132, 132
Gravity, and tides, 115, 115
Great Lakes, 44, 60, 60
Groundwater, 23, 23, 66–91, 68; aquifers, 70, 70, 83, 83, 84, 84, 90–91 *lab*; and cave formation, 85, 85–87, 86, 87; cleanup of, 82, 82–83, 83; and disappearing streams, 88, 88; flow of, 71; geysers, 74, 74; importance of, 68, 68; infiltration of ground by, 67 *lab*; and karst areas, 89, 89; pollution of, 76, 76–81, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81 *act*, 84, 84, 90–91 *lab*; shortages of, 83, 83; and sinkholes, 88, 88; springs, 72, 72–73, 73 *act*; and subsidence, 84; and water table, 70, 71; wells, 72, 72–73, 73, 75 *lab*

Groundwater interactions, 70 *act*
Gulf Stream, 104, 105

H

Habitat(s), on ocean margins, 139–142, 140, 141, 142
Halite, 102. *See also* Salt(s)
Heat, of evaporation, 10, 20; of fusion, 9–10; latent, 9 *act*, 9–10, 10, 15 *lab*; specific, 14; of vaporization, 10, 10
Herbicides, 55, 55, 144
High tide, 113, 114, 114, 115, 115, 116, 116
Hoover Dam, 45, 45, 45 *act*
Hot springs, 72

Lab(s)

I

Ice, 10, 13, 13, 15 *lab*, 22
Industrial wastes, 80, 80
Insecticides, 55, 55, 144
Integrate Career, local health department official, 79
Integrate Chemistry, bioluminescence, 138; effects of groundwater, 86; freezing point, 108; hard water, 71; latent heat of fusion, 9; polluted sediment, 56
Integrate Life Science, energy in the food chain, 136; life in the tidal zone, 115; photosynthesis, 135; protecting crops, 10; removal of elements, 102; specific heat, 14
Integrate Physics, load, 39
Intertidal zone, 141, 141
Ion(s), 101, 102
Iron, 133
Irrigation, 17, 17, 20, 20, 28, 81 *act*

J

Joule (unit of work), 9
Journal, 6, 34, 66, 98, 126
Jungle of Ceylon, 120, 120

K

Karst areas, 89, 89
Kelp, 100
Krill, 100

L

Lab(s), Adopt a Stream, 58–59; Artesian Wells, 75; Design Your Own, 26–27, 118–119; Discovering Latent Heat, 15; Lake Nutrients, 50; Launch Labs, 7, 35, 67, 99, 127; Mapping the Ocean Floor, 134; MiniLabs, 11, 39, 69, 111, 139; Pollution in Motion, 90–91; Try at Home MiniLabs, 18, 55, 80, 107, 131; Use the Internet, 148–149

Lakes

Lakes, 24, 44–50; effect of water temperature on nutrients in, 35 *lab*; eutrophication of, 47, 48; formation of, 44, 44–45, 45; human-made, 45, 45; life in, 46, 46, 47; natural, 44, 44, 45; nutrients in, 35 *lab*, 47–49, 48, 50 *lab*; sediments in, 47, 48; testing for pollution, 56; turnover in, 49, 49; underground, 66

Landfills, sanitary, 78, 78

Latent heat, 9 *act*, 9–10, 10, 15 *lab*; of evaporation, 10, 10; of fusion, 9–10; of vaporization, 10, 10

Launch Labs, How do lake nutrients mix?, 35; Groundwater Infiltration, 67; How deep is the ocean?, 127; What causes ocean currents?, 99; What is cohesion?, 7

Lava, pillow, 130

Law(s), on water pollution, 56

Lead, 144

Lechuguilla Cave, 92, 92

Levee, 42

Life, and water, 16, 16

Life processes, 135–137, 136, 137

Limestone, 132; permeability of, 69

Limpets, 115

Load, 39, 39

Low tide, 113, 114, 114, 115, 115, 116

Luciferin, 138

M

Mammoth Cave, 92, 92

Manatees, 138, 139

Manganese, 132, 133, 133

Manure, 81

Map(s), of ocean floor, 128, 134 *lab*

Mariana Trench, 131, 131

Marsh, 52, 52

Mead, Lake, 45

Meandering streams, 37, 37

Measurement, of pore space, 67 *lab*, 69 *lab*; units of, 9

Melting point, of water, 9, 15 *lab*

Mercury, 144

Mid-ocean ridge, 129, 130, 130, 131 *lab*, 133

Mineral(s), from ocean, 131–133, 132, 133, 148–149 *lab*

MiniLabs, Examining Density Differences, 11; Measuring Pore Space, 69; Modeling Stream Flow, 39; Modeling Water Particle Movement, 111; Observing Plankton, 139

Mining, as source of groundwater pollution, 77, 80

Mining wastes, 80

Mississippi River, 38

Molecules, polar, 12, 12

Mont-Saint-Michel, 114

Moon(s), and tides, 115, 115

Mulching, 20, 20

N

National Geographic Visualizing, Eutrophication, 48; The Rocky Shore Habitat, 141; Shipping, 19; Sources of Groundwater Pollution, 77; Wave Movement, 112

Natural gas, 100, from ocean floor, 132

Neap tides, 116, 116

Nekton, 138, 139

Nickel, 133

Nitrogen, in oceans, 101

Nonpoint source pollution, 55, 55, 76, 76

North Atlantic Deep Water, 108, 109

Nutrients, 47; in lakes, 35 *lab*, 47–49, 48, 50 *lab*; removing, in wetlands, 53, 53

O

Ocean(s), 98–119; density currents in, 107 *lab*, 107–109, 109; ecosystems in, 136, 136, 142, 142, 144; habitats on margins of, 139–142, 140, 141, 142; importance of, 100, 100; origin of, 101, 101;

One-step equations

pollution of, 143, 143–147, 144, 145, 146; surface currents in, 99 *lab*, 104, 104–106, 105, 105 *act*, 106; tides of, 113, 113 *act*, 113–116, 114, 115, 116; upwelling in, 107, 107

Ocean basins, 128–129, 128–129, 129 *act*, 131

Ocean floor, 128–134; basins in, 128–129, 128–129, 129 *act*, 131; mapping, 128, 134 *lab*; mid-ocean ridges in, 129, 130, 130, 131 *lab*, 133; resources from, 131–133, 132, 133, 148–149 *lab*; seafloor spreading, 130; trenches in, 129, 131, 131

Ocean life, 135–142; and bioluminescence, 138; and chemosynthesis, 137; ecosystems of, 136, 136, 142, 142, 144; and food chains, 136, 136; and life processes, 135–137, 136, 137; and photosynthesis, 135, 137; reproduction of, 137, 137; strange creatures, 150, 150

Ocean water, 101–103; composition of, 101–102, 102; deep, 108; desalination of, 102–103, 103; freezing point of, 108; groundwater pollution from, 84, 84; intermediate, 109, 109; salt in, 22, 101–103, 102, 118–119 *lab*; temperature of, 106, 106

Ocean waves, 110–113; amplitude of, 110; breakers, 111; crest of, 110, 110; formation of, 113, 113, 117 *lab*; height of, 110, 110, 112, 113; motion of, 111, 111, 111 *lab*, 112; tidal bores, 115; and tides, 113–116, 114, 115, 116; trough of, 110, 110; wavelength of, 110, 110, 112

Octopus, 135

Oil, 100

Oil (petroleum), from ocean floor, 132; and pollution, 145, 145

Oil tankers, 19, 19

Old Faithful, 74, 74

One-step equations, 47 *act*

Oops! Accidents in Science

Oops! Accidents in Science,
Strange Creatures from the
Ocean Floor, 150
Oxygen, in oceans, 101

P

Pacific Basin, 131
Permeable rock, 69
Pesticides, 55
Petroleum. *See* Oil (petroleum)
Pfiesteria, 146
Phosphorite, 132, 132
Photosynthesis, 135, 137
Phytoplankton, 47, 138, 138
Pillow lava, 130
Placer deposits, 132
Plankton, 46, 47, 47, 138, 138,
139 *lab*, 146
Plant(s), in lakes, 46;
photosynthesis in, 135, 137;
and water, 16, 16, 21, 21; in
wetlands, 52, 52
Platte River, 38, 38
Point bar, 37
Point source pollution, 54, 54, 76
Polarity, of water molecules, 12,
12, 13
Polar molecules, 12, 12
Pollution, 76, 143; chemical,
144; cleanup of, 82, 82–83, 83;
controlling, 147, 147; effects of,
146, 146; of freshwater, 54, 54–57,
55, 56, 57; of groundwater, 76,
76–81, 77, 78, 79, 80, 84, 84,
90–91 *lab*; law on, 56; mercury
contamination, 144; nonpoint
source, 55, 55, 86, 86; of oceans,
143, 143–147, 144, 145, 146; from
oil spills, 145, 145; point source,
54, 54, 76; reducing, 55–57, 56,
57; from silt, 146, 146; from solid
waste, 145, 145; sources of, 54,
54–55, 55, 143, 143–146, 144,
145, 146; testing for, 56; of water,
18, 23
Polychlorinated biphenyls
(PCBs), 144
Ponds, 24; polluted, 80, 80
Pore space, measuring, 67 *lab*,
69 *lab*; variations in, 69, 69

Porosity, 69
Producers, 135, 136, 137
Production, water for, 17, 17

R

Reading Check, 8, 10, 11, 12, 14,
17, 18, 20, 23, 24, 37, 39, 40, 44,
45, 51, 52, 55, 56, 69, 72, 74, 80,
83, 87, 100, 101, 109, 111, 113,
129, 130, 136, 138, 144, 147
Real-World Questions, 15, 26, 50,
58, 75, 90, 118, 134, 148
Recreation, water for, 18, 18
Recycling, of water, 22–25
Red tide, 146
Reef, 142, 144
Reproduction, of ocean life,
137, 137
Reservoirs, 23, 24; formation of,
45, 45; testing for pollution, 56
Resources, from ocean, 131–133,
132, 133, 148–149 *lab*
Ridge, mid-ocean, 129, 130, 130,
131 *lab*, 133
River(s), 24, 34. *See also* Stream(s);
testing for pollution, 56
Rivers and Harbors Act of 1899, 56
Rock(s), permeable, 69; pore space
in. *See* Pore space
Rocky shoreline, 140, 141
Runoff, 36, 55, 55

S

Salinity, 102, 102, 118–119 *lab*
Salt(s), and freezing point of
water, 108; in oceans, 22,
101–103, 102, 118–119 *lab*; as
source of groundwater
pollution, 76, 77, 79, 81 *act*
Saltwater ecosystems, coral reefs,
142, 144; estuaries, 142, 142
Sanitary landfills, 78, 78
Saturation, zone of, 70
Science and History, History of
the Great Lakes, 60
Science and Language Arts, The
Jungle of Ceylon, 120, 120
Science and Society, Not a Drop
to Drink, 28

Storage tanks

Science Online, beach erosion, 140;
caves, 87; flood control, 42;
groundwater interactions, 70;
groundwater pollution, 81;
Hoover Dam, 45; latent heat, 9;
ocean basins, 129; ocean currents,
105; springs, 73; tides, 113
Science Stats, Caves, 92
Scientific Methods, 15, 26–27, 50,
58–59, 75, 90–91, 117, 118–119,
134, 148–149; Analyze Your
Data, 27, 59, 119, 149; Conclude
and Apply, 15, 27, 50, 59, 75, 91,
119, 134, 149; Follow Your Plan,
27, 149; Form a Hypothesis, 26;
Make a Plan, 27, 148; Test Your
Hypothesis, 27, 118
Seafloor. *See* Ocean floor
Seafloor spreading, 130
Sediment(s), in lakes, 47, 48;
polluted, 56; pollution from, 146,
146; trapping, in wetlands, 53
Septic systems, 77, 79, 79
Sewage, 144, 144
Sewage-treatment facility, 53, 53
Sharks, 136, 136, 138, 139
Shipping, vessels for, 19, 19
Shoreline, rocky, 140, 141; sandy
beaches along, 140, 140, 140 *act*
Silicon, 102
Silt, 146, 146
Silver, 133
Sinkholes, 88, 88
Soil, pore space in. *See* Pore space
Soil water, 23
Solid waste, 145, 145
Sonar, 127 *lab*
Sound, sonar, 127 *lab*
Space, water in, 13 *act*
Specific heat, 14
Sponges, 137, 137
Spring, 72, 72–73, 73 *act*
Spring tides, 116, 116
Stalactites, 87, 87
Stalagmites, 87, 87
Standardized Test Practice, 32–33,
64–65, 96–97, 124–125,
154–155
States of matter, changes in, 9, 9,
10, 10; and evaporation, 10, 10
Storage tanks, as source of
groundwater pollution, 79

Stormwater

Stormwater, reusing, 81 *act*
Stream(s), 36–43; adopting, 58–59 *lab*; braided, 38, 38; changing flow of, 43, 43; deposits from, 40, 40–41, 41; disappearing, 88, 88; erosion by, 37, 37, 39, 39–40, 40; flooding by, 41–43, 42 *act*; meandering, 37, 37; modeling flow of, 39 *lab*; testing for pollution, 56
Stream discharge, 41, 42, 43
Stream load, 39, 39
Study Guide, 29, 61, 93, 121, 151
Subduction zones, 130, 131, 131
Subsidence, 84
Sulfur, 133
Sun, and tides, 116, 116
Superfund program, 82
Surface currents, 99 *lab*, 104, 104–106, 105, 105 *act*, 106
Surface water, 24
Swamps, 51, 51

T

Technology, aircraft carriers, 19, 19; computers, 20; container ships, 19, 19; irrigation, 17, 20, 20, 28, 81 *act*; oil tankers, 19, 19; in shipping, 19, 19; sonar, 127 *lab*; water-intake plant, 24
Temperature, and changes of form of water, 9, 10, 10; and density of water, 11, 11; of freshwater, 35 *lab*; of ocean water, 106, 106
Tidal bores, 115
Tidal range, 114, 114
Tidal zone, life in, 115
Tide(s), 113, 113 *act*, 113–116, 114, 115, 116
Tide pools, 140
TIME, Science and History, 60; Science and Society, 28
Tin, 132
Titanium, 132
Transportation, water for, 18, 18, 19, 19
Trench, ocean, 129, 131, 131

Trough, 110, 110
Try at Home MiniLabs,
 Evaluating Dilution, 55;
 Modeling a Density Current, 107; Modeling Groundwater Pollution, 80; Modeling the Mid-Atlantic Ridge, 131;
 Predicting Water Use, 18
Turnover, 49, 49

U

Underground lakes, 66
Upwelling, 107, 107
Use the Internet, Resources From the Oceans, 148–149

V

Vaporization, latent heat of, 10, 10
Venus's-flytrap, 52, 52
Volcanoes, and formation of oceans, 101, 101; and lake formation, 45, 45

W

Waste(s), industrial, 80, 80; mining, 80; solid, 145, 145; spills of, 78
Waste disposal. *See* Sanitary landfills; Septic systems
Water. *See also* Freshwater; for agriculture, 17, 17, 20, 20, 28; in atmosphere, 24; boiling point of, 9 *act*, 15 *lab*; bonding in, 13, 13; cleaning up, 24; cohesion of, 7 *lab*, 12, 12; density of, 11, 11, 11 *lab*; erosion by, 37, 37, 39, 39–40, 40; forms of, 8, 8–9, 9; freezing point of, 9, 10, 15 *lab*, 108; groundwater, 23, 23; hard v. soft, 71. *See also* Groundwater; importance of, 6, 16–21, 36; and life, 16, 16; melting point of, 9, 15 *lab*; in oceans, 22. *See* Ocean water;

Zooplankton

for production, 17, 17; for recreation, 18, 18; recycling, 22–25; and society, 17, 17–18, 18; soil, 23; in space, 13 *act*; specific heat of, 14; surface, 24; for transportation, 18, 18, 19, 19; use of, 18 *lab*, 21, 21
Water conservation, 20, 20–21, 21, 26–27 *lab*
Water cycle, 24–25, 25
Water-intake plant, 24
Water pollution, 18, 23, 54, 54–57; cleanup of, 82, 82–83, 83; of groundwater, 76, 76–81, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81 *act*, 84, 84, 90–91 *lab*; law on, 56; reducing, 55–57, 56, 57; sources of, 54, 54–55, 55, 76, 76–81, 77, 78, 79, 80, 84, 84
Water Pollution Control Act of 1972, 56
Water table, 70, 71
Water vapor, 10, 10, 24
Water waves. *See* Ocean waves
Wave(s), 110; amplitude of, 110; breakers, 111; crest of, 110, 110; and energy, 110, 110, 111, 111, 112; formation of, 113, 113, 117 *lab*; height of, 110, 110, 112, 113; ocean. *See* Ocean waves; and tides, 113 *act*, 113–116, 114, 115, 116; trough of, 110, 110
Wavelength, 110, 110, 112
Well(s), 23, 23, 72–73, 79; artesian, 73, 73, 75 *lab*; drilling, 72, 72
Wetlands, 51–53; animals in, 52; importance of, 53, 53; types of, 51, 51–52, 52
Wind(s), and Coriolis effect, 105, 105
Wind Cave, 92, 92

Z

Zinc, 133
Zone of aeration, 23, 70
Zone of saturation, 70
Zooplankton, 47, 138, 138, 139 *lab*

Credits

Magnification Key: Magnifications listed are the magnifications at which images were originally photographed.

LM—Light Microscope

SEM—Scanning Electron Microscope

TEM—Transmission Electron Microscope

Acknowledgments: Glencoe would like to acknowledge the artists and agencies who participated in illustrating this program: Absolute Science Illustration; Andrew Evansen; Argosy; Articulate Graphics; Craig Attebery represented by Frank & Jeff Lavaty; CHK America; John Edwards and Associates; Gagliano Graphics; Pedro Julio Gonzalez represented by Melissa Turk & The Artist Network; Robert Hynes represented by Mendola Ltd.; Morgan Cain & Associates; JTH Illustration; Laurie O'Keefe; Matthew Pippin represented by Beranbaum Artist's Representative; Precision Graphics; Publisher's Art; Rolin Graphics, Inc.; Wendy Smith represented by Melissa Turk & The Artist Network; Kevin Torline represented by Berendsen and Associates, Inc.; WILDLife ART; Phil Wilson represented by Cliff Knecht Artist Representative; Zoo Botanica.

Photo Credits

Cover Craig Tuttle/Getty Images; **i ii** Craig Tuttle/Getty Images; **iv** (bkgd) John Evans, (inset) Craig Tuttle/Getty Images; **v** (t) PhotoDisc, (b) John Evans; **vi** (l) John Evans, (r) Geoff Butler; **vii** (l) John Evans, (r) PhotoDisc; **viii** PhotoDisc; **ix** Aaron Haupt Photography; **x** Robin Karpan; **xi** Jeff Rotman/Peter Arnold, Inc.; **xii** Peter Skinner/Photo Researchers; **1** Chris Lisle/CORBIS; **2** TSADO/NOAA/Tom Stack & Assoc.; **4** (t) TSADO/NOAA/Tom Stack & Assoc., (b) Ralph White/CORBIS; **5** (t) file photo, (b) NOAA; **6–7** Grafton Marshall Smith/CORBIS; **7** Matt Meadows; **8** NASA; **9** (l) Matt Meadows, (r) Doug Martin; **10** Aaron Haupt; **11** Dominic Oldershaw; **12** Nick Daly/Stone/Getty Images; **13** (t) David Muench/CORBIS, (b) NASA; **15 16** Matt Meadows; **17** James L. Amos/Peter Arnold, Inc.; **18** Brian Yarvin/Peter Arnold, Inc.; **19** (tl) Jack Fields/CORBIS, (tr) Vince Streano/CORBIS, (bl) CORBIS, (br) Susan E. Benson/Stock Connection/PictureQuest; **20** (l) Jerry Howard/Stock Boston, (r) Ted Streshinsky/Photo 20-20 PictureQuest; **24** SuperStock; **26** Steve Callahan/Visuals Unlimited; **27** Dominic Oldershaw; **28** Jose Fuste Raga/The Stock Market/CORBIS; **29** (tl) Martin Bydalek/Stone/Getty Images, (tr) Zig Leszczynski/Earth Scenes, (br) Roland Seitre/Peter Arnold, Inc.; **31** Dominic Oldershaw; **32** Ted Streshinsky/Photo 20-20/PictureQuest; **33** Maslowski/Visuals Unlimited; **34–35** Stuart & Cynthia Pernick/SuperStock; **38** James L. Amos/CORBIS; **40** (t) Eastcott/Momatiuk/Earth Scenes, (b) Robin Karpan; **41** (l) Calvin Larsen/Photo Researchers, (r) Martin G. Miller/Visuals Unlimited; **43** Raymone Gehman/CORBIS; **44** (l) NASA, (r) Peter Arnold/Peter Arnold, Inc.; **45** (l) Victor Englebert/Photo Researchers, (r) Lowell Georgia/Science Source/Photo Researchers; **48** (t) David R. Frazier/Photo Researchers, (cl) Jerome Wexler/Visuals Unlimited, (cr) Bazaszewski/Visuals Unlimited, (b) Mark Wright/Photo Researchers; **50** Richard Hutchings; **51** Jeremy Woodhouse/DRK Photo; **52** (t) Tom Bean/DRK Photo, (b) Robert & Linda Mitchell; **53** Courtesy the City of San Diego CA; **54** Simon Fraser/Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers; **55** Tom & Pat Lesson/DRK Photo; **57** KS Studios; **58** Aaron Haupt; **61** (l) C.C. Lockwood/Earth Scenes, (r) Marc Epstein/DRK Photo; **62** Martin G. Miller/Visuals Unlimited; **64** Claus

Meyer/Minden Pictures; **66–67** Jack Dykinga/Stone/Getty Images; **68** A.J. Copley/Visuals Unlimited; **72** (t) Willard Luce/Earth Scenes, (b) Fred Habegger from Grant Heilman; **74** C. Alan Chapman/Visuals Unlimited; **75** Mark Burnett; **76** Salt Institute; **80** Lowell Georgia/CORBIS; **83** Fritz Prenzel/Earth Scenes; **85** James Jasek; **87** (l) Runk/Schoenberger from Grant Heilman, (tr) M.L. Sinibaldi/The Stock Market/CORBIS, (br) Corel; **88** (t) AP/Wide World Photos, (b) Mammoth Cave National Park; **90** (t) Bert Krages/Visuals Unlimited, (b) Jim Sugar Photography/CORBIS; **91** Doug Martin; **92** (t) David Muench/CORBIS, (b) Peter & Ann Bosted/Tom Stack & Assoc.; **93** (l) William A. Blake/CORBIS, (r) Michael Dwyer/Stock Boston; **95** C.C. Lockwood/Earth Scenes; **98–99** Warren Bolster/Getty Images; **100** (l) Norbert Wu/Peter Arnold, Inc., (r) Darryl Torckler/Stone/Getty Images; **102** Cathy Church/Picturesque/PictureQuest; **105** Bob Daemmrich; **106** (t) Darryl Torckler/Stone/Getty Images, (b) Raven/Explorer/Photo Researchers; **110** Jack Fields/Photo Researchers; **111** Tom & Therisa Stack; **112** (top & bottom) Stephen R. Wagner, (cl) Spike Mafford/PhotoDisc, (cr) Douglas Peebles/CORBIS; **113** Arnulf Husmo/Stone/Getty Images; **114** (l) Groenendyk/Photo Researchers, (r) Patrick Ingrand/Stone/Getty Images, (b) Kent Knudson/Stock Boston; **118** (t) Mark E. Gibson/Visuals Unlimited, (b) Timothy Fuller; **119** Timothy Fuller; **120** (bkgd) Chris Lisle/CORBIS, (inset) Sovfoto/Eastfoto/PictureQuest; **121** (l) Carl R. Sams II/Peter Arnold, Inc., (r) Edna Douthat; **126–127** Bill Curtsinger/Getty Images; **128–129** The Floor of the Oceans by Bruce C. Heezen and Marie Tharp, (c) 1977 by Marie Tharp. Reproduced by permission of Marie Tharp; **127** Mark Burnett; **130** Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution; **131** Thomas J. Abercrombie/National Geographic Society; **132** (t) J. & L. Weber/Peter Arnold, Inc., (bl) Arthur Hill/Visuals Unlimited, (br) John Cancalosi/Peter Arnold, Inc.; **133** (t) Institute of Oceanographic Sciences/NERC/Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, (b) Biophoto Associates/Photo Researchers; **135** Fred Bavendam/Minden Pictures; **137** Nanct Sefton/Photo Researchers; **138** (t) Manfred Kage/Peter Arnold, Inc., (b) M.I. Walker/Science Source/Photo Researchers; **139** (l) Nick Caloyianis/National Geographic Society, (c) Herb Segars/Animals Animals, (r) Norbert Wu; **140** Fred Bavendam/Peter Arnold, Inc.; **141** (l) Lloyd K. Townsend, (2) Fred Whitehead/Animals Animals, (3) Andrew J. Martinez/Photo Researchers, (4) Andrew J. Martinez/Photo Researchers, (5) Hal Beral/Visuals Unlimited, (6) Michael Abbey/Photo Researchers, (7) Gerald & Buff Corsi/Visuals Unlimited, (8) Anne W. Rosenfeld/Animals Animals, (9) Andrew J. Martinez/Photo Researchers, (10) Zig Leszczynski/Animals Animals, (11) Gregory Ochocki/Photo Researchers, (12) Peter Skinner/Photo Researchers; **142** James H. Robinson/Photo Researchers; **145** (t) C.C. Lockwood/Earth Scenes, (bl) C.C. Lockwood/DRK Photo, (others) David Young-Wolff/PhotoEdit, Inc.; **146** NASA; **147** David Young-Wolff/PhotoEdit, Inc.; **148** (t) Jim Nilsen/Stone/Getty Images, (b) Fred Bavendam/Minden Pictures; **149** (t) Fred Bavendam/Minden Pictures, (b) Jeff Rotman/Peter Arnold, Inc.; **150** (t) Rick Price/CORBIS, (b) Emory Kristof/National Geographic; **151** Fred Bavendam/Minden Pictures; **156** PhotoDisc; **158** Tom Pantages; **162** Michell D. Bridwell/PhotoEdit, Inc.; **163** (t) Mark Burnett, (b) Dominic Oldershaw; **164** StudiOhio; **165** Timothy Fuller; **166** Aaron Haupt; **168** KS Studios; **169** Matt Meadows; **170** Clyde H. Smith/Peter Arnold, Inc.; **173** Amanita Pictures; **174** Bob Daemmrich; **176** Davis Barber/PhotoEdit, Inc.